



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

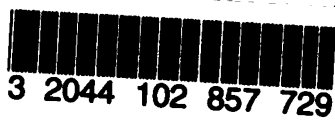
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



3 2044 102 857 729

22

STERN & FLEISCH
HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
FOREIGN BOOKS
7 TREMONT STREET
BOSTON, MASS.

Educ T 1519.00.430



Harvard College Library

FROM

Miss Grace Norton





3 2044 102 857 729

22

Heath's Modern Language Series

THE ESSENTIALS
OF
FRENCH GRAMMAR

BY

C. H. GRANDGENT

PROFESSOR OF ROMANCE LANGUAGES IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY
FORMERLY DIRECTOR OF MODERN LANGUAGE INSTRUCTION
IN THE BOSTON PUBLIC SCHOOLS



BOSTON, U.S.A.

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS

1900

Jan 15 1900 .430

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY

DEPT. OF

MISS GRACE NORTON

Nov 27, 1925

COPYRIGHT, 1900

By D. C. HEATH & Co.

Plimpton Press

H. M. PLIMPTON & CO., PRINTERS & BINDERS,
NORWOOD, MASS., U.S.A.

PREFACE

HAVING received from many quarters a request for a work that should combine the scope and style of my *Short French Grammar* with certain traditional features of our modern language text-books, I have prepared the present volume. While preserving, in general, the form of statement and the systematic arrangement of my earlier work, it differs from it in several important respects.

In the first place, the grammar and the exercise-book are amalgamated, and the amount of practice-work is vastly increased. The volume is divided into 185 short chapters, each of suitable length for a school lesson, and each followed by at least two sets of illustrative exercises. Most of these exercises consist of brief English sentences to be turned into French. The chapters are printed in their logical sequence; but another arrangement, based on the degree of their importance and simplicity, is suggested to teachers, and an easy and practicable course of study is thus provided, without impairing the value of the book for

purposes of reference. The order of the lessons is indicated just below the chapter headings.

In eighty-five of the chapters are inserted short, consecutive paragraphs of a French text, to be used for practice in pronunciation, and to furnish vocabulary for the exercises. It seems likely that these selections, which are interesting in themselves, will prove more effective and far more agreeable than the detached French words and phrases commonly employed. They do not, however, take the place of illustrative sentences, which are given in great abundance in connection with the rules. The earlier texts are provided with an interlinear translation; for the others a vocabulary is added.

No phonetic spelling appears in this book, but the subject of pronunciation is carefully treated, and many new and helpful rules have been introduced for reference. My faith in the utility of phonetic notation has been rather strengthened than weakened by the experience of my *Short French Grammar*. Many instructors who have become accustomed to a phonetic method will doubtless prefer this earlier book. In the case of the present volume, however, it was thought that a strange alphabet would be out of keeping with the general character of the work and would probably be regarded as a hindrance by the majority of our teachers.

CAMBRIDGE, January, 1900.

SUGGESTIONS FOR SCHOOL USE

SCHOOL classes should, in general, follow the sequence of lessons indicated just below the chapter headings. As 79 of the 185 chapters are used twice (the most important paradigms and rules being reviewed), there are in all 264 lessons. Classes that have four recitations a week for 33 weeks will thus be provided with a full two years' course. Classes that have only three periods a week can take Lessons 1-99 the first year, and Lessons 100-198 the second, Lessons 199-264 being omitted altogether or reserved for a third year. Either the first 99 or the first 132 lessons make a well rounded first year's course, covering all that is absolutely indispensable in French grammar. In schools where there are more than four or less than three recitations a week, other arrangements of the lessons can be made. It will, indeed, often be found advisable to deviate in various ways from the suggested program: for instance, in classical schools two lessons can frequently be taken at a time; while classes that have only one year of French can, if necessary, omit the first fifteen chapters, and learn pronunciation in connection with their reading. The French Text and all the paradigms and examples contained in a lesson should, in any case, be pronounced by the pupils after the teacher, before the lesson is prepared. When a lesson consists of a review of preceding chapters, the French texts and the exercises of those chapters are not included in the lesson. The *Supplementary Exercises* do not form an essential part of the course: they are intended for review, for use in alternate years, and for classes that are able to spend a great deal of time on grammar. The lessons from No. 28 on are so constructed as to require only a small amount of study, in order that pupils may have plenty of time to devote to the preparation of translation.

A COLLEGE COURSE

LESSON. CHAPTERS.

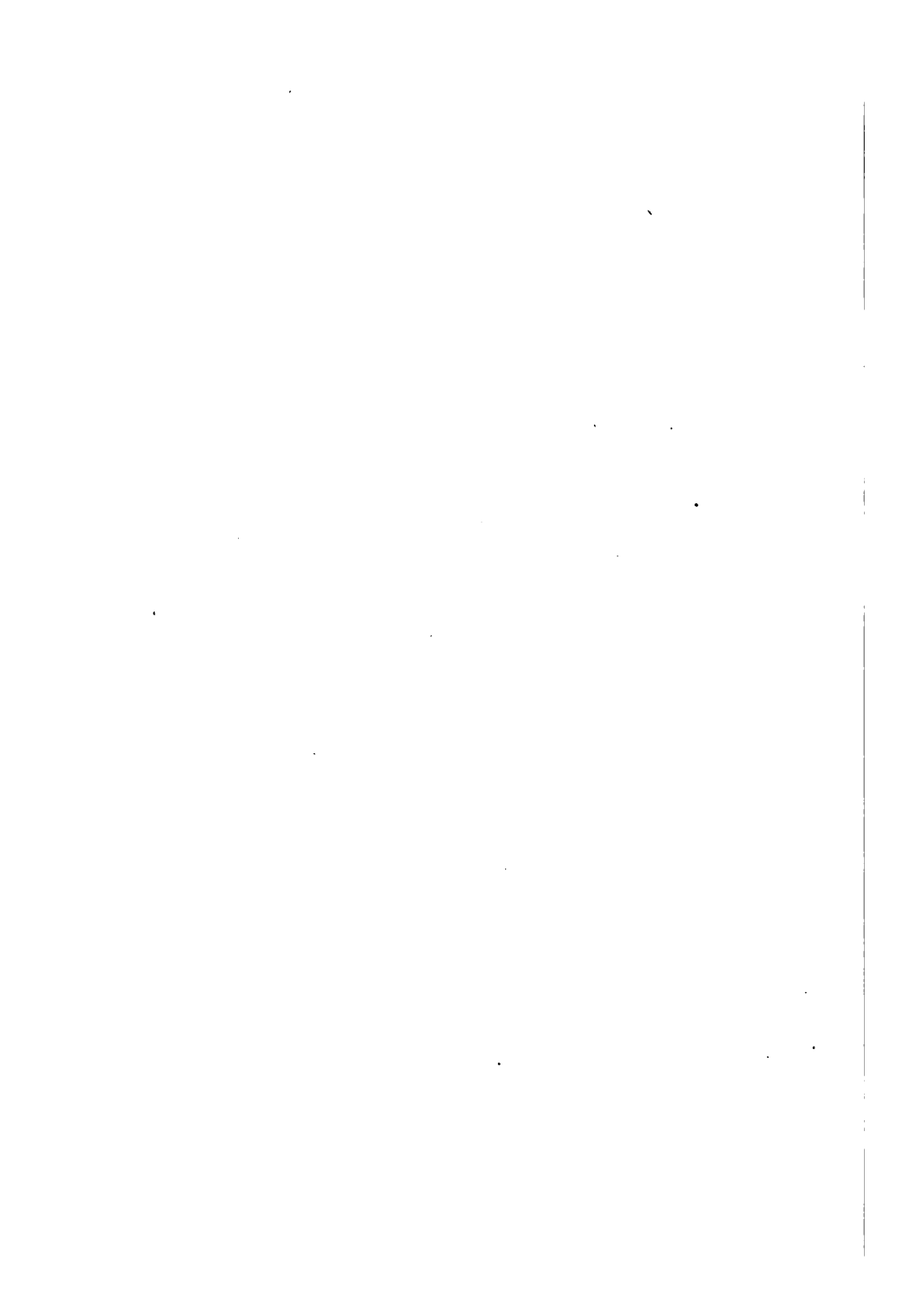
1st: I, II.
 2d: III, IV.
 3d: V, VI.
 4th: VII, VIII.
 5th: IX, X.
 6th: XI, XII.
 7th: XVI-XVIII.
 8th: XIX, XX.
 9th: XXI.
 10th: XXII.
 11th: XXIII.
 12th: XXIV, XXV.
 13th: XXVI-XXVIII.
 14th: XXIX, XXX.
 15th: XXXI-XXXIII.
 16th: XXXIV, XXXV.
 17th: XXXVI, XXXVII.
 18th: XXXVIII, XXXIX.
 19th: XL, XLIII.
 20th: XLVII-XLIX.
 21st: L, LI.
 22d: LII, LIII.
 23d: LIV, LV.
 24th: LVI-LVIII.
 25th: LIX, LX.
 26th: LXI, LXII.
 27th: LXIII-LXV.
 28th: LXVI, LXVII.
 29th: LXVIII-LXX.
 30th: LXXI, LXXII.
 31st: LXXIII, LXXIV.
 32d: LXXV-LXXVII.
 33d: LXXVIII, LXXIX.
 34th: LXXX, LXXXI.
 35th: LXXXII, LXXXIII.
 36th: LXXXIV, LXXXV.
 37th: LXXXVI-LXXXVIII.
 38th: LXXXIX, XC.
 39th: XCI, XCII.
 40th: XCIII, XCIV.
 41st: XCV, XCVI.
 42d: XCVII, XCVIII.

LESSON. CHAPTERS.

43d: XCIX, C.
 44th: CI, CII.
 45th: CIII, CIV.
 46th: CV.
 47th: CVI, CVII.
 48th: CVIII, CIX.
 49th: CX, CXI.
 50th: CXII, CXIII.
 51st: CXIV, CXV.
 52d: CXVI, CXVII.
 53d: CXVIII, CXIX.
 54th: CXX, CXXI.
 55th: CXXII, CXXIII.
 56th: CXXIV, CXXV.
 57th: CXXVI-CXXVIII.
 58th: CXXIX, CXXX.
 59th: CXXXI-CXXXIII.
 60th: CXXXIV, CXXXV.
 61st: CXXXVI, CXXXVII.
 62d: CXXXVIII, CXXXIX.
 63d: CXL.
 64th: CXLI, CXLII.
 65th: CXLIII, CXLIV.
 66th: CXLV, CXLVI.
 67th: CXLVII, CXLVIII.
 68th: CXLIX, CL.
 69th: CLI, CLII.
 70th: CLIII, CLIV.
 71st: CLV, CLVI.
 72d: CLVII, CLVIII.
 73d: CLIX, CLX.
 74th: CLXI-CLXIII.
 75th: CLXIV-CLXVI.
 76th: CLXVII, CLXVIII.
 77th: CLXIX.
 78th: CLXX-CLXXII.
 79th: CLXXIII-CLXXV.
 80th: CLXXVI.
 81st: CLXXVII, CLXXVIII.
 82d: CLXXIX, CLXXX.
 83d: CLXXXI-CLXXXIII.
 84th: CLXXXIV, CLXXXV.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGES
PRONUNCIATION AND SPELLING	
Chapters I-XV; Lessons 1-15, 133-135	I-44
ELEMENTS OF FRENCH GRAMMAR	
Chapters XVI-XX; Lessons 16-20	45-63
VERBS	
General Principles: XXI-XXV; Lessons 136-140	63-80
<i>Avoir</i> and <i>Être</i> : XXVI-XXX; Lessons 21-24, 141, 199 . .	80-94
Regular Verbs: XXXI-XXXVIII; Lessons 25-31, 142-145	95-114
Review: XXXIX; Lesson 32	115-116
Personal Endings: XL; Lessons 33, 146	116-119
Formation of Tenses: XLI-XLIX; Lessons 33-39, 146, 147, 200-202	119-137
First Conjugation: XLVII-XLIX; Lessons 148-150 . .	130-137
Compound Tenses: L-LIV; Lessons 40-44, 203-206 . .	137-145
Passive: LV; Lessons 45, 207	145-147
Interrogation: LVI-LX; Lessons 46-48, 151-153 . . .	148-157
Negation: LXI-LXVI; Lessons 49, 50, 154-158 . . .	158-171
Negative Questions: LXVII; Lesson 51	171-173
Reflexive Verbs: LXVIII-LXX; Lessons 52-54, 208, 209 .	173-179
Impersonal Verbs: LXXI-LXXII; Lessons 55, 56, 210, 211	180-184
Irregular Verbs: LXXIII-CV; Lessons 57-85, 212-234 .	185-232
Auxiliary Verbs: CVI-CXV; Lessons 159-168	233-249
PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES	
Personal Pronouns: CXVI-CXXX; Lessons 86-96, 169, 170, 235-245	250-277
Possessives: CXXXI-CXXXV; Lessons 97-100, 246-249 .	278-285
Relatives: CXXXVI-CXL; Lessons 101-104, 250-253 . .	286-295
Interrogatives: CXLI-CXLVI; Lessons 105-109, 254-258 .	296-305
Demonstratives: CXLVII-CLII; Lessons 110-113, 259-263	306-316
ARTICLES	
Chapters CLIII-CLXIII; Lessons 114-119, 171-180 . .	317-334
ADJECTIVES AND ADJECTIVE PHRASES	
Chapters CLXIV-CLXXVI; Lessons 120-127, 181-192, 264	335-361
NUMERALS	
Chapters CLXXVII-CLXXX; Lessons 128-130, 193 . . .	362-368
NOUNS	
Chapters CLXXXI-CLXXXV; Lessons 131, 132, 194-198 .	369-379
VOCABULARY	381-394
INDEX	395-401



THE ESSENTIALS OF FRENCH GRAMMAR

NOTE TO TEACHERS IN SCHOOLS.—School classes should follow the sequence of lessons indicated just below the chapter headings. For suggestions regarding the use of the book, see page v.

NOTE TO TEACHERS IN COLLEGES.—College classes can follow the order of the chapters as they stand, without regard to the indication of lessons under the chapter headings. Two or three chapters can be taken at a time. Chapters XIII–XV, XLI–XLII, XLIV–XLVI can be omitted. For a practicable course, completing the study of the grammar in 84 lessons, see page vi.

I. LETTERS, DIACRITICS, SYLLABLES.

Lesson 1.

1. The French alphabet has the same letters as the English; but *k* and *w* occur only in words borrowed from other languages.

2. A *c* with a *cedilla* (ç) is often used to represent the sound of *s* before *a*, *o*, or *u*: as in ‘façon.’ *G* never has the cedilla; to indicate the “soft” sound of this letter before *a*, *o*, or *u*, an *e* is inserted just after the *g*: as in ‘mangeons.’

3. Two dots (called a *diæresis*) over a vowel generally show that the vowel is to be pronounced separately:

thus 'our,' *heard*, has two syllables, while 'oui,' *yes*, has only one; in 'ambiguïté' the *i* forms a syllable by itself, while in 'aiguïser' the second syllable is *gui*, the *u* being a semivowel. But the combination *-guë* is sounded *-gu*, the *e* being silent: as in 'aiguë.'

4. Three marks (called *accents*) are frequently written over French vowel letters: the *acute accent* (´), as in 'été'; the *grave accent* (`), as in 'là'; the *circumflex accent* (^), as in 'fûmes.' These accents are a regular feature of French spelling, and their use must be learned as carefully as any other part of the orthography. They are often useful in indicating the pronunciation of the vowel. See §§ 16; 16, (2), (10); 29, (2).

5. When an unaccented monosyllable ending in a vowel is immediately followed, in the same phrase, by a word beginning with a vowel or semivowel sound, the final vowel of the monosyllable is omitted; this omission is called *elision*, and is indicated by an *apostrophe*: 'la âme' becomes *l'âme*, 'le or' becomes *l'or*, 'il me aime' becomes *il m'aime*. There are a few cases of elision under conditions apparently different from those just described: as in *aujourd'hui*, *presqu'île*. 'Si,' *if*, elides its *i* only before 'il' and 'ils.'

a. There is no elision before 'onze,' *eleven*. For 'huit,' *eight*, see § 21, a.

6. In the division of written words into syllables, a single consonant between two vowels is joined to the second vowel: as in *gé-né-reu-se-ment*. But *x* goes with the first: as in *ex-a-men*.

The groups *bl, br, ch, cl, cr, dr, fl, fr, gl, gn, gr, ph, pl, pr, th, tr, vr* belong to the following vowel: *com-bler, ar-bre, a-chat, bâ-cler, vain-cre, pou-dre, a-gneau, sif-fler, of-frir, ré-gler, ai-gre, né-nu-phar, sou-ple, â-pre, a-thée, vi-tre, ou-vrir*. It is to be noted that of these groups, *ch, gn, ph, th* denote simple sounds, while in all the others the second element is *l* or *r*.

Other groups of two consonant letters are generally divided in the middle: *ab-bes-se, ac-cent, ad-mi-rer, al-ler, bon-heur, es-pé-ran-ce, sug-gé-rer*.

a. Observe that in French a silent *e* is regarded as forming a syllable. For instance, whereas in English *face* is called a monosyllable, the French word 'face,' though pronounced as one syllable, is counted as two, and may be divided thus: *fa-ce*.

French Text.

[NOTE.—When several English words are required to render one French word, and when the order of words in a phrase cannot be preserved in translation, the words of the English interlinear version are connected by hyphens. Words that are superfluous in English are enclosed in parentheses. — Texts 1-45 are taken, with considerable alterations, from *Sur l'eau*, by Guy de Maupassant.]

1. J'allais me coucher¹ hier soir, bien qu'il fût
I was-going to-bed yesterday evening, although it was
à peine neuf heures, quand je reçus un télégramme.
hardly nine o'clock, when I received a telegram.
Un ami, un de ceux que j'aime, me disait: «Je
A friend, one of those whom I love, said-to-me: "I
suis à Monte-Carlo,² pour quatre jours. Viens
am at Monte Carlo, for four days. Come
donc me retrouver.»³ J'appelai Bernard, mon matelot.
please and-join-me." I called Bernard, my skipper.
«Nous partirons demain matin pour Nice,»⁴ lui dis-je.
"We shall-start to-morrow morning for Nice," I-said-to-him.

Il répondit naïvement: «S'il fait beau, monsieur.»
He replied guilelessly: "If the-weather-is-fair, sir."
 Le lendemain, vers cinq heures, nous quittons le
The next-day, at-about five o'clock, we leave the
 port, et nous nous engageons dans la sortie
harbor, and (we) make into the opening
 du golfe, poussés par une brise légère. Enfin
of-the bay, carried by a light-breeze. At-last
 nous atteignons le cap d'Antibes.⁵ Nice est là,
we reach the Cape of Antibes. Nice is there,
 et nous y entrons comme midi sonne.
and we come-into-it as noon is-ringing.

¹ Literally, *to lay myself down*.

² See next French Text. The *e* of 'Monte' is pronounced like *é*.

³ Literally, *to join me*.

⁴ A large seaport town in the south-east of France.

⁵ A cape south-west of Nice.

Exercise.

1. Point out all the examples of cedilla, diæresis, and elision in the above text. Explain the use of the second *e* in 'engageons.'
2. Point out and name all the accents.
3. Divide the following words into syllables: *allais, coucher, peine, heures, reçois, télégramme*.

Supplementary Exercise.

Divide into syllables: *ami, aime, disait, quatre, retrouver, appellei, matelot, partirons, demain, matin, répondit, naïvement, lendemain, quittons, engageons, golfe, brise, légère, atteignons*.

II. SYLLABLES AND CAPITALS.

Lesson 2.

7. Review § 6 and § 6, *a*.

8. Capitals are used, as in English, at the beginning of a sentence and in proper names. In the following cases, however, small letters should be employed in French, although capitals are required in English:—

- 1) In the pronoun 'je,' meaning *I*: as *I am here* = je suis ici.
- 2) In the names of the days and months: *I shall come on Tuesday, the sixth of May* = je viendrai mardi le 6 mai.
- 3) In adjectives derived from proper nouns: *a French book* = un livre français. Similarly, *French*, meaning *the French language*, is 'le français'; but *the Frenchman* is 'le Français.'
- 4) In a title immediately followed by a proper name: *King Humbert* = le roi Humbert, *Count Kostia* = le comte Kostia. But in the abbreviations *M.* for 'monsieur,' *Mme.* for 'madame,' and *Mlle.* for 'mademoiselle,' capitals are used, and these words, even when unabbreviated, are sometimes written with capitals: *M. Jourdain*, monsieur Jourdain, Monsieur Jourdain; *Mme. Angot*, madame Angot, Madame Angot.
- 5) In a common noun denoting some part of a town or some geographical feature, and followed by a proper name: *Concord Square* = la place de la Concorde, *the Atlantic Ocean* = l'océan Atlantique.

French Text.

2.	Je	pris	le	train de quatre heures ¹	pour	aller
	<i>I</i>	<i>took</i>	<i>the</i>	<i>four-o'clock-train</i>	<i>to</i>	<i>go</i>
dîner	avec	mon	ami	dans	la	principauté de
<i>to-dine</i>	<i>with</i>	<i>my</i>	<i>friend</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>the</i>	<i>principality of</i>

Monaco.² Je voudrais avoir le loisir de parler
Monaco I should-like to-have the leisure to speak
 longuement de cet État surprenant,³ moins⁴ grand
at-length of this surprising-state, not-so big
 qu'un village de France,⁵ mais où l'on trouve⁶ un
as a French-village but where you-find an
 souverain absolu,⁸ des évêques, une étiquette plus
absolute-sovereign, (some) bishops, an etiquette more
 cérémonieuse que celle de feu Louis XIV,
cereemonious than that of the-late Louis XIV,
 des principes d'autorité plus despotiques que ceux
(some) principles of authority more despotic than those
 de Guillaume de Prusse,⁷ joints à une
of William of Prussia, joined to a
 tolérance magnifique⁸ pour les vices de l'humanité,
magnificent-tolerance for the vices of (the) humanity,
 dont vivent⁸ le souverain, les ministres, l'armée,
on-which live the sovereign, the ministers, the army,
 la magistrature, tout le monde.⁹
the magistrates, everybody.

¹ Literally, *train of four hours*.

² The tiny principality of Monaco is an independent state, situated on the southern shore of France, near Nice. It contains about eight square miles, and has some 10,000 inhabitants. Not far from the town of Monaco (3000 inhabitants) is the Casino of Monte Carlo, a famous gambling establishment.

³ Notice that French adjectives very often follow their nouns.

⁴ *Less*.

⁵ *Village of France*.

⁶ *One finds*.

⁷ The present emperor of Germany.

⁸ 'Dont vivent' may be translated freely, *which support*. The prince and the government of Monaco are supported by the receipts of the Casino.

⁹ Literally, *all the world*.

Exercise.

1. Point out and name all the *accents* in the above text.
2. Indicate the cases of *elision*.
3. Explain the use of capital and small letter at the beginning of 'Je' (first and third lines), 'principauté' (second line), 'Monaco' (third line), 'France' (fifth line).

4. In the phrase 'un village de France,' substitute an equivalent adjective for the words 'de France.'

Supplementary Exercise.

Divide into syllables all the words of more than one syllable in the above text.

III. VOWEL SOUNDS.

Lesson 3.

9. All the French vowels are somewhat different from any English sounds, but some are more unlike English than others. There are two groups of vowel sounds especially difficult for foreigners: the *rounded vowels* and the *nasal vowels*. The rounded vowels are formed with the lips rounded, or puckered, as for whistling. The nasal vowels are pronounced through the nose, but with the mouth wide open.

10. French has only one indistinct vowel; it is written *e*, without any accent. All other vowel sounds, whether accented or unaccented, are pronounced sharply and clearly; they are neither drawled nor slurred. As a rule, they are shorter than English accented vowels. In forming all the French vowel sounds except the rounded vowels and *e*, the passage between the teeth and between the lips is broad and unobstructed.

11. It is to be noted that most of the English "long vowels" are really diphthongs: not only are *i*, *u* (as in

pine, fume) composed of dissimilar elements, but in *ā*, *ē*, *ō*, *oo* (as in *bane, bean, bone, boon*) the beginning of the sound is different from the end. A French long vowel, on the other hand, is alike throughout. Compare English *rose, rave* with French 'rose,' 'rêve.'

12. We can distinguish the following French vowels:—

VOWEL.	EXAMPLE.	SOUND.
a:	place;	between <i>a</i> in <i>pat</i> and <i>a</i> in <i>part</i> .
â:	âme;	nearly like <i>a</i> in <i>part</i> .
an:	plan;	nasal â (see § 15, 1).
e:	me;	nearly like <i>u</i> in <i>fur</i> (indistinct).
é:	été;	nearly like <i>a</i> in <i>bakery</i> .
eu:	peu;	rounded é (see § 15, 2).
è:	sève;	nearly like <i>e</i> in <i>bed</i> .
in:	pin;	nasal è (see § 15, 1).
œ:	œil;	rounded è (see § 15, 2).
un:	un;	nasal œ (see § 15, 1).
i:	fini;	nearly like <i>ea</i> in <i>eatable</i> .
u:	tu;	rounded i (see § 15, 2).
ô:	dôme;	nearly like <i>o</i> in <i>notary</i> (rounded).
o:	botte;	between <i>u</i> in <i>hut</i> and <i>o</i> in <i>hot</i> (rounded).
on:	bon;	nasal o (see § 15, 1).
ou:	fou;	nearly like <i>oo</i> in <i>booby</i> (rounded).

French Text.

[NOTE.—In the following text, *à* is equivalent to *a*, *ai* sounds like *è*, *au* is pronounced *ô*. *E* is sounded *é* in 'et,' in the last syllable of 'effacer,' 'étrangers,' and also in the first syllable of 'effacer' and 'exemple'; it is pronounced *è* in 'ancienne,' 'Capulets,' 'des,' 'dresse,' 'fraternisant,' 'les,' 'nouvelle,' 'ouverts,' 'Roulette.' *Em*, *en* are equivalent to *an*; but in 'bien,' 'soutient,' the *en* sounds like *in*. *Eu*, in 'ailleurs' has the sound of *œ*. *Oi* is pronounced *wâ*.]

3. En face du ¹	palais	du	prince	se dresse
Opposite-the	palace	of-the	prince	rises
l'établissement rival,	la	Roulette.	Aucune	haine
the rival-establishment,	the	Gambling-Hall.	No	hatred,

d'ailleurs, aucune hostilité de² l'un à³ l'autre,
however, no enmity between the one and the other,
 car celui-ci soutient celui-là qui le protège.
for the-latter supports the-former, which protects-it.

Exemple admirable, exemple unique de deux familles
Admirable-example, solitary-example of two families,

voisines et puissantes vivant en paix dans un
neighboring and powerful, living in peace in a

petit État, exemple bien fait pour effacer le¹
little state; an-example well calculated to wipe-out the

souvenir des Capulets et des Montaigus.⁴ Ici la
remembrance-of-the Capulets and (of-the) Montagues. Here the

maison souveraine et là la maison de jeux, l'ancienne
royal-mansion and there the gaming-house, the old

et la nouvelle société fraternisant au bruit de
and the new society hobnobbing to-the chink of

l'or. Autant les salons du prince sont
(the) gold. Just-as-much-as the drawing-rooms of-the prince are

d'un accès difficile, autant ceux du Casino sont
difficult-of-access, just-so-much those of-the Casino are

ouverts aux étrangers.
open to (the) strangers.

¹ In face of the.

² Of.

³ To.

⁴ Two hostile families made famous by Shakespeare's *Romeo and Juliet*.

Exercise.

Pick out and pronounce all the vowel sounds in the last two sentences of the above text. Observe the Note at the head of the text.

Supplementary Exercise.

Pick out and pronounce all the vowel sounds in the above text. Observe the Note at the head of the text.

IV. VOWELS.

Lesson 4.

13. Review § 12.

14. Nearly all the French vowel sounds are spelled in several ways; the different spellings will be discussed in the next chapter. In the representations of the nasal vowels, *an*, *in*, *on*, *un*, etc., the *n* is silent.

15. Additional rules:—

1) To pronounce the *nasal vowels*, open the mouth very wide, and say the following English vowels as nasally as possible, — *a* as in *mar*, *a* as in *man*, *u* as in *murder*, *aw* as in *maw*:

a in *mar* nasalized = French *an*, as in 'élan'

a in *man* nasalized = French *in*, as in 'vin'

u in *murder* nasalized = French *un*, as in the word 'un'

aw in *maw* nasalized = French *on*, as in 'bon.'

2) To pronounce the rounded *u*, *eu*, *œ*, pucker the lips, as for whistling, and try to say English *ea* as in *feature*, *a* as in *fatal*, *a* as in *fatten*:

ea in *feature* rounded = French *u*, as in 'tu'

a in *fatal* rounded = French *eu*, as in 'peu'

a in *fatten* rounded = French *œ*, as in 'œil.'

The puckering is greatest for *u*, least for *œ*.

3) When *â* and *è* are accented and long, they should be pronounced with the mouth very wide open. In this case *è* has a sound between *e* in *bed* and *a* in *bad*. Ex.: *pâte*, *bête*.

4) When *o* is followed by *r*, students can best produce it by trying to pronounce a sound half-way between the *o* in *for* and the *u* in *fur*. Ex.: *forme*.

French Text.

[NOTE. — *Ai*, wherever it occurs in the above text, has the sound è; *ain* is like in; *au* is equivalent to ô. *E* in 'conservées' is pronounced è. *En* has the same sound as an. *Eu* in 'peur,' 'peuple,' 'Dominateurs,' and in the first syllable of 'heureux,' has the sound œ. *Oi* is pronounced wâ in 'roi,' wâ in 'fois'; *oin* in 'point' is sounded win (that is, w followed by nasal è).]

4. Saluons¹ ce bon roi pacifique² qui, sans
Let-us-do-homage-to this good-peaceful-king, who, without
 peur des invasions et des révolutions, règne en
fear of (the) invasions and of (the) revolutions, reigns in
 paix sur son heureux petit peuple au milieu des
quiet over his happy little people, in-the midst of-the
 cérémonies d'une cour où sont conservées intactes
ceremonies of a court where are preserved intact
 les traditions des quatre révérences, des vingt-six
the traditions of-the four bows, of-the twenty-six
 baisemains, et de toutes les formules usitées
hand-kissings, and of all the formulas used
 autrefois autour des³ Grands Dominateurs. Ce
of-old in-the-presence-of great rulers. This
 monarque pourtant n'est point⁴ sanguinaire ni
monarch, however, is-not-at-all sanguinary nor
 vindicatif; et quand il bannit, car il bannit,⁵ la
vindictive; and when he banishes, — for he does-banish, — the
 mesure est appliquée avec des ménagements infinis.⁶
punishment is inflicted with (some) endless-mitigations.

¹ Literally, *let us salute*.

² 'Bon' = good, 'roi' = king, 'pacifique' = peaceful.

³ 'Autour de' = around; literally, 'autour des' means *around the*.

⁴ 'Est' = is. 'Ne' ... 'pas' = not. 'Ne' ... 'point' = not at all. 'Ne' loses its *e* before a vowel sound.

⁵ 'Il bannit' means *he banishes, he is banishing, and he does banish*.

⁶ Freely, 'avec des ménagements infinis' = *most considerately*.

Exercise.

1. Pick out and pronounce the nasal vowels in the above text.

2. Pronounce the *o* in 'formules' and the *ai* in 'sanguinaire.'

3. Pick out and pronounce all the cases of *u*, *eu*, *œ*.

4. Divide into syllables: *peuple*, *intactes*, *autrefois*, *vindicatif*, *ménagements*.

Supplementary Exercise.

Pick out and pronounce all the vowel sounds in the above text.

V. VOWEL LETTERS.

Lesson 5.

16. The usual spellings of the different vowel sounds are given below, with examples:—

VOWEL.	SPELLINGS.	EXAMPLES.
a:	<i>a; à:</i>	à la gare.
â:	<i>â; a:</i>	âne, cas, classe, pas, sabre.
an:	<i>an; en; am; em:</i>	l'enfant, ample, temple.
e:	<i>e:</i>	ne, me, le.
é:	<i>é; e; ai:</i>	pré, clef, gai, sais.
eu:	<i>eu; œu; êu:</i>	feu, queue, nœud, vœu, jeûne.
è:	<i>{ è; ê; e; ei; ey: ai; â; ay:</i>	près, prêt, est, belle, peine, Ney. aime, fait, connaît, Douay.
in:	<i>{ in; ain; ein; en: yn; im; aim; ym:</i>	fin, sain, teint, bien. syntaxe, simple, essaïm, thym.
œ:	<i>eu; œu; œ; ue:</i>	seul, œuf, sœur, œil, recueil, orgueil.
un:	<i>un; um; eun:</i>	petun, humble, jeun.
i:	<i>i; î; y:</i>	cri, île, style.
u:	<i>u; û:</i>	lune, mur, vu, dû, mûr.
ô:	<i>o; ô; eau; au:</i>	sot, pose, drôle, beau, vaut.
o:	<i>o; au:</i>	folle, sotté, fort, mort, maure.
on:	<i>on; om:</i>	ton, front, pondre, ombre.
ou:	<i>ou; ôû; où:</i>	cou, goût, où.

It will be noted that in many cases the same letter or group of letters stands for two or more different sounds; in general the correct pronunciation must be learned by practice, but the following rules, which are intended only for reference, will often be of assistance:—

1) The French treatment of *a* is very variable and inconsistent. In some words, as 'nation,' 'occasion,' 'tasse,' it may be pronounced either *â* or *a*. Sometimes, under identical conditions, it has the sound *â* in one word, *a* in another; in the following pairs, the first word has *â*, the second *a*: batailler, travailler; espace, place; nation, patience; paille, médaille; passer, passif. In general it may be said that the present Parisian tendency is to pronounce *â* before silent *s* and before the sounds *z* and *z*, except in the endings of verbs: bas, cas, pas, tas; basse, casser, nation, passion; base, case, invasion, vase. Elsewhere the sound is generally *a*: aller, car, fat, patte, phare, quatre, rat. *A* is silent in 'aôût' and 'Saône.'

2) *Â* is regularly sounded *â*, but it is pronounced *a* in the verbal endings *-âmes*, *-âtes*, *-ât*.

3) *Ai* is pronounced *é* in 'ai,' 'gai,' 'geai,' 'sais,' 'sait' and in the verbal ending *-ai*, as in 'donnai,' 'parlerai.' It is sounded *e* in the parts of the verb 'faire' (and its derivatives) in which it is unaccented: faisons, faisais, etc. Otherwise it is pronounced *è*: aider, aimer, caisse, donnais, essai, faible, fait, lai, mai, parlerais, quai, taire, vrai.

4) *Ay*, *ey*, when followed by a vowel sound, are pronounced *èy*: ayons, crayon, grasseyer, payer. In 'pays' and its derivatives the *ay* is sounded *é-i*.

5) *Au* is generally pronounced *ô*: au, aussi, autour, autre, aux, chauffer, faudrait, faut, principauté, royaume. It is usually *o*, however, before *r*: aurai, Faure, Laure, restaurant, saurais. It is *o* also in 'autorité,' 'Paul,' and a few other words.

6) *E* at the end of a syllable is regularly sounded **e** in first syllables and in monosyllables, and is regularly silent in all other cases: *devenir*, *querelle*, *recevoir*, *second*, *tenir*, *velours*; *ce*, *de*, *le*, *me*, *ne*, *que*, *se*, *te*; *amener*, *âne*, *bourrêler*, *classe*, *couperai*, *devenir*, *donne*, *engelure*, *garç*, *humble*, *laisse*, *médecin*, *peine*, *recevoir*, *souverain*. When, however, the omission of *e* in the interior of a word or phrase would bring together a group of consonant sounds difficult to pronounce, the *e* is sounded as **e**: *autrement*, *quatre fois*. On the other hand, in rapid speech, the *e* of first syllables and monosyllables is very often silent when no difficult consonant group results from its omission: *cependant*, *secouer*; *je le dis*, *tu me vois*. — *E* before a pronounced consonant in the same syllable has the sound **è**: *avec*, *belle*, *bref*, *espérer*, *fer*, *herbe*, *rester*, *tel*, *terre*, *verte*. But initial *e* before *x* followed by a vowel is pronounced **é**: *examen*. — *E* before a silent consonant in the same syllable is variously treated. In the verbal endings *-es*, of the second person singular, and *-ent*, of the third person plural, it is silent: *tu donnes*, *ils donnent*. It is sounded **é** before *d*, *f*, *r*, *z*, and at the beginning of a word before *ff*, *ss* followed by a vowel: *assied*, *piéd*; *clef*; *léger*, *parler*; *assez*, *avez*, *nez*; *effort*, *essai*. It is sounded **è** before *c*, *g*, *t* (except in 'et,' *and*, where it is **é**): *aspect*, *respect*; *legs*; *décret*, *gilet*, *met*, *mets*, *paquet*, *rets*, *sommet*. Before *s* (aside from the verbal ending *-es*), it is **è** in 'est' (= *is*), **é** in initial *des*- (*descendre*, etc.), **è** or **é** in monosyllables in *-s* (*ces*, *des*, *les*, *mes*, *ses*, *tes*). — *E* before *a* or *o* in the same syllable is silent: *geai*, *geôlier*, *mangea*, *voyageons*. See the end of 8).

7) *En* is usually pronounced **an**: *client*, *conscience*, *encore*, *orient*, *patience*, *pend*, *science*, *sens*, *vendre*. It is sounded **in**, however, in final *-en*, *-ien*, *-yen*, and in the nasal group *-ien* in the verbs 'tenir' and 'venir': *Européen*, *Vendéen*; *bien*, *chien*, *chrétien*; *doyen*, *moyen*; *tiens*, *vient*, *tiendrai*, *viendrais*. It has the **in** sound, moreover, in many proper names and borrowed words: *Bengale*, *Rubens*; *benzine*, *examen*. In 'Caen' the *aen* is pronounced **an**.

8) *Eu*, *œu*, when final or followed only by silent consonants, are sounded **eu**: *aveu*, *feu*, *peu*, *vœu*; *bœufs*, *ceux*, *monsieur*,

nœud, œufs, peux, veut. — Before a pronounced final consonant they are sounded **œ**: bœuf, cœur, neuf, œuf, peur, seul, sœur. — Before a pronounced consonant that is not final they are sounded **eu** in some words, **œ** in others: déjeuner, feutre, Meuse, meute, neutre; aveugle, meuble, peuple, jeune, preuve. The pronunciation is always **œ** before *r* and before a *y* sound: heure, heureux, mœurs, pleurer; deuil, feuille, œil, veuille. — *Eu* in 'gageure,' and wherever it occurs in the conjugation of 'avoir,' *to have*, is sounded **u**, the *e* being silent: eu, j'eus, ils eurent, nous eussions.

9) *O*, when final or followed only by silent consonants, is sounded **ô**: écho, Monaco, Monte-Carlo, zéro; gros, héros, mot, nos, pot, trop (*also* **o**). *O* has the same value before a **z** sound, and generally before an **s** sound: chose, dose, oser, rose; émotion, fosse, grosse (*but* bosse, brosse, Écosse, noce *have* **o**). Under all other conditions the pronunciation is generally **o**: bloc, bonne, col, comme, coq, corps, école, encore, époque, folle, fort, noble, notre, porte. — In 'faon,' 'paon,' 'taon' the *o* is silent, and the *aon* is sounded **an**.

10) *Ô* is regularly sounded **ô**, but it is pronounced **o** in 'hôpital,' 'hôtel,' 'rôti.'

11) *Oê* in 'poêle' and its derivatives is sounded **wâ**.

12) *Oi* will be discussed in § 18. There is no convenient rule for the cases in which *oi* is sounded **wâ**.

French Text.

[NOTE. — For *au* in 'autour,' 'faut,' see § 16, 5). For *e* in 'décret,' 'souverain,' see § 16, 6). Before a vowel or another *n*, the groups *ain*, *an*, *ein*, *em*, *in*, *on* do not represent nasal vowels. 'Fois,' 'mois' are pronounced **fwa**, **mwâ**. 'Monsieur,' 'oui,' 'pays' are **mē-syeu**, **wi**, **pé-i**.]

5. En faut-il ¹	donner	des preuves?	Un joueur
(Of-it) must-I	give	(some) proof(s)?	An obstinate-
obstiné,	dans un jour	de déveine,	insulta le
gambler,	in a day	of bad-luck,	insulted the

souverain. Il fut expulsé par décret. Pendant un
sovereign. He was expelled by decree. During a
 mois il rôda autour du² Paradis défendu, craignant
month he prowled around-the forbidden-paradise, fearing
 le glaive de l'archange, sous³ la forme du sabre
the sword of the archangel, in the form of-the sabre
 d'un gendarme. Un jour enfin il s'enhardit,⁴
of a policeman. One day at-last he takes-courage,
 franchit la frontière, gagne en trente secondes le
crosses the frontier, reaches in thirty seconds the
 cœur du pays, pénètre dans le Casino. Mais
heart of-the country, penetrates into the Casino. But
 soudain un fonctionnaire l'arrête:⁵ «N'êtes vous pas⁶
all-at-once an official stops-him: "Aren't-you
 banni, monsieur?» «Oui, monsieur, mais je
banished, sir?" "Yes, sir, but I
 repars⁷ par le premier train.» «Oh! en ce
am-going-away-again by the first train." "Oh! in that
 cas, fort bien, monsieur, vous pouvez entrer.»
case, very well, sir, you may come-in."
 Et chaque semaine il revient; et chaque fois le
And every week he returns; and every time the
 même fonctionnaire lui pose⁸ la même question à
same official asks-him the same question, to
 laquelle il répond de la même façon.
which he replies in the same way.
 La justice peut-elle être plus douce?⁹
Can-justice-be milder?

¹ 'Il faut' = *it is necessary*; 'faut-il' = *is it necessary?*

² See French Text 4, note 3.

³ *Under.*

⁴ Literally, *emboldens himself*. 'Enhardit' = *emboldens*. 'Se' = *himself*; 'se' loses its *e* before a vowel sound. 'S'enhardir' is a reflexive verb.

⁵ 'Arrête' = *stops*. 'Le' = *him*; 'le' loses its *e* before a vowel sound. Notice the position of the pronouns 'se' and 'le.'

⁶ See French Text 4, note 4.

⁷ See French Text 4, note 5.

⁸ 'Pose' = *puts*. 'Lui' = *to him*.

⁹ Literally, *(the) justice can it be more mild?* 'Justice' is feminine. 'Peut-elle' = *can she*. Nearly all French adjectives form their comparative by prefixing 'plus' to the positive, and their superlative by prefixing the definite article to the comparative: *doux, plus doux, le plus doux*.

Exercise.

1. Pronounce the groups *ai, au, eu, æu*, wherever they occur in the above text. See Note.
2. Point out all the cases of silent *e*. See Note.
3. Find all the examples of elision.

Supplementary Exercise.

Pronounce all the vowels in the above text. See Note.

VI. NASALS AND SEMIVOWELS.

Lesson 6.

17. Before a vowel, and generally before another *n* or *m*, the groups *an, am, en, em, in, im, yn, ym, ain, aim, ein, on, om, un, um, eun* do not represent nasal vowels: the *n* or *m* is pronounced, and the preceding vowel has the same sound that it would have if the following consonant were not *n* or *m*. Ex.: canon, flamme, ennemi, semaine, inimitié, synonyme, saine, aime, reine, chienne, tonne, homme, une, humain, jeune.

a. See § 41, (2).

b. In 'enivrer,' 'ennui,' 'emmener,' and a few other words, *en* and *em* have the nasal sound of *an*. In 'femme,' 'indemnité,' 'récemment,' 'solennel,' and some other words an *e* before *mm, nn*, or *mn* is pronounced *a*.

c. In 'automne' and 'condamner' the *mn* is equivalent to *nn*. In 'amnistie,' 'calomnie,' 'omnibus,' 'somniale,' and some other words, both the *m* and the *n* are pronounced, and the preceding vowel is not nasal.

d. In a number of borrowed words final *am*, *em*, *en*, *um* are pronounced as if written *âme*, *ème*, *ène*, *omme*: Abraham, Jérusalem, amen, hymen, spécimen, album, opium, etc.

18. The combination *oi* or *oi* is pronounced generally **wa**, but in some words **wâ**: boire, boîte, foire, fois, moi; froid, mois, trois. *Oin*, however, is sounded **win**: joint, loin, point, soin. *Oy* before a vowel sound regularly has the value **way**: croyant, envoyer.

19. In the combination *ui* the *u* is very short, and the stress is on the *i*: huit, lui, puis, suivre. *Uy* before a vowel sound has the value **uiy**: appuyer, fuyons. In these groups the *u* is really as much a consonant as the *w* of **wa**, **wâ**, or **win**.

20. Unaccented *ou* and *i* or *y* before a vowel are pronounced respectively **w** and **y**: fouine, louis, ouate, oui, oufe; fier, hier, hyène, nation, yeuse, yeux, Yonne. This **w** and **y** are as consonantal as the **w** and **u** just mentioned.

21. In all the groups described in §§ 18, 19, 20, the **w**, **u**, and **y** are regularly treated as *semivowels*: that is, if they begin a word, though pronounced as consonants, they cause the *elision* of a preceding vowel (see § 5). Ex.: l'oié, l'oiseau; l'huile,* l'huissier*; l'ouate, l'oufe; d'hier,* l'hyène,* l'yeuse.

a. In a few words *w*, *u*, *y* in these groups are treated as real consonants: le oui, le huit,* le yacht (= **yao**).

b. See § 41.

* The *h* is silent.

French Text.

[NOTE. — For *au* in 'principauté,' 'royaume,' see § 16, 5). For *e* in 'ces,' see § 16, 6). For *eu* in 'eut,' see § 16, 8).]

6. Mais, une des années dernières,¹ un cas fort
But a-few-years-ago a case, very
grave et tout nouveau se produisit² dans le
grave and entirely new, presented-itself in the
royaume. Un assassinat eut lieu.³ Un homme, un
kingdom. A murder occurred. A man, an
monégasque, pas un de ces étrangers errants
inhabitant-of-Monaco, not one of those wandering-strangers
qu'on rencontre par⁴ légions sur ces côtes, un
whom you-meet in legions on these shores, a
ouvrier, dans un moment de colère, tua son
workman, in a moment of anger, killed his
patron. Oh! il le tua sans raison, sans
employer. Oh! he killed-him without reason, without
prétexte acceptable. L'émotion fut unanime dans
admissible-excuse. The feeling was unanimous in
toute la⁵ principauté.
the-whole principality.

¹ Literally, *one of the last years*. 'Dernières' = *last*.

² *Produced itself*. See French Text 5, note 4.

³ *Had place*.

⁴ *By*.

⁵ *All the*.

Exercise.

1. Pronounce the groups *an, en, im, in, om, on, un*, wherever they occur in the above text, and tell whether the vowels are nasal or not.

2. Find examples of the semivowels *u* and *w*.

3. Point out and name all the accents.

Supplementary Exercise.

Pronounce all the vowels in the above text. See Note.

VII. INTONATION, ACCENT, QUANTITY.

Lesson 7.

Intonation.

22. The proper inflections of the voice must be acquired by imitation. They should be carefully studied, as they form an important element in pronunciation. In general it may be said that the differences in pitch are greater in French than in American English, and that the changes are more abrupt: hence spoken French sometimes sounds to an American a little like singing.

Accent.

23. In English words the accented syllables are very loud and the unaccented ones are very weak. If we should pronounce *universality*, a distant listener would be likely to hear nothing but *u* and *sal*. In French words, on the other hand, and in French phrases or sentences spoken without special emphasis, the syllables are all uttered with nearly the same vigor, except that the last audible one is apt to be a little stronger than the others. When a Frenchman says 'universalité,' *u, ni, ver, sa, li*, all seem to be about equal in force, and *té* generally sounds a trifle louder.

24. Both in English and in French the important words of a sentence are made prominent by a special

stress, the force of which depends on the emotions of the speaker. In English, however, this extra stress regularly falls on an accented syllable: no matter how strongly we emphasize the word *miserable*, we always pronounce it *mis'erable*, and never *misera'ble*. In French, on the contrary, the emphasis usually falls on one of the less accented vowels, oftenest on that of the root-syllable: 'misérable' in excited speech becomes 'misérable.' So 'absolument,' 'impossible,' 'incroyable' are changed to 'absolument,' 'impossible,' 'incroyable'; and, similarly, the sentences 'c'est très joli,' 'c'est trop fort' become 'c'est très joli,' 'c'est trop fort.'

Quantity.

25. To an English-speaking person nearly all French vowels sound very short. The distinctions of length are much more delicate in French than in English; in fact, it may be said that the whole range of French quantity is included between the *a* of *battery* and the *a* of *bad*, as these words are pronounced in the sentence *the battery is bad*.

26. Since this book is intended for beginners, we shall recognize only two degrees of quantity, *long* and *short*. Of course there are many differences within each of these classes; we may say, roughly, that the long vowels vary in length between the *a* in *bad* and the *a* in *bat*, and that the short vowels range between the *a* in *bat* and the *a* in *battery*.

French Text.

[NOTE. — The accented vowels in this text are italicized. In the ending *-ation* the *a* is pronounced both *â* and *a*: see § 16, 1.)]

7. La Cour suprême se réunit¹ pour juger ce
The Supreme-Court met to judge this
 cas exceptionnel, et le misérable fut condamné à
exceptional-case, and the wretch was condemned to
 mort à l'unanimité. Le souverain indigné ratifia
death unanimously. The indignant-sovereign ratified
 l'arrêt. Il ne restait plus qu'à² exécuter le criminel.
the sentence. Nothing-remained but to execute the criminal.
 Alors une difficulté surgit. Le pays ne possédait ni³
Then a difficulty arose. The country possessed-neither
 bourreau ni guillotine.⁴ Que faire?⁵ Sur⁶ l'avis
executioner nor guillotine. What to-do? At the suggestion
 du ministre des affaires étrangères, le prince
of-the minister of (the) foreign-affairs, the prince
 entama des négociations avec le gouvernement français
entered-upon (some) negotiations with the French-government
 pour obtenir le prêt d'un coupeur de têtes⁷ avec
to obtain the loan of a head-chopper with
 son appareil.
his apparatus.

¹ *United itself.* See French Text 5, note 4.

² Literally, *there remained now only to.* 'Ne' ... 'que' = *only*; 'que' loses its *e* before a vowel sound. 'Ne' ... 'plus' = *no more or no longer.* 'Ne' ... 'plus que' = *no more than or nothing but.* Compare French Text 4, note 4.

³ 'Ne' ... 'ni' = *neither.*

⁴ In France, criminals condemned to death are beheaded with a guillotine.

⁵ *Freely, what was to be done?*

⁶ *On.*

⁷ *Cutter of heads.*

Exercise.

1. Pronounce the groups *ain, am, an, en, im, in, on, un*, wherever they occur in the above text, and tell whether the vowels are nasal or not.

2. Divide into syllables: *suprême, réunit, exceptionnel, misérable, unanimité, souverain, indigné, exécuter, criminel, alors, pays, guillotine, ministre, affaires, étrangères, prince, entama, gouvernement, obtenir, têtes.*

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Pronounce all the vowels in the above text. See Note.
2. Tell why 'français' begins with a small letter.

VIII. RULES FOR QUANTITY.

Lesson 8.

27. All French vowels that are final or are followed only by silent letters may be regarded as short: *papa, foi, me, bonté, parlai, peu, vœu, mai, poli, vertu, bateau, Monaco, Pau, genou, plan, jardin, chacun, baton; rat, voie, croit, pas, assez, ceux, veut, après, bonnet, cric, vie, abus, beaux, animaux, abricot, loup, joue, comment, teint, Meung, allons.*

28. All French vowels that are not accented may be regarded as short: *ananas, apprentissage, besogneux, calorifère, universel.* It may be said even that a French vowel is short unless it bears the main accent not only of the word but also of the whole phrase in which it occurs: thus the *a* of 'fête' is long in 'troubler la fête,' short in 'la fête de Dieu.' Hence the quantity of a vowel in the accented syllable of a word often depends on the position of that word in the sentence.

29. It follows that no vowel is long unless it is accented and comes before a consonant sound, as in 'j'accuse.' Vowels so situated, however, are not always long:—

(1) If they come before the sound of *j*, *v*, *y*, or *z* (see §§ 31, 36), they are long: *cage*, *âge*, *cortège*, *gruge*, *patauge*, *bouge*, *mange*, *singe*, *songe*; *cave*, *sève*, *neuve*, *rive*, *duve*, *chauve*, *ouvre*, *chanvre*; *travail*, *bataille*, *abeille*, *feuille*, *fille*, *fouille*; *case*, *aise*, *Meuse*, *crise*, *ruse*, *dose*, *douze*, *quinze*, *onze*.

(2) If they come before the sound *r*, they are long if the *r* is final or followed only by silent letters, short if the *r* is followed by another consonant sound: *char*, *cher*, *cœur*, *dire*, *furent*, *fort*, *cours*; *arc*, *verse*, *heurte*, *infirme*, *urne*, *force*, *course*.

(3) If they come before a consonant sound other than *j*, *r*, *v*, *y*, or *z*, they are long in some words and short in others. In general their quantity must be learned by practice, but the following rules may be helpful for reference:—

1) The nasal vowels and the sounds *â*, *ô*, *eu* are almost always long: *basse*, *pâte*, *côte*, *fosse*, *meule*, *neutre*; *ancre*, *semble*, *feinte*, *plainte*, *humble*, *fonte*, *rompre*.

2) Vowels written with a circumflex accent are regularly long: *boîte*, *mêle*, *frêle*, *faîte*, *jeûne*, *abîme*, *brûle*, *croûte*. But in 'êtes,' in the verbal endings *-âmes*, *-âtes*, *-îmes*, *-îtes*, *-ûmes*, *-ûtes*, and in 'hôpital,' 'hôtel,' 'rôti' the vowel is short.

3) Before a double consonant letter, except *ss*, a vowel is short: *dalle*, *canne*, *chatte*, *selle*, *gemme*, *renne*, *mettre*, *folle*, *gomme*, *donne*, *flotte*, *butte*. Before *ss*, the vowel *a* is generally long, the other vowels usually short, but there are many exceptions.

French Text.

[NOTE.—The accented vowels in this text are italicized. The *oi* of 'roi' is sounded wâ. The *ou* of 'doute' is short.]

8. De longues délibérations eurent lieu¹ au
 (Some) long deliberations took place at-the
 ministère à Paris. On répondit² enfin en
 minister's-office in Paris. They answered finally by
 envoyant la note des frais pour déplacement des
 sending the list of-the expenses for moving (of) the
 bois et du praticien. Le tout montait à seize
 wood and (of) the operator. The whole amounted to sixteen
 mille francs. Sa Majesté songea que l'opération
 thousand francs. His Majesty reflected that the operation
 lui coûterait³ bien cher; l'assassin ne valait certes pas⁴
 would-cost-him very dear; the murderer was-surely-not-worth
 ce prix. Seize mille francs pour le cou d'un
 this price. Sixteen thousand francs for the neck of a
 drôle! Ah! mais non.⁵ On adressa alors⁶ la même
 scoundrel? I-should-think-not! They then-addressed the same
 demande au gouvernement italien. Un roi, un frère
 request to-the Italian-government. A king, a brother,
 ne se montrerait pas⁷ sans doute⁸ si exigeant qu'une
 would-not-show-himself, certainly, so exacting as a
 république.
 republic.

¹ Compare French Text 6, note 3.

² One replied. Compare French Text 2, note 6.

³ 'Lui' = to him. Compare French Text 5, note 8.

⁴ 'Valait' = was worth. 'Certes' = surely. See French Text 4, note 4.

⁵ Ah! but no!

⁶ One addressed then. Compare French Text 2, note 6. French adverbs, unless they begin the sentence, nearly always follow their verbs.

⁷ See French Text 4, note 4; and French Text 5, note 4.

⁸ Without doubt.

Exercise.

1. Pronounce all the accented vowels in the above text, and tell whether they are long or short. See Note.

2. Pronounce all the vowel sounds in the first three sentences.

3. Explain the use of the *e* in 'songea' and the second *e* in 'exigeant.'

Supplementary Exercise.

Pronounce all the vowels in the above text. See Note.

IX. CONSONANT SOUNDS.

Lesson 9.

30. The only very difficult French consonant sound for an English-speaking person to acquire is *r*. It may be pronounced in either one of two ways: (1) by drawing the tongue into the back of the mouth, and letting the uvula vibrate against it; (2) by making the point of the tongue vibrate against the upper front teeth. The latter kind of *r* is sometimes used in English by elocutionists and singers. Students should select one of these, and practise it constantly until they can produce it without difficulty. Ex.: *reine*, *rare*, *rire*, *sur*, *porter*, *armée*, *gros*, *très*, *drôle*, *prix*.

31. The French language has the following consonant sounds:—

CONSONANT.	EXAMPLES.	SOUND.
b:	<i>abbé</i> , <i>bu</i> , <i>fabrique</i> ;	<i>b</i> in <i>labor</i> .
ch:	<i>chose</i> , <i>fâcher</i> , <i>tache</i> ;	<i>sh</i> in <i>sheep</i> .
d:	<i>adresse</i> , <i>code</i> , <i>dans</i> ;	<i>d</i> in <i>seedy</i> .
f:	<i>affaire</i> , <i>fil</i> , <i>nef</i> ;	<i>f</i> in <i>feet</i> .

CONSONANT.	EXAMPLES.	SOUND.
g :	fagot, garnir, nègre;	<i>gg</i> in <i>foggy</i> .
j :	jeune, jurer, rajah;	<i>si</i> in <i>vision</i> .
k :	kermesse, kilogramme, yak;	<i>ck</i> in <i>pocket</i> .
l :	aller, belle, long;	<i>ll</i> in <i>silly</i> .
m :	aimer, flamme, moi;	<i>mm</i> in <i>summer</i> .
n :	donner, neuf, saine;	<i>nn</i> in <i>finny</i> .
gn :	agneau, besogne, vigne;	<i>ni</i> in <i>pinion</i> .
p :	couper, nappe, plus;	<i>pp</i> in <i>dipper</i> .
r :	erreur, rêve, riche;	see § 30.
s :	basse, glisser, sept;	<i>ss</i> in <i>hiss</i> .
t :	dette, tête, trois;	<i>t</i> in <i>pity</i> .
v :	savant, vive, voit;	<i>v</i> in <i>never</i> .
w :	wallon, waterproof, wiski;	<i>w</i> in <i>woo</i> .
u :	cuire, lui, puis;	see § 19.
y :	foyer, payer, yeux;	<i>y</i> in <i>ye</i> .
z :	azur, fez, zèle;	<i>s</i> in <i>easy</i> .

These consonants should never be mumbled, but should all be articulated as clearly as possible; **y**, particularly, is more vigorous in French than in English. Any consonant sound that is the last audible element of a word should be uttered with special force and distinctness: *patte*, *tel*, *vide*.

32. It should be said at once that the sounds **k** and **w** are seldom represented by these letters; and **g**, **j**, **y**, **z** are very often differently spelled. See next chapter.

33. Additional rules:—

1) In forming **d**, **l**, **n**, **t** let the point of the tongue touch the backs of the upper front teeth. Ex.: *nous te le donnons*.

2) In pronouncing **gn** press the point of the tongue against the backs of the lower front teeth. Ex.: *Isigny, baigner*.

3) When a final *l* or *r* sound is preceded by **b, d, f, g, k, p, t, or v**, it should never be allowed to form a separate syllable, but should be spoken very quickly and in a whisper. Ex.: *peuple*, *quatre*; compare English *people* = *peep-l*. Final *m* preceded by **s** should be whispered also. Ex.: *prisme*.

4) **S** has a sharper sound in French than it has in English. Ex.: *six*.

34. The letter *h* is silent in modern French; but at the beginning of certain words, in which it was formerly pronounced, it prevents the elision of a preceding vowel. Such a word is said to begin with "aspirate *h*." Ex.: *la honte*, and *not* *l'honte*; *le héros*, and *not* *l'héros*; *il me hait*, and *not* *il m'hait*. See § 42.

35. For *semivowels*, see § 21.

French Text.

[NOTE. — For the *au* of 'faudrait,' see § 16, 5). The *h* of 'hésitant' and 'hommes' is not "aspirate."]

9. Le gouvernement italien envoya un mémoire
The Italian-government sent an estimate
 qui montait à douze mille francs. Douze mille
which amounted to twelve thousand francs. Twelve thousand
 francs! Il faudrait¹ prélever un impôt nouveau,
francs! It would-be-necessary to-levy a new-tax,
 un impôt de deux francs par tête d'habitant.²
a tax of two francs per-capita.
 Cela suffirait pour amener des troubles inconnus
That would-be-enough to cause (some) unknown-disturbances
 dans l'État. On songea³ à faire décapiter le gueux⁴
in the state. They thought of having-the-rascal-decapitated
 par un simple soldat. Mais le général, consulté,
by a common soldier. But the general, on-being-consulted,

répondit en hésitant⁵ que ses hommes
replied reluctantly that his men
 n'avaient peut-être pas⁶ une pratique suffisante de
had-not-perhaps enough-practice with
 l'arme blanche⁷ pour s'acquitter⁸ d'une tâche
the sword to acquit-themselves of a task
 demandant une grande expérience dans le
requiring a vast experience in the
 maniement du sabre.
use of-the sabre.

¹ See French Text 5, note 1.

² *By head of inhabitant*; that is, *for every inhabitant*.

³ See French Text 8, notes 2 and 6. 'On' means *one or people, or we, you, or they*, used in an indefinite or a general way. Its verb is always in the third person singular.

⁴ Literally, *to make decapitate the rascal*. *To have anything done* is translated by 'faire' with the active infinitive.

⁵ *Hesitating*.

⁶ 'Avaient' = *had*. See French Text 4, note 4.

⁷ *White weapon*.

⁸ See French Text 5, note 4.

Exercise.

1. Describe the *h* of 'habitant.'
2. Pronounce carefully: **peut-être, sabre, simple, trouble.**
3. Pronounce the consonants in: **arme, blanche, con-**
sulté, douze, faire, grande, italien, mille, nouveau, par, pour,
tâche, tête.

Supplementary Exercise.

Pronounce all the syllables in the first five sentences.
 See Note.

X. CONSONANT LETTERS.

Lesson 10.

36. The usual spellings of the different consonant sounds are given below, with examples:—

CONSONANT.	SPELLINGS.	EXAMPLES.
b:	<i>b; bb:</i>	bas, club, globe; abbesse.
ch:	<i>ch:</i>	arracher, blanche, chien.
d:	<i>d; dd:</i>	dé, ride, rôder; addition.
f:	<i>f; ff; ph:</i>	café, canif; suffire; phare.
g:	<i>g; gg; gu:</i>	gai; aggraver; bague, guide.
j:	<i>j; g before e, i, y:</i>	juste; âge, agir, gypse.
k:	<i>c; cc; qu; ch; k:</i>	sec; accord; qui; cœur; képi.
l:	<i>l; ll:</i>	loi, pâle, tel; seller.
m:	<i>m; mm:</i>	dame, fumer, mai; comme.
n:	<i>n; nn:</i>	finir, nous, veine; tonner.
gn:	<i>gn:</i>	bagne, ignoble, Isigny.
p:	<i>p; pp:</i>	dupé, papier, peu; Dieppe.
r:	<i>r; rr:</i>	car, rose, tyran; horrible.
s:	<i>{ c before e, i, y: s; ss; ç; t; x:</i>	Cyrano, ici, place. si; messe; ça; nation; dix.
t:	<i>t; tt; th:</i>	net, ôter; patte; thé.
v:	<i>v:</i>	avoir, cuve, vous.
w:	<i>o; ou; w; wh:</i>	soif; ouest; wagon; whist.
u:	<i>u before vowel:</i>	nuit, suif, truite.
y:	<i>{ ill; il; y; i: ll or l after i:</i>	paille; œil; loyer; hier. briller, fille, péril.
z:	<i>{ s between vowels: z; x:</i>	aise, brise, causer, user. douzaine, zéro; dixième.

Here, as in the case of the vowels, we find one character standing for several different sounds. The follow-

ing rules, which should be reserved for reference, cover the most important cases:—

1) *C, g* are sounded like **ʒ, j** when followed by *e, i, y*, with or without accents: *cède, cire, cygne, tracé; congé, gîte, gymnase, mangeons, plage*. Otherwise they are pronounced **k, g**: *cap, clou, cou, écot, écu, lac; aigu, gare, goût, gros, joug, magot*. *Cc, gg* before *e* and *i* are sounded **kʒ, gj**: *succès, vacciner, suggérer*. *Ç* is always pronounced **ʒ**.

2) *Qu, gu* before a vowel are almost always pronounced **k, g**: *quai, quand, qui, toque; guide, naviguons, vague, vogue*. In a few words, however, the *u* is sounded as a semivowel: *aiguille, aiguiser, équateur, linguiste*, etc. *Gu* before *ê* is pronounced **gu**, the *ê* being silent: *ciguë*. Final *gu* is of course **gu**: *aigu*. In 'orgueil' the *gue* represents **gœ**. Final *q* is **k**: *cinq, coq*.

3) *Ch* is nearly always pronounced **ch**: *boucher, cacher, chat, chaud, chez, chou, fichu, vache*. Of the exceptional words, in which *ch* is sounded **k**, the commonest are: *archaïque, chœur, chrétien, Christ, écho, orchestre*.

4) *S* generally has the sound **z**, when it stands between two vowels: *amuser, case, chaise, mise, oser*. Otherwise it is nearly always sounded **s**: *ainsi, danse, fils, prisme, sac, sur, verse*.

5) The group *ti*, when followed by a vowel, is pronounced **sy** or **si** in many words, and especially in the endings *-tial, -tie, -tiel, -tieux, -tion*. Ex.: *partial, démocratie, essentiel, factieux, nation, initier, patience*. It is never so pronounced after *s* or *x*: *question, mixtion*.

6) *X* has four pronunciations. The usual one is **kʒ**: *excuse, fixer, luxe*. In the initial syllable *ex* before a vowel (and in some other cases), the *x* is sounded **gz**: *examen, exiger, exister*. It has the value **s** in 'soixante' and in a few proper names. Its sound is **z** in the following numerals and their derivatives: *deuxième, dix-huit, dixième, dix-neuf, sixième*.

7) *Ill* (and, at the end of a word, *il*), when preceded by a vowel, always indicates the sound *y*: *conseiller*, *cueillir*, *deuil*, *fenouil*, *feuille*, *grenouille*, *œil*, *orgueil*, *soleil*, *taille*, *travail*, *vieil*, *vieillard*. — After a consonant, *ill* generally stands for *iy*, as in 'billet,' 'fille,' 'gentille,' 'habiller'; but in a few words it represents *il*, the commonest being 'Lille,' 'mille,' 'millier,' 'million,' 'tranquille,' 'village,' 'ville.' Final *il* after a consonant is sounded in some words *i* (*baril*, *chenil*, *fusil*, *gentil*, *outil*, *sourcil*), in others *il* (*avril*, *exil*, *fil*, *mil*), in a few *iy* (*péril*). — The word 'il' is in careful speech *il*, in ordinary pronunciation *i*.

8) In initial *irr* (as in 'irrégulier') and in the future and conditional forms of 'acquérir,' 'courir,' 'mourir' (*acquerrai*, *courrai*, *mourrai*, etc.), the *rr* is pronounced very long. Some speakers lengthen the *ll* and the *mm* of initial *ill* and *imm* (as in 'illustre,' 'immense').

French Text.

[NOTE. — In this text final *r*, *s*, and *t* are silent, except the final *r* of 'découvrir.' For the *t* of 'fut' in line 6, and the *s* of 'mais' and the *t* of 'fallut' in line 7, see § 41. 'Longtemps' is pronounced *lontan*.]

10. Alors le prince convoqua de nouveau la
Then the prince assembled once-more the
 Cour suprême et lui soumit¹ ce cas embarrassant.
Supreme-Court, and submitted-to-it this embarrassing-case.
 On délibéra² longtemps, sans découvrir³ aucun
They deliberated a-long-while, without discovering any
 moyen pratique. Enfin le premier président proposa
practicable-method. At-last the first president proposed
 de commuer la peine de mort en celle de
to commute the penalty of death to that of
 prison perpétuelle, et la mesure fut adoptée.
imprisonment for-life, and the measure was adopted.
 Mais on ne possédait pas de⁴ prison. Il fallut⁵
But they-had-no prison. It-was-necessary

en⁶ installer une, et un géolier fut nommé,
 (of them) to-fit-up one, and a jailer was appointed,
 qui prit livraison du prisonnier.
 who took charge of-the prisoner.

¹ See French Text 8, note 3.

² See French Text 9, note 3.

³ 'Découvrir' means really *to discover*. In French the infinitive, and not the present participle, is used after all prepositions except 'en.' For an example of the preposition 'en' see the second sentence of French Text 8.

⁴ For 'on' see French Text 9, note 3. 'Ne' ... 'pas de' = *no*; 'de' loses its *e* before a vowel sound. Compare French Text 4, note 4.

⁵ Freely, *they had*. See French Text 5, note 1.

⁶ The pronoun 'en' means *of it or of them*: see the beginning of French Text 5. 'Il fallut en installer une' = *it was necessary to fit up one (of them)*, that is, *a prison*. Compare the sentence: 'je n'ai pas de frère, mais vous en avez deux' = *I have no brother, but you have two (of them)*, that is, *two brothers*.

Exercise.

Pronounce all the consonant sounds in the above text.
 See Note.

Supplementary Exercise.

Pronounce all the syllables in the above text.
 N. B. — The *i* in the adjective and noun ending *-ier* is a semivowel, and does not count as a separate syllable.

XI. SILENT CONSONANTS.

Lesson 11.

37. Consonant letters are frequently silent in French, especially at the end of a word. Ex.: *assieds*, *baptême*, *compte*, *corps*, *district*, *doigt*, *est* (= *is*), *fi/s*, *legs*, *mets*, *poids*, *pou/s*, *puits*, *sculpter*, *sept*, *temps*, *vingt*.

a. We have already seen that French *h* is now silent: see §§ 34, 42.

b. For *m* and *n* at the end of a group of letters designating a nasal vowel, see §§ 14, 16.

c. Final *nt* is always silent in the ending *-ent* in the third person plural of verbs: ils *donnent*, ils *vendent*.

38. Final *d*, *g*, *p*, *s*, *t*, *x*, and *z* are generally silent. Ex.: fond, lourd, pied; faubourg, long, sang; galop, trop; donne, états, très, trois; et, haut, met, vient; choux, croix; allez, chez, nez. Some of the most important exceptions are given below for reference:—

1) *D* is sounded in 'sud,' and in some proper names, such as 'Cid.'

2) *G* is sounded in 'joug,' 'zigzag,' and some other words, mostly proper names.

3) *P* is sounded in 'cap' and a few uncommon words.

4) *S* is sounded in a number of words, of which the commonest are: as, atlas, bis, fils, gratis, hélas, laps, lis, maïs, mars, mœurs, omnibus, os, ours, sens, vis. It is heard also in many proper names, such as 'Blas,' 'Brutus.'

5) *T* is sounded in many words, of which the most important are: brut, Christ, chut, déficit, dot, est (= *east*), fat, huit, mat, net, ouest, sept, strict, whist. It is heard also in words in *-act*: contact, exact, tact. Words in *-ect* differ in treatment, the *ct* being pronounced in some (abject, correct, direct, infect), and silent in others (aspect, circonspect, respect, suspect).

6) *X* has the sound of *s* in 'dix' and 'six.'

7) *Z* is pronounced in 'fez,' 'gaz,' and some proper names.

39. Final *c*, *f*, *l*, *q*, *r* are generally pronounced. Ex.: lac, parc; if, nef; nul, sel; cinq, coq; char, fer.

Some of the principal cases in which they are silent will be given below for reference:—

1) *C* is silent in: *banc, blanc, caoutchouc, clerc, cric, donc, escroc, estomac, franc, jonc, porc, tabac, vainc.* Also in some uncommon words.

2) *F* is silent in 'cerf,' 'clef,' 'nerf,' and in the plurals 'bœufs,' 'œufs.'

3) *L* is silent in *soûl.*

4) *R* is silent in 'monsieur.' It is silent also in *er* at the end of words of more than one syllable: *aimer, berger, clocher, dernier, donner, léger, premier.* But it is sounded in some proper names, such as 'Esther,' and in: *amer, cancer, cuiller, enfer, éther, hiver, pater.*

French Text.

[NOTE.—When 'six' is used as an adjective before a word beginning with a consonant, the *x* is silent. For the final consonant of 'tout,' 'faisait,' 'son,' 'en,' in the phrases 'tout alla bien,' 'faisait autant,' 'son État,' 'n'en est pas,' see § 41.]

11. Pendant six mois tout alla bien. Le captif
For six months all went well. The captive
 dormait tout le jour sur une paillasse dans
slept all (the) day on a straw-mattress in
 son réduit, et le gardien en¹ faisait autant²
his retreat, and the guardian (of it) did the same
 sur une chaise devant la porte en regardant³
on a chair before the door, (while) watching
 passer les voyageurs. Mais le prince est économe,
the-travellers-pass-by. But the prince is economical—
 c'est là son moindre défaut, et il se fait rendre⁴
that is (there) his least fault— and he has-rendered-to-him
 compte des plus petites dépenses accomplies dans
an-account of-the smallest expenditures made in
 son État (la liste n'en est pas longue⁵). On
his state. The list of-them-is-not-long. They

lui remit donc la note des frais relatifs à la
handed-him, then, the bill for-the expenses connected with the
 création de cette fonction nouvelle, à l'entretien
creation of this new-office, with the keeping
 de la prison, du prisonnier et du veilleur.
of the prison, (of) the prisoner, and (of) the watchman.
 Le traitement de ce dernier grevait lourdement⁶
The salary of this latter was-a-heavy-burden-for
 le budget du souverain.
the finances of-the sovereign.

• ¹ See French Text 10, note 6.

² 'Autant' = *as much*. 'Le gardien en faisait autant' = *the guardian did as much (of it)*, that is, *of sleeping*; in other words, *the guardian slept likewise*.

³ See French Text 10, note 3.

⁴ See French Text 9, note 4; and French Text 5, note 4. 'Se' means here *to himself*.

⁵ For 'en' see French Text 10, note 6. For 'ne'... 'pas' see French Text 4, note 4.

⁶ *Burdened heavily*.

Exercise.

Point out the silent consonants in the above text. See Note.

Supplementary Exercise.

Pronounce all the consonant sounds in the above text.

XII. LINKING.

Lesson 12.

40. Review §§ 34, 37, 38, 39.

41. Many final consonants that were formerly always pronounced are now heard only when the next word begins with a vowel sound. Even then they are not spoken unless the two words are closely connected. They are silent before "aspirate *h*" (see § 34). The

t of the conjunction 'et,' *and*, is never pronounced. Examples:—

we come = nous venons, *we go* = nous[^]allons,
 but *I say*: "*Let's go*," = je dis: "Allons";
it's you = c'est vous, *you live* = vous[^]habitez,
 but *you hate* = vous haïssez;
she is = elle est, *she is here* = elle est[^]ici,
 but *he and she* = lui et elle.

(1) In such cases the consonant is carried over to the next word, so that 'vous êtes,' for instance, is pronounced vou-zèt; *s* and *x* then have the value of *z*, *c* and *g* that of *k*, and *d* that of *t*. Examples:—

the men = les[^]hommes, *six years* = six[^]ans;
porcupine = porc[^]épic, *high rank* = rang[^]élevé;
my feet are cold = j'ai froid[^]aux pieds;
a great man = un grand[^]homme.

(2) When the *n* or *m* of final *an*, *am*, *en*, *em*, *in*, *im*, *yn*, *ym*, *ain*, *aim*, *ein*, *un*, *um*, *on*, or *om* is joined to the next word, the preceding nasal vowel, *an*, *in*, *un*, or *on*, loses much of its nasality; many speakers omit the nasal element altogether, and pronounce the vowel as *â*, *è*, *œ*, or *o*. Examples:—

in Italy = en[^]Italie; *another* = un[^]autre;
my friend = mon[^]ami; *his idea* = son[^]idée.

(3) It will be seen hereafter that many words have a different pronunciation and some have a different spelling, according as the next word begins with a vowel or a consonant sound.

42. The following list of examples of "aspirate *h*" is given only for reference. These words and their

derivatives are the only common ones in which *h* is "aspirate":—

hache	Hanse	harpie	héros	houille
haie	hanter	harpon	herse	houle
haillon	happe	hasard	hêtre	houlette
haine	happer	hâte	heurt	houppe
haïr	haquet	haubert	hibou	houseaux
haire	harangue	hausse	hideux	houspiller
haler	haras	haut	hiérarchie	houx
hâler	harasser	Havane	hisser	hublot
haleter	harceler	hâve	hocher	huche
hall	harde	Havre	Hollande	hue
halle	hardi	havresac	homard	Hugo
halte	harem	heaume	honnir	huguenot
hamac	hareng	hennir	honte	humer
hameau	hargneux	Henri	hoquet	huppe
hampe	haricot	héraut	horde	hure
hanche	harnacher	hérissier	hors	hurier
hangar	harnais	hernie	hotte	hussard
hanneton	harpe	héron	houblon	hutte

For 'huit,' see § 21, *a*.

French Text.

[NOTE. — When 'tous,' *all*, is used as a *pronoun*, its final *s* is sounded.]

12. Il fit d'abord la grimace ¹ ; mais quand il						
<i>At-first-he-grinned-and-bore-it; but when he</i>						
songea	que	cela	pouvait	durer	toujours	(le
<i>reflected</i>	<i>that</i>	<i>it</i>	<i>might</i>	<i>last</i>	<i>forever</i>	<i>(the</i>
condamné	était	jeune),	il	prévin	son	ministre
<i>convict</i>	<i>was</i>	<i>young</i>),	<i>he</i>	<i>warned</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>minister</i>
de la	justice	d'avoir à ²	prendre	des	mesures	
<i>of (the)</i>	<i>justice</i>	<i>that-he-must</i>	<i>take</i>	<i>(some)</i>	<i>measures</i>	
pour	supprimer	cette	dépense.	Le	ministre	
<i>to</i>	<i>suppress</i>	<i>this</i>	<i>expense.</i>	<i>The</i>	<i>minister</i>	

consulta le président du tribunal, et tous deux¹
consulted the Chief-justice, and both
 convinrent qu'on supprimerait² la charge de
agreed to-do-away-with the office of
 geôlier. Le prisonnier, invité à se garder³ tout
jailer. The prisoner, when asked to watch-himself all
 seul, ne pouvait⁴ manquer de s'évader,⁵ ce qui
alone, could-not fail to run-away, which
 résoudre la question à la satisfaction de tous.
would-solve the problem to the satisfaction of all.

¹ Literally, *he made first the grimace*, that is, *at first he made up a face*.

² Literally, *to have to*.

³ Literally, *all two*.

⁴ Literally, *that one should suppress the office of jailer*, that is, *that the office of jailer should be suppressed*.

⁵ Compare French Text 5, note 4.

⁶ 'Ne' is used here with the sense of 'ne' . . . 'pas.'

Exercise.

1. Point out a case of linking in the first line of the above text.
2. Pick out all the silent consonants.
3. Explain the use of *e* in 'songea.'
4. Find and name all the accents.
5. Indicate the cases of elision.

Supplementary Exercise.

Pronounce all the words in the above text, dividing those of more than one syllable into syllables.

XIII. REVIEW OF VOWELS.

Lesson 18.

Lesson 188.

43. Review Chapters III, IV, V, VI.

French Text.

[NOTE. — For *ai, au, e, eu, o*, wherever they occur in this text, see § 16, 3), 5), 6), 8), 9). For the *ill* of 'tranquillement,' see § 36, 7).]

13. Le geôlier fut donc rendu à sa famille,
The jailer was therefore restored to his family,
 et un aide de cuisine¹ du palais resta chargé²
and a kitchen-hand of the palace remained with orders
 simplement de porter, matin et soir, la nourriture
simply to carry, morning and evening, the food
 du coupable. Mais celui-ci ne fit³ aucune tentative
of the culprit. But the latter did not make any attempt
 pour reconquérir sa liberté. Or, un jour, comme
to regain his liberty. Now, one day, when
 on avait négligé de lui fournir⁴ ses aliments, on
they had neglected to bring him his victuals, they
 le vit⁵ arriver⁶ tranquillement pour les réclamer⁷;
saw him coming quietly to demand them;
 et il prit dès lors⁸ l'habitude, afin d'éviter
and after that he fell into the habit — in order to save
 une course au cuisinier,⁹ de venir¹⁰ aux heures des repas¹¹
the cook's journey — of coming at meal-times
 manger au palais avec les gens de service,¹² dont
to eat in the palace with the servants, whose
 il devint l'ami.¹³
friend he became.

¹ Assistant of kitchen.

² Charged.

³ 'Pas' is not used here, because 'aucune' follows. 'Aucun' or 'aucune' is equivalent to 'pas de': see French Text 10, note 4.

⁴ *Furnish to him.* See French Text 5, note 8.

⁵ French Text 5, note 5.

⁶ *Arrive.*

⁷ 'Les' = *them*.

⁸ *He took from then.*

⁹ *A journey to the cook.*

¹⁰ *To come.* See French Text 10, note 3.

¹¹ *At the hours of the meals.*

¹² *People of service.*

¹³ *Of whom he became the friend.*

Exercise.

Pronounce all the vowel sounds in the above text.

Supplementary Exercise.

Pronounce all the words in the above text.

XIV. REVIEW OF CONSONANTS.

Lesson 14.

Lesson 134.

44. Review Chapters IX, X, XI, XII.

French Text.

[NOTE.—For *a* in 'situation,' see French Text 7, NOTE; for *e* in 'Monte,' see French Text 1, note 2; for *eu* in 'déjeuner,' 'seule,' see § 16, 8); for *o* in 'Monaco,' 'porte,' 'sortir,' and *o* in 'hôtel,' see § 16, 9), 10); for *oi* in 'fois,' see § 18. For *mn* in 'condamné,' see § 17, c. For *s* in 'Casino,' 'prison,' see § 36, 4). For final *s* and *z*, see § 38; for final *c*, see § 39, 1). When 'cinq' is used as an adjective before a word beginning with a consonant, its *q* is silent. For 'quand il,' 'dans un,'¹ 'puis il,' 'dont il,' 'fermait avec,' 'pas une,' see § 41, 1).]

14. Après le déjeuner, il allait¹ faire un
After (the) breakfast, he used-to-go and-take a
 tour, jusqu'à Monte-Carlo. Il entraît² parfois
walk, as-far-as Monte-Carlo. He would-go sometimes
 au Casino risquer cinq francs sur le tapis vert.³
into-the Casino and-risk five francs on the green-cloth.

Quand il avait gagné, il s'offrait⁴ un bon
When he had won, he would-treat-himself-to a good
 dîner dans un hôtel en renom,⁵ puis il revenait
dinner in a hotel of-good-repute; then he would-return
 dans⁶ sa prison, dont il fermait avec soin⁷ la
to his prison, of-which he carefully-fastened the
 porte au dedans. Il ne découcha pas une seule
door on-the inside. He did-not-stay-out-overnight a single
 fois. La situation devenait difficile, non pour
time. The situation was-growing awkward, not for
 le condamné, mais pour les juges. La Cour
the convict, but for the judges. The Court
 se réunit de nouveau, et il fut décidé
met again, and it was decided
 qu'on inviterait le criminel⁸ à sortir des États de
that-the-criminal-should-be-asked to go-out of-the States of
 Monaco.
Monaco.

¹ 'Il allait' means *he went, he did go, he was going, he used to go, or he would go* in the sense of *he used to go*. Compare French Text 4, note 5.

² Literally, *he would enter*.

³ The gambling table.

⁴ Offered himself.

⁵ In renown.

⁶ Into.

⁷ Closed with care.

⁸ See French Text 12, note 4.

Exercise.

Pronounce all the consonant sounds in the above text.

Supplementary Exercise.

Pronounce all the vowel sounds in the above text.

XV. REVIEW OF SPELLING AND QUANTITY.

Lesson 15.

Lesson 135.

45. Review Chapters I, II, VII, VIII.

French Text.

[NOTE.—The accented vowels in this text are printed in italics. The *a* of 'chasser' is pronounced *a*; for the first *e* of 'exécuté,' 'existence,' see § 16, 6); for the *en* of 'gardien,' 'moyen,' 'rien,' see § 16, 7); for the *oi* of 'moi,' see § 18; 'eh,' 'que je,' 'qu'est-ce' are pronounced respectively *é*, *kéj*, *kès*. For the *x* of 'exécuté,' 'existence,' see § 36, 6). For 'cet arrêt,' 'pas exécuté,' 'suis ensuite,' 'remis aux,' 'avez enlevé,' see § 41, (1). 'Lorsque,' 'aujourd'hui' are divided thus: *lors-que*, *au-jour-d'hui*.]

15. *Lorsqu'on lui signifia cet arrêt, il répondit*
When they made-known-to-him this decision, he answered
simplement: «Je vous trouve¹ plaisants. Eh bien,
simply: "I think-you-are ridiculous. Why,
qu'est-ce que je deviendrai, moi?² Je n'ai plus de³
what-is-to-become-of-me? I have-no-longer-any
moyen d'existence. Que voulez-vous⁴ que je fasse?⁵
means of subsistence. What do-you-expect me-to-do?
J'étais condamné à mort. Vous ne m'avez pas exécuté.⁶
I was condemned to death. You didn't-execute-me.
Je n'ai rien dit.⁷ Je suis ensuite condamné à la
I said-nothing. I am next condemned to (the)
prison perpétuelle et remis aux mains d'un
imprisonment for-life, and given into-the hands of a
geôlier. Vous m'avez enlevé mon gardien. Je
jailer. You deprived-me-of my guardian. I
n'ai rien dit encore.⁸ Aujourd'hui, vous voulez
said-nothing even-then. To-day you want

me chasser du pays. Ah! mais non.⁹ Je suis
to-drive-me from-the country. Not-a-bit-of-it! I am
 prisonnier, votre prisonnier, jugé et condamné par
a-prisoner, your prisoner, judged and condemned by
 vous. J'accomplis¹⁰ ma peine fidèlement. Je
you. I shall-undergo my punishment faithfully. I
 reste¹⁰ ici.»
shall-stay here."

¹ *I find you or I think you.*

² *What is it that I shall become, I?*

³ See French Text 7, note 2; and French Text 10, note 4.

⁴ *Expect-you or do you expect?* See French Text 4, note 5.

⁵ *That I do.*

⁶ 'Me' = *me*; 'me' loses its *e* before a vowel sound. 'Vous avez exécuté' means *you have executed, you executed, or you did execute.*

⁷ 'Ne' . . . 'rien' means *nothing or not anything.*

⁸ *Still or again.*

⁹ See French Text 8, note 5.

¹⁰ The present tense is used here with the sense of the future.

Exercise.

1. Point out the cases of elision in the above text.
2. Divide into syllables all the words of more than one syllable.
3. Pronounce all the accented vowels, and tell whether they are long or short.

Supplementary Exercise.

Pronounce all the syllables in the above text.

XVI. NOUNS, ARTICLES, ADJECTIVES.

Lesson 16.

46. These subjects will be treated more thoroughly in the latter part of the book: nouns, in Chapters CLXXXI–CLXXXV; articles, in Chapters CLIII to CLXII; adjectives, in Chapters CLXIV–CLXXI.

Nouns.

47. In French there are no neuter nouns. Even the names of inanimate things are either masculine or feminine. As French articles and adjectives change their form according to the gender and number of the word they modify, it is very important to know the gender of every noun.

48. French nouns have only one form for the singular and one for the plural: they have no ending that corresponds to the English possessive *'s*. Possession is denoted in French by the preposition *'de,' of*. Ex.: *my father's sabre* = le sabre de mon père; *the family's food* = la nourriture de la famille.

49. French nouns usually form their plural by adding silent *s* to the singular: état, états; géôlier, géôliers; porte, portes; prince, princes. Nouns which in the singular end in *s, x, or z* are invariable: *case, cases* = cas; *voice, voices* = voix; *nose, noses* = nez. Some

nouns, which will be discussed later, form their plural in other ways.

Articles.

50. The French indefinite article, corresponding to English *a* or *an*, is 'un' before a masculine, 'une' before a feminine noun:—

MASCULINE.

un palais

FEMININE.

une famille

51. The French definite article, corresponding to English *the*, is 'le' before a masculine singular, 'la' before a feminine singular, 'les' before a plural noun:—

MASCULINE.

le cuisinier

les juges

FEMININE.

la cuisine

les heures

Adjectives.

52. French adjectives change their form according as the noun or pronoun they modify is masculine or feminine, singular or plural. The form of the adjective that is found in dictionaries is that of the masculine singular.

53. French adjectives usually form their feminine by adding silent *e* to the masculine singular:—

MASCULINE.

pretty :

tall :

fine :

joli

grand

fin

FEMININE.

jolie

grande

fine

If the masculine singular ends in silent *e*, the masculine and the feminine are exactly alike: *easy* = *m.* facile, *f.* facile. Many adjectives, which will be discussed later, form their feminine in other ways.

54. French adjectives form their plural by adding silent *s* to the singular:—

	MASC. SING.	MASC. PL.	FEM. SING.	FEM. PL.
<i>pretty</i> :	joli	jolis	jolie	jolies
<i>tall</i> :	grand	grands	grande	grandes
<i>fine</i> :	fin	fin	fine	fines
<i>easy</i> :	facile	faciles	faciles	faciles

If the masculine singular ends in *s* or *x*, the masculine plural is just like it: *bad* = *m. sing.* mauvais, *m. pl.* mauvais, *f. sing.* mauvaise, *f. pl.* mauvaises. A few adjectives, which will be discussed later, form their plural in other ways.

55. The *comparison* of French adjectives was described in note 9 to French Text 5, on page 16.

French Text.

[NOTE.—For the following phrases, see § 41: *fut* atterrée, *eut* une, *remit* à, *offrirait* au, *petit enclos*, *son* ancien, *vit* heureux.]

16. La Cour suprême fut atterrée. Le prince
The Supreme-Court was prostrated. The prince
 eut¹ une colère terrible et ordonna de prendre
flew-into a terrible-rage and gave-orders to take
 des mesures. On se remit² à délibérer. Alors,
(some) measures. They began-once-more to deliberate. Then
 il fut décidé qu'on offrirait au coupable une
it was decided that they should-offer (to) the culprit a

pension de six cents francs pour aller vivre³
pension of six hundred francs to go and-live

à l'étranger. Il accepta. Il a loué un petit
abroad. He + accepted. He has hired a little

enclos à cinq minutes de l'État de son ancien
walled-lot (at) five minutes from the State of his former

• souverain, et il vit heureux⁴ sur sa terre,
sovereign, and he lives happily on his land,

cultivant quelques légumes et méprisant les
raising a-few vegetables and despising (the)

potentats.

potentates.

¹ Had.

² 'Se mettre à' means to begin to; 'se remettre à' is to begin to again.

³ To go and do something or to come and do something is translated by 'aller' or 'venir' followed by an infinitive without any conjunction: *he came and saw me* = *il vint me voir*. See the first sentence of French Text 14.

⁴ Happy.

Exercise.

1. Tell the gender of: *cour*, *prince*, *colère*, *pension*, *enclos*. Give the plural of these words. Use the indefinite article with the singular, the definite article with the singular and the plural of the same words.

2. Give the masculine and the feminine, singular and plural forms of 'petit' and 'terrible.'

Supplementary Exercise.

Translate into French: *a little court*; *the little states*; *a little prince*; *the little pensions*; *the Supreme Court's measures*; *his little potentate's land*; *his former sovereign's terrible rage*.

XVII. FORMS OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

Lesson 17.

56. We have seen that 'le' changes its form according to the gender and number of the noun it modifies:—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Masculine:</i>	le	les
<i>Feminine:</i>	la	les

Before a word beginning with a vowel or semivowel sound the *e* of 'le' and the *a* of 'la' are replaced by an apostrophe, and the *s* of 'les' is sounded: see § 41, (1). Ex.: *the son* = le fils, *the excellent father* = l'excellent père, *the man* = l'homme, *the usher* = l'huissier, *the hero* = le héros ("aspirate *h*"); *the daughter* = la fille, *the wife* = l'épouse, *the happy mother* = l'heureuse mère, *the oil* = l'huile, *the hedge* = la haie ("aspirate *h*"); *the little children* = les petits enfants, *the children* = les enfants, *the oysters* = les huîtres, *the lobsters* = les homards ("aspirate *h*").

57. When 'le' or 'les' is preceded by 'de,' *of* or *from*, or 'à,' *to* or *at*, the preposition and the article are contracted into one word. The other forms of the article remain unchanged.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Masculine</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{de + le = du} \\ \text{de + l' = de l'} \end{array} \right\}$	de + les = des
<i>Feminine</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{de + la = de la} \\ \text{de + l' = de l' } \end{array} \right\}$	de + les = des

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Masculine</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \grave{a} + \text{le} = \text{au} \\ \grave{a} + \text{l}' = \grave{a} \text{ l}' \end{array} \right\}$	$\grave{a} + \text{les} = \text{aux}$
<i>Feminine</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \grave{a} + \text{la} = \grave{a} \text{ la} \\ \grave{a} + \text{l}' = \grave{a} \text{ l}' \end{array} \right\}$	$\grave{a} + \text{les} = \text{aux}$

Before a word beginning with a vowel or semivowel sound the *s* and *x* of 'des' and 'aux' are pronounced: see § 41, (1). Ex.:—

<i>of the son</i> = du fils	<i>to the father</i> = au père
<i>of the man</i> = de l'homme	<i>of the usher</i> = de l'huissier
<i>to the child</i> = à l'enfant	<i>of the hero</i> = du héros
<i>of the daughter</i> = de la fille	<i>to the mother</i> = à la mère
<i>of the wife</i> = de l'épouse	<i>of the oil</i> = de l'huile
<i>to the hedge</i> = à la haie	<i>of the cousins</i> = des cousins
<i>to the aunts</i> = aux tantes	<i>of the lobsters</i> = des homards
<i>of the uncles</i> = des oncles	<i>to the friends</i> = aux amis
<i>of the oysters</i> = des huîtres	

a. It is only the *article* 'le' or 'les' that combines with the preposition; the *personal pronoun* remains unchanged: *I want to see it* = j'ai envie de le voir.

French Text.

[NOTE. — For the following phrases, see § 41: *cet exemple*, mettons à, moyennant une, aux archives, obligeant à. 'Arrêt,' 'condamné,' 'exemple' are *masculine*, 'ombre' is *feminine*. Note that the adjectives 'français' and 'modique' follow their nouns.]

17. Mais	la	cour	de	Monaco,	instruite ¹
<i>But</i>	<i>the</i>	<i>court</i>	<i>of</i>	<i>Monaco,</i>	<i>warned</i>
un peu tard ²	par	cet	exemple,	s'est décidée ³	à
<i>rather-late-in-the-day</i>	<i>by</i>	<i>this</i>	<i>example,</i>	<i>has-decided</i>	<i>to</i>
traiter	avec	le	gouvernement	français;	maintenant
<i>treat</i>	<i>with</i>	<i>the</i>	<i>French-government;</i>		<i>now</i>
elle	nous	livre	ses	condamnés	que nous mettons
<i>it</i>	<i>hands-us</i>	<i>its</i>	<i>criminals,</i>	<i>whom</i>	<i>we put</i>

à l'ombre,⁴ moyennant une pension modique. On⁶
out-of-the-way, in-return-for a moderate-allowance. You
 peut voir, aux archives judiciaires de la
can see, in-the judicial-records of the
 principauté, l'arrêt qui règle la pension du drôle
principality, the decision that determines the rascal's-pension
 en l'obligeant à sortir du territoire monégasque.
while compelling-him to depart from-the territory of-Monaco.

¹ Taught.² A little late.³ Has decided itself. Reflexive verb: see French Text 5, note 4.⁴ Into the shade.⁵ One. Compare French Text 2, note 6.

Exercise.

1. Tell why 'français' and 'monégasque' do not begin with capitals.

2. Tell the gender of: *cour, gouvernement, pension, principauté, territoire.*

3. Give the masculine and feminine, singular and plural forms of 'français' and 'modique.'

4. Translate into French [see Note]: *the decision, the court, the shade, the criminal, the example, the allowance; the decisions, the courts, the shades, the criminals, the examples, the allowances; of and to the decision, the court, the shade, the criminal; of and to the decisions, the courts, the shades, the criminals.*

Supplementary Exercise.

Translate into French: *a decision, a court, a shade, a criminal, an example, an allowance; the French territory, the French criminals, the French courts, the French principality; the government's example, the court's example, the criminal's example; the French government's moderate territory.*

XVIII. PARTITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS.

Lesson 18.

58. This subject will be more fully treated in Chapters CLVIII-CLX.

59. Review §§ 56, 57.

60. *Some* and *any*, used to modify a noun, are generally translated by a definite article preceded by 'de.'

Ex.: *we have some bread* = nous avons **du** pain; *give me some meat* = donnez-moi **de la** viande; *they have drunk some water* = ils ont bu **de** l'eau; *have you eaten any strawberries* = avez-vous mangé **des** fraises?

61. *Some* and *any* are often omitted in English, but in French they are nearly always expressed. Hence the combination of 'de' and the definite article must, in general, be used in all cases where the adjective *some* or *any* would not be out of place in English.

Ex.: *they have [some] courage* = ils ont **du** courage; *she has [some] money* = elle a **de** l'argent; *have you [any] change* = avez-vous **de la** monnaie? *nothing but [some] coppers* = rien que **des** sous.

a. 'Du,' 'de la,' etc., are omitted after 'de,' *of*, *from*, 'sans,' *without*, 'ni,' *neither*, *nor*, and often after 'soit' . . . 'soit' . . . , *either* . . . *or* . . . Ex.: *are you in need of [any] help* = avez-vous besoin **de** secours? *we have neither [any] relatives nor [any] friends* = nous n'avons **ni** parents **ni** amis; *he is without [any]*

money = il est **sans** argent. They are omitted also in many idiomatic expressions that must be learned by observation; *does she pay [any] attention* = fait-elle attention?

62. In the two following cases the article is generally left out, and the idea of *some* or *any* is expressed by 'de' alone:—

(1) When the French noun is *immediately preceded* by an adjective. Ex.: *have you any good coffee* = avez-vous **de** bon café? *he told me some fine things* = il m'a raconté **de** belles choses; [*any*] *such friends are rare* = **de** tels amis sont rares; *she has [some] other intentions* = elle a d'autres intentions.

(2) When the French noun is the direct object of a verb modified by 'ne . . . guère,' *hardly*, 'ne . . . jamais,' *never*, 'ne . . . pas,' *not*, 'ne . . . plus,' *no more*, 'ne . . . point,' *not at all*. Ex.: *he asked me not to make any noise at all* = il me pria de ne point faire **de** bruit; *they haven't any friends* = ils n'ont pas d'amis; *you will not have any more luck* = vous n'aurez plus **de** chance; *we have never done any harm* = nous n'avons jamais fait **de** mal; *she has hardly any courage* = elle n'a guère **de** courage.

French Text.

[NOTE. — For 'rends aux,' 'dames à,' 'portant au,' 'sont enfermés,' see § 41. Names of male persons and the following other nouns are masculine: cabas, continent, salon, sou. Names of female persons and the following other nouns are feminine: caste, clef, écume, pièce, provenance, race, société, sorte, table. Note that adjectives expressing *nationality* or *color* follow their nouns.]

18. Je	me	rends ¹	aux	salons	du	Casino.
<i>I</i>		<i>proceed</i>	<i>to-the</i>	<i>halls</i>	<i>of-the</i>	<i>Casino.</i>
Autour	des	tables,	un	peuple	affreux	de
<i>Around</i>	<i>(of) the</i>	<i>tables</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>hideous-throng</i>	<i>of</i>	<i>gamblers,</i>

l'écume des continents et des sociétés, mêlée
the scum of (the) continents and (of-the) societies, mingled
 avec des princes, ou rois futurs, des femmes du
with (some) princes or future-kings, (some) women of (the)
 monde, des bourgeois, des usuriers, un mélange,
fashion, (some) plain-people, (some) usurers, a mixture,
 unique sur la terre, d'hommes de toutes les
unparalleled on (the) earth, of men of all (the)
 races, de toutes les castes, de toutes les sortes,
races, of all (the) castes, of all (the) sorts,
 de toutes les provenances, un musée de
of all (the) sources, a museum of
 rastaquouères russes, brésiliens, chiliens, italiens,
shady-nabobs from-Russia, from-Brazil, from-Chili, from-Italy,
 espagnols,² allemands,² de vieilles dames à
from-Spain, from-Germany, of old ladies with
 cabas, de jeunes femmes portant au poignet³
hand-baskets, of young women carrying on-their wrists
 un petit sac où⁴ sont enfermés des clefs, un
a little bag in-which are enclosed some keys, a
 mouchoir et trois dernières pièces de cent sous⁵
handkerchief, and three last five-franc-pieces
 destinées au tapis vert.
intended for-the green-cloth.

¹ *I betake myself* : reflexive verb.

² *Russian, Brazilian, Chilian, Italian, Spanish, German.* ³ *At the wrist.*

⁴ *Where.*

⁵ *Coins of a hundred cents : silver five-franc pieces.*

Exercise.

1. Tell the gender of: **Casino, peuple, monde, mélange, terre, musée, poignet, sac, mouchoir, tapis.**

2. Give the feminine singular of 'unique,' the masculine plural of 'affreux,' and the masculine and feminine, singular and plural forms of 'allemand' and 'vert.'

3. Translate into French: *a wrist, an earth; some society (monde), some foam, some men, some ladies; some*

little bags, some little keys, some little handkerchiefs, some little pieces; they haven't any¹ cents, they haven't any keys.

Supplementary Exercise.

Translate into French: *the Russian people (peuple), the Russian woman, the Russian castes, the Russian princes; to the Spanish museum, to the Spanish gamblers, to the Spanish table, to the Spanish pieces; of the sort, of the hall, of the continents, of the races; they haven't any¹ society (société), they haven't any carpet (tapis); the king's race is (est) of German origin (provenance); the Italian usurers are around the tables, with Spanish princes and plain people from Germany.*

¹ See § 62, (2), examples.

XIX. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Lesson 19.

63. This subject will be fully treated in Chapters CXVI to CXXVIII.

64. French personal pronouns may be divided into two classes, *conjunctive* and *disjunctive*. The *conjunctive* forms are closely connected with the verb, *which they generally precede*; they are always unemphatic. The *disjunctive* pronouns usually follow the verb, and do not necessarily stand near it; they are always more or less emphatic.

Conjunctive Forms.

65. The conjunctive forms are given below:—

SINGULAR.

	SUBJECT.	DIRECT OBJECT.	INDIRECT OBJECT.
<i>First Person:</i>	<i>je, I</i>	<i>me, me</i>	<i>me, to me</i>
<i>Second Person:</i>	<i>tu, thou</i>	<i>te, thee</i>	<i>te, to thee</i>
<i>Third Person, Masc.:</i>	<i>il, he</i>	<i>le, him</i>	<i>lui, to him</i>
<i>Fem.:</i>	<i>elle, she</i>	<i>la, her</i>	<i>lui, to her</i>

PLURAL.

	SUBJECT.	DIRECT OBJECT.	INDIRECT OBJECT.
<i>First Person:</i>	<i>nous, we</i>	<i>nous, us</i>	<i>nous, to us</i>
<i>Second Person:</i>	<i>vous, you</i>	<i>vous, you</i>	<i>vous, to you</i>
<i>Third Person, Masc.:</i>	<i>ils, they</i>	<i>les, them</i>	<i>leur, to them</i>
<i>Fem.:</i>	<i>elles, they</i>	<i>les, them</i>	<i>leur, to them</i>

Before a vowel or semivowel sound the final vowel of 'je,' 'me,' 'te,' 'le,' 'la' (but not of 'tu' or 'lui') is elided.

Notice that French has different forms for *him* and *to him*, for *her* and *to her*. On the other hand, *to him* and *to her* are alike in French. Ex.: *I see him* = *je le vois*, *I give him a book* = *je lui donne un livre*; *I see her* = *je la vois*, *I give her a book* = *je lui donne un livre*. Similarly, *them* is distinguished from *to them*: *je les vois*, *je leur donne un livre*. Observe also that masculine *they* is in French 'ils,' while feminine *they* is 'elles.'

66. As all French nouns are either masculine or feminine, no pronoun is needed exactly corresponding to English *it*. Personal pronouns take the gender and

number of the nouns they stand for: so *it* is to be translated by 'il,' 'le' or 'elle,' 'la,' according as the noun it represents is masculine or feminine. Sometimes, however, *it*, used as subject of a verb, does not stand for any particular noun, but represents something indefinite, or a whole phrase or idea: in this case the French word is sometimes 'il,' sometimes 'ce': *it rains* = *il pleut*, *it's true* = *c'est vrai*.

Disjunctive Forms.

67. The disjunctive forms are given below:—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>First Person:</i>	moi, me	nous, us
<i>Second Person:</i>	toi, thee	vous, you
<i>Third Person, Masc.:</i>	lui, him	eux, them
<i>Fem.:</i>	elle, her	elles, them

Observe the distinction between 'eux' and 'elles.'

French Text.

[NOTE.—The *s* in 'puis emplit' is linked. 'Argent,' 'esprit,' 'flot' are masculine; 'âme,' 'entrée,' 'épaule,' 'oreille' are feminine. Observe that the adjectives 'continu,' 'profond,' 'léger,' 'redoutable' follow their nouns.]

19. Je m'approche¹ de la première table, et je
I approach (of) the first table, and (I)
 regarde. Un bruit d'argent, continu comme celui
look-on. A noise of money, constant as that
 des flots, un bruit profond,² léger, redoutable,
of-the waves, a noise that-is-deep, faint, terrible,
 emplit l'oreille dès l'entrée,³ puis emplit l'âme,
fills the ear as-soon-as-you-come-in, then fills the soul,
 remue le cœur, trouble l'esprit, affole la pensée.
stirs the heart, disturbs the mind, confounds (the) thought.

Partout on l'entend,⁴ ce bruit qui chante, qui
Everywhere you hear-it, that noise, (which) (is-)singing, (which)
 crie, qui appelle, qui tente, qui déchire.⁵
(is-)screaming, (which) (is-)calling, (which) (is-)tempting, (which) (is-)piercing.
 Une main me frappe sur l'épaule. Je me retourne.¹
A hand taps-me on the shoulder. I turn-around.
 C'est mon ami.
It is my friend.

¹ Reflexive verb : the object, 'me' = *myself*, is not needed in English.

² The French says simply *a noise deep*: 'profond,' *deep*, follows its noun.

³ *From the entrance.*

⁴ *One hears it.*

⁵ *Is rending.*

Exercise.

Translate into French: *I turn it (= the hand) around, I look at (regarde) it (= money), they (men) have a soul, they (women) have a heart, he disturbs them (men), she hears it (= the noise), it (= money) is tempting you, it (= money) confounds us, it (= the soul) stirs thee, he is calling me; we give (donnons) him some money, you give (donnez) her a heart, thou givest (donnes) them the hands; it is the prince's hand; the prince's terrible hand taps us on the shoulder; on me, on him, on her, on them (men), on them (women).*

Supplementary Exercise.

Translate into French: *on the hand, on the ear, on the heart, on the tables; it is an ear, it is the soul, it is the shoulder, it is an entrance, it is a hand, it is the table, it is the money, it is a mind, it is the wave, it is a noise; to the noise, to the ear, to the minds, to the hands; some heart, some soul, some faint noises, some deep waves, some mind, some little waves, some terrible thoughts, they (waves) haven't any heart, some deep thoughts, they (tables) haven't any thoughts.*

XX. VERBS.**Lesson 20.**

68. The voice, mood, tense, person, and number of verbs will be more thoroughly treated in Chapters XXI to XXV.

69. In French, as in English, a verb may be either *active* or *passive*. English verbs form their passive by means of the auxiliary *to be*; in French the auxiliary is 'être,' which means *to be*. Ex.: active, *he finds* = il trouve; passive, *he is found* = il est trouvé.

70. In French, as in English, an infinitive may be either *present* or *perfect*. Ex.: present, *to find* = trouver; perfect, *to have found* = avoir trouvé. The part of a verb that is given in dictionaries is the present active infinitive.

71. In French, as in English, a participle may be *present*, *past*, or *perfect*. Ex.: present, *finding* = trouvant; past, *found* = trouvé; perfect, *having found* = ayant trouvé. The present active participle always ends in *-ant*.

72. Aside from the infinitive and participle, French verbs have four moods: the *indicative*, the *imperative*, the *conditional*, and the *subjunctive*.

73. In English we distinguish in the indicative three simple tenses: the *present*, the *past*, and the

future. Ex.: *I am* = je suis; *I was* = j'étais or je fus; *I shall be* = je serai. The French indicative has a present, a future, and *two* past tenses, which we shall call the *descriptive past* and the *narrative past*. The subjunctive has only two simple tenses: a present and a past. The imperative and the conditional have neither past nor future.

74. Beside every simple tense there is, in French as in English, a corresponding *compound* or *perfect* tense. Ex.: present, *I find* = je trouve; present perfect, *I have found* = j'ai trouvé; past, *I found* = je trouvais; past perfect, *I had found* = j'avais trouvé; future, *I shall find* = je trouverai; future perfect, *I shall have found* = j'aurai trouvé. The imperative has no compound forms.

75. Verbs are singular or plural, according as the subject consists of one individual or more. Verbs are in the first, second, or third person, according as the subject represents the speaker, the hearer, or neither.

French verbs have special endings for the different persons, both in the singular and in the plural; and every French finite verb must agree in person and number with its subject, whether that subject be expressed or understood. Ex.: *I give* = je donne, *we give* = nous donnons, *you give* = vous donnez, *they give* = ils donnent; *let's give* = donnons, *give* = donnez.

76. French 'vous,' like its English equivalent, *you*, may be either singular or plural in sense, but its verb is always plural; a past participle or an adjective agree-

ing with it is singular or plural according to the number of persons represented by 'vous.' Ex.: *you have come, my friend* = vous êtes venu, mon ami; *you have come, my friends* = vous êtes venus, mes amis.

The French language has, however, another form of address in the singular: when *you* stands for the name of a near relative, an intimate friend, a small child, an animal, or an inanimate object, it is usually translated by 'tu,' and the verb is singular. The word 'tu' corresponds also to English *thou*, used in poetry and poetic prose. The plural of 'tu' is 'vous.' Ex.: *where are you, my child* = où es-tu, mon enfant? *where are you, my children* = où êtes-vous, mes enfants?

77. The French imperative has three forms: a second person singular, and a first and a second person plural. Ex.: *give* = donne, *subject understood*, tu; *let's give* = donnons, *subject understood*, nous; *give* = donnez, *subject understood*, vous.

French Text.

[NOTE. — Link the consonants in: deux heures, quelques hommes, des ouvriers, aperçus une, sentis un, prêt à. Masculine nouns: bateau, chien, clapot, œil, pas. Feminine nouns: coque, heure, pierre, rue, voix.]

20. Deux heures plus tard, je descendais la côte
Two hours later I was-going-down the shore
 à grands pas. Dans les rues quelques chiens et
with long strides. In the streets a-few dogs and
 quelques hommes, des ouvriers qui se lèvent.¹ Dans
a-few men, (some) workmen who are-getting-up. In
 le port rien que le très léger bercement des
the harbor nothing but the very gentle rocking of-the

coques le long du quai et l'insensible clapot de
hulls along (of) the wharf and the imperceptible splash of
 l'eau qui remue à peine.² Les bateaux, les
the water, which is-hardly-moving. The boats, the
 pierres, la mer elle-même semblent dormir sous
stones, the sea itself seem to-be-sleeping under
 l'œil du petit phare qui, debout sur la jetée,
the eye of-the little lighthouse, which, erect on the jetty,
 veille sur son petit port. Là-bas, en face du
watches over its little harbor. Yonder, opposite (of) the
 chantier, j'aperçus une lueur, je sentis un
dockyard, I caught-sight-of a glimmer, I felt a
 mouvement, j'entendis des voix. On m'attendait.³
stir, I heard (some) voices. They were-waiting-for-me.
 Le Bel-Ami⁴ était prêt à partir.
The Bel-Ami was ready to start.

¹ Reflexive verb: *are lifting themselves.*

² 'Remue' = *is moving or moves*; 'à peine' = *hardly.*

³ *One was awaiting me.*

⁴ Name of a yacht.

Exercise.

1. State the person and number of: *descendais, lèvent, remue, semblent, veille, aperçus, sentis, entendis, attendait, était.* Tell which of these verbs are in the present, and which are in the past tense.

2. Find two infinitives in the text.

3. Give the masculine and feminine, singular and plural forms of 'insensible' and 'prêt.'

Supplementary Exercise.

Translate into French: *to the sea, to the voices, to the wharf, to the harbors; some hours, some stir, some men, some long stones, some little dogs, the workmen haven't any dock-yards; I caught sight of the workman's dog; I heard it (= the*

splash), *I felt it* (= *the stir*), *I heard you, he was waiting for them, she was ready to start, they (men) are getting up, they (women) seem to be sleeping; she watches over me, he watches over them* (= *streets*), *it* (= *the lighthouse*) *watches over them* (= *boats*); *I show (montre) him a wharf, I show her a street, I show them some stones.*

XXI. VOICE AND MOOD.

Lesson 136.

78. In French, as in English, a verb may be either *active* or *passive*. English verbs form their passive by means of the auxiliary *to be*; in French the auxiliary is 'être,' which means *to be*. Ex.: active, *he finds* = *il trouve*; passive, *he is found* = *il est trouvé*.*

a. The French are not fond of the passive, and avoid it in many cases where it would naturally be used in English. Ex.: *I have been found* = *somebody has found me* = *on m'a trouvé*. For the use of 'on' see Chapter CXX.

b. An English passive infinitive dependent on the verb *to let*, 'laisser,' or the verb *to cause*, 'faire,' is translated by the active infinitive in French. Ex.: *he lets himself be deceived* = *il se laisse tromper*; *I cause it to be proclaimed* = *je le fais proclamer*.

79. In French, as in English, an infinitive may be either *present* or *perfect*. Ex.: present, *to find* = *trouver*; perfect, *to have found* = *avoir trouvé*. The part

* In colloquial English, *to get* is often used, instead of *to be*, as auxiliary of the passive: *it got broken* = *it was broken* = *il fut cassé*.

of a verb that is given in dictionaries is the present active infinitive.

a. Sometimes, in English, *to* is omitted before an infinitive; but it must be remembered that a verb immediately dependent on another verb, whether *to* is expressed or not, is in the infinitive, and must be translated by that mood in French. Ex.: *he must go* = *il doit partir*; *you can walk* = *vous pouvez marcher*; *we see them come* = *nous les voyons venir*.

b. The proper translation of *to* before an infinitive must be learned by observation. It differs according to the word on which the infinitive depends, and according to the idea conveyed by *to*: sometimes the *to* is rendered by 'de,' by 'à,' or by 'pour,' and sometimes it is not translated at all. *To* meaning *in order to* is nearly always 'pour.' Ex.: *he promises to do it* = *il promet de le faire*; *ready to go* = *prêt à partir*; *I work to earn my living* = *je travaille pour gagner ma vie*; *she has come to see me* = *elle est venue me voir*.

c. *To come and do something and to go and do anything* are expressed by 'venir' and 'aller' followed by a dependent infinitive. Ex.: *he came and asked me to go and get a book* = *he came to ask me to go to get a book* = *il est venu me prier d'aller chercher un livre*.

80. In French, as in English, a participle may be present, past, or perfect.* Ex.: present, *finding* = *trouvant*; past, *found* = *trouvé*; perfect, *having found* = *ayant trouvé*. The present active participle always ends in *-ant*.

* In a few English grammars the present participle is called "imperfect," the past participle is called "perfect," and the perfect participle is called "compound." The English verbal form in *-ing*, in such constructions as *after doing this*, is sometimes called an "infinitive"; but in most English grammars and in this book it is, for the sake of convenience, classed as a present participle.

a. The forms given above are those of the masculine singular; they are used when the participle agrees with a word that is singular and masculine, and also in cases where the participle is invariable. The feminine form of participles is found by adding silent *e* to the masculine; if the masculine ends in a silent consonant, this consonant is pronounced in the feminine. The plural of each gender is made by adding a silent *s* to the singular; but if the masculine singular ends in *s*, no *s* is added for the masculine plural. Ex.: *sing.* fait, faite, *plur.* faits, faites; *sing.* pris, prise, *plur.* pris, prises. The few irregular forms will be given in Chapter CV.

81. Aside from the infinitive and participle, French verbs have four moods: the *indicative*, the *imperative*, the *conditional*, and the *subjunctive*.

a. The indicative and the imperative are used as in English: *he comes here* = il vient ici, *she pays attention* = elle fait attention; *come here* = viens ici! *pay attention* = faites attention!

b. The French conditional is used to translate the English forms with *should* or *would* in the following two cases: (1) in the *conclusion* of a conditional sentence; (2) in a clause in indirect discourse the verb of which, in direct discourse, would have been *future*. — Ex. (1): *if I had it, I should give it to you* = si je l'avais, je vous le **donnerais**; *if he came, he would find me* = s'il venait, il me **trouverait**; *I should like to go there* [that is, *if I could*] = je **voudrais** y aller. — Ex. (2): *they had told him that she would come* [that is, *they had said to him: "She will come"*] = on lui avait dit qu'elle **viendrait**.

c. The subjunctive will be discussed in Chapter XXIII.

Exercise.

[NOTE.—The following exercise is based on the examples given in this chapter, and on French Text 19, p. 57. 'Frapper,' 'regarder,' 'remuer,' 'tenter,' 'troubler' are conjugated like 'trouver'; the infinitive of 'appeler' is 'appeler.' 'Frapper' and 'regarder' frequently mean respectively *to strike* and *to look at*.]

1. Give the infinitives and participles of: **frapper, regarder, remuer, tenter, troubler.**

2. Translate into French:—

1. He disturbs.— 2. He is disturbed.— 3. I am tapped on the shoulder.— 4. That noise is heard everywhere.— 5. He lets himself be tempted.— 6. She must call me.— 7. You can tempt him.— 8. We see her tap on the table.— 9. She has come to call you.— 10. I approach the table, to look on.— 11. He promises me to sing.— 12. Come and look on!— 13. I should give him the money, if I had it.— 14. If he came to look on, he would find the table.— 15. They had been told that he would come.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. You hear constant noises.— 2. Some noise is heard.— 3. She lets herself be disturbed.— 4. I cause them to be stirred.— 5. You can look on.— 6. He came and tapped her on the shoulder.— 7. Pay attention! you are tapped on the shoulder.— 8. I should like to go there, if I had any money.— 9. She had been told that my friend would come.— 10. If I had a table, I should give it to her.— 11. We had been told that she would come and call us.— 12. He lets himself be struck.— 13. I cause myself to be called.— 14. He must look at them.— 15. You can stir my heart.— 16. We see her look at the tables.— 17. I approach to look at the money.— 18. She promises him to look on.— 19. He has come to call them.— 20. Come and tap on the table!

XXII. PARTICIPLES.**Lesson 137.**

82. Review § 80 and § 80, *a*.

83. Real present participles are invariable in French: *she went away, singing* = elle s'éloigna en chantant. But adjectives with participial form agree, like other adjectives, in gender and number with the words they modify: *a singing voice* = une voix chantante.

84. The past participle of a passive verb, or of an intransitive verb whose auxiliary is 'être,' *to be*, must agree in gender and number with the subject of the verb. Ex.: *he is found* = il est trouvé, *she is found* = elle est trouvée; *he is come* = il est venu, *they are come* = ils sont venus. The past participle of an intransitive verb whose auxiliary is 'avoir,' *to have*, is invariable. *we have slept* = nous avons dormi; *they had been* = ils avaient été.

85. The past participle of an active, transitive verb does not agree with the subject, but it sometimes does agree with the *direct object*: (1) if the direct object precedes the verb, the past participle agrees with it in gender and number; (2) if the direct object follows the verb, the past participle is invariable. Ex.: *what books has he given me* = quels livres m'a-t-il donnés? *he has given you the books that I have found* = il vous a donné

les livres que j'ai trouvés; *he has cut his hand* = il s'est coupé la main; *they have cut themselves* = ils se sont coupés.

There are two apparent exceptions to this rule: —

(A) the past participle of 'faire' is invariable before a dependent infinitive; (B) a past participle never changes its form to agree with the pronoun 'en.' Ex.: *he has had them come* = il les a fait venir; *I looked for them and found some* = je les ai cherchés et j'en ai trouvé.

a. After a preposition the English present participle must be translated by the French infinitive: *without finding* = sans trouver; *after having found* = après avoir trouvé. But when the preposition is *by* or *through*, rendered in French by 'en,' the present participle is used in French as in English: *by finding* = en trouvant.

b. When, in English, *while* is used or can be understood before the present participle, the phrase is translated by 'en' with the present participle in French: [*while*] *saying this, he looks at me* = en disant cela il me regarde.

c. An English present participle is often equivalent to a relative clause: *the laughing man* = *the man who laughs* = l'homme qui rit; *it's a child crying* = *it's a child that is crying* = c'est un enfant qui pleure.

d. An English present participle preceded by the verb *to see*, 'voir,' or *to hear*, 'entendre,' is generally translated by the present active infinitive in French: *I see them coming* = je les vois venir; *we hear him speaking* = nous l'entendons parler.

e. An English past participle preceded by a verb meaning *to hear*, 'entendre,' *to see*, 'voir,' or *to have* (signifying *to cause*), 'faire,' is translated by the present active infinitive in French: *I have heard it said* = je l'ai entendu dire; *we have seen them*

eaten = nous les avons vu **manger**; *she has it made* = elle le fait **faire**; *I had it given to him* = je le lui fis **donner**.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — This exercise is based on the examples in Chapters XXI and XXII, and on French Text 19, p. 57. The following verbs are conjugated like 'trouver': affoler, approcher, chanter, crier, frapper, regarder, remuer, retourner, tenter, troubler. The infinitive of 'appelle' is 'appeler'.]

Translate into French:—

1. I approach the table, looking on.—2. A striking thought.¹
—3. A singing, stirring noise.²—4. He is struck.³—5. She is confounded.³—6. The hearts are stirred.³—7. The souls are disturbed.³—8. We have been everywhere.—9. They had struck the table.—10. What hearts has he stirred? He has stirred the hearts which I have disturbed.—11. My friend has cut his shoulder.—12. They have turned (themselves) around.—13. He went away without calling us.—14. You hear them screaming.—15. We have seen them tempted.

¹ Use participial adjective. ² Do not use participial form. ³ Use passive.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. She went away, screaming.—2. A disturbing noise.¹—
3. It is my friend tapping me on the hand.²—4. The heart is disturbed.³—5. The soul is stirred.³—6. The minds are confounded.³—7. The thoughts are disturbed.³—8. I am called.⁴—
9. A noise of money is heard.⁴—10. They had slept while looking on.—11. She has approached (herself).—12. I approach, after having looked at the table.—13. She stirs the heart by singing.—
14. We hear her calling.—15. I see him tapping on the table.—
16. I have heard them called.—17. I have seen her called.—
18. We have heard it sung.—19. I had him called.—20. I had them given to her.

¹ Use participial adjective.

² Do not use participial form.

³ Use passive.

⁴ Do not use passive.

XXIII. SUBJUNCTIVE.**Lesson 188.**

86. The French subjunctive is not like any English mood. In cases where the French language requires the subjunctive, the English has generally the indicative, but sometimes the infinitive, and sometimes the compound forms with *should*, *would*, *might*, or *may*.

The French subjunctive is found occasionally in principal, but much oftener in subordinate clauses. Although the uses of this mood must be learned by practice, the main principles governing its occurrence will be briefly stated here.

Principal Clauses.

87. The present subjunctive is employed independently to express a wish or command: *so be it* = *ainsi soit-il*; *let them come* = *qu'ils viennent*.

88. The past perfect subjunctive is sometimes used instead of the perfect conditional: *he would have saved her* = *il l'eût sauvée*, *for* *il l'aurait sauvée*.

Subordinate Clauses.

89. In subordinate clauses the subjunctive is *present* or *present perfect* if the verb of the main clause is present, present perfect, future, or future perfect; the subjunc-

tive is *past* or *past perfect* if the verb of the main clause is past, past perfect, or in the conditional.

90. The subjunctive is generally employed in a clause dependent

(1) On a word or phrase denoting causation, concession, desire, fear, joy, prevention, sorrow, surprise, or uncertainty, followed by the conjunction 'que,' *that*. Ex.: *I want you to do it* = je veux que vous le **fassiez**, *we feared he was ill* = nous craignons qu'il ne **fût** malade, *you don't believe she is coming* = vous ne croyez pas qu'elle **vienne**.

a. But *I believe she is coming* = je crois qu'elle **viendra**. Verbs of thinking and believing are followed by the subjunctive when used negatively or interrogatively, by the indicative when used affirmatively.

(2) On a superlative or a word meaning *first*, *last*, *only*, *no*, *nothing*, or *nobody*, followed by a relative pronoun. Ex.: *it's the best we can do* = c'est le mieux que nous **puissions** faire, *he was the only one that had stayed* = il était le seul qui **fût** resté.

(3) On an impersonal verb: *it is necessary for them to write* = il faut qu'ils **écrivent**, *it is right for you to be punished* = il est juste que vous **soyez** puni.

a. This rule does not apply to phrases meaning *it is true* or *it is because*. Ex.: *it is because you do not know him* = c'est que vous ne le connaissez pas.

91. The subjunctive is used after conjunctions meaning *although*, *before*, *for fear*, *provided*, *so that* (indicating purpose), *supposing*, *unless*, *until*, *without*, and generally in dependent clauses expressing concession, purpose, or restriction. Ex.: *although you speak*

very loud, I do not hear you = *quoique vous parliez très haut, je ne vous entends pas*; *no matter who you are, come in* = *quel que vous soyez, entrez*.

92. The past perfect subjunctive, with or without 'si,' *if*, is occasionally used, instead of the indicative with 'si,' in a condition contrary to fact. Ex.: *if I had seen him* = *si je l'eusse vu*, *for si je l'avais vu*; *had he wished to do so* = *eût-il voulu le faire*, *for s'il avait voulu le faire*.

Exercise.

[NOTE.—This exercise is based on the examples in Chapter XXIII, and on French Text 20, p. 61. 'Remuer,' 'sembler,' 'veiller' are conjugated like 'trouver.' The present indicative forms 'lèvent,' 'remue,' 'semblent,' 'veille' are exactly like the corresponding persons of the present subjunctive. The past participle of 'dormir' is 'dormi'.]

Translate into French:—

1. Let him watch. — 2. Let them get up. — 3. If I had slept, the lighthouse would have watched. — 4. Had he watched over the dockyards, he would have saved them. — 5. I want the workmen to get up. — 6. We feared that she had slept. — 7. You do not believe that the boats seem to move. — 8. The dog was the only one that had got up. — 9. The workman is the only one that watches. — 10. It is the smallest lighthouse that watches over the shore. — 11. It is necessary for her to move. — 12. It is right for you to be yonder. — 13. Although they get up late, it is necessary for them to write. — 14. No matter who you are, it is necessary for you to do it. — 15. Although you are in the street, it is necessary for you to speak very loud.

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE.—This exercise deals with the imperative and the conditional, as well as the subjunctive. Some of the words are taken from the examples in Chapter XXI.]

1. Come and stir the water! — 2. They had been told that he would come later to watch over the harbor. — 3. It is necessary

for her to come in two hours. — 4. I should give her the boats, if I had them. — 5. Although we can do it better, it is right for you to do it. — 6. I want him to come. — 7. If he came to sleep on the wharf, he would find a few boats in the water. — 8. It is because the dog is watching. — 9. If I had some little dogs, I should give them to her. — 10. Although they write, it is necessary for them to come. — 11. I should like to go there, if the *Bel-Ami* were ready to start. — 12. We feared that she was on the jetty. — 13. I believe that he was ready. — 14. I do not believe that you are ready. — 15. I do not want her to come into the street.

XXIV. TENSES.

Lesson 139.

Simple Tenses.

93. In English we distinguish in the indicative three simple tenses: the *present*, the *past*, and the *future*. Ex.: *I am* = je suis; *I was* = j'étais or je fus; *I shall be* = je serai. The French indicative has a present, a future, and *two* past tenses, which we shall call the *descriptive past* and the *narrative past*. The subjunctive has only two simple tenses: a present and a past. The imperative and the conditional have neither past nor future.

a. In English, simple present and past time are expressed in several ways: (1) by the simple present and past tenses; (2) by the present participle combined with the auxiliary *to be*; (3) by the infinitive combined with the auxiliary *to do*. In French only the first of these methods is used. Hence *I speak*, *I am speaking*, and *I do speak* are all translated by 'je parle'; *I spoke*,

I was speaking, I did speak, and also *I used to speak* all correspond to 'je parlais.'

b. Usually the *descriptive past* is called the "imperfect," and the *narrative past* is called the "past definite" or the "preterit."

c. In subordinate clauses relating to the future and introduced by a conjunction of time, we generally use the present tense in English, but the future tense must be employed in French. Ex.: *when he comes here, he will see me* = quand il **viendra** ici, il me verra.

d. For the use of tenses in the subjunctive see § 89. In colloquial French the subjunctive past is generally avoided, the present being used in its stead; the forms belonging to the first conjugation are particularly unpopular.

94. The difference between the descriptive and the narrative past is to a certain extent implied in their names. Use the descriptive past:—

(1) In clauses of a descriptive or explanatory nature where the past would be used in English. Ex.: *it was eight o'clock, the wind was blowing, it was very cold* = il **était** huit heures, le vent **soufflait**, il **faisait** très froid; *he gave me the ring that he wore* = il me donna la bague qu'il **portait**.

(2) To tell what was going on or how things were when something happened. Ex.: *I was speaking when he came in* = je **parlais** lorsqu'il entra.

(3) To represent a past state or action as habitual, repeated, or protracted. Ex.: *I spoke to him every day* = je lui **parlais** tous les jours.

(4) In conditional clauses where the past indicative or subjunctive is or might be used in English. Ex.: *if he were here, I should see him* = s'il **était** ici, je le **verrais**; *if*

he should speak [that is, *if he spoke*] *to me, I should answer him* = s'il me parlait, je lui répondrais.

In all other cases use the narrative past. See, however, § 96, *b*.

Compound Tenses.

95. In French, as in English, we find in the indicative three compound tenses: the *present perfect*, the *past perfect*, and the *future perfect*. Ex.: *I have been* = j'ai été; *I had been* = j'avais été; *I shall have been* = j'aurai été. The subjunctive has a present perfect and a past perfect; the conditional has a perfect; the imperative has no compound tense. For the infinitive and the participle see §§ 79, 80.

a. In French grammars the *present perfect* is generally called "past indefinite" or "perfect," the *past perfect* is nearly always called "pluperfect," and the *future perfect* is called "future anterior."

96. Most French verbs form their compound tenses by combining their past participle with the auxiliary 'avoir,' *to have*; but all reflexive verbs and many intransitive verbs use, instead of 'avoir,' the auxiliary 'être,' *to be*. Ex.: *she has cut it* = elle l'a coupé; *she has cut herself* = elle s'est coupée; *she has cut her finger* = *she has cut herself the finger* = elle s'est coupé le doigt; *she has stayed* = elle est restée.

a. The proper auxiliary to be used with *intransitive* verbs must be learned, to a certain extent, by practice. The commonest intransitive verbs conjugated with 'être' are: aller, arriver,

descendre, entrer, monter, mourir, naître, partir, rentrer, rester, retourner, revenir, sortir, tomber, venir. 'Passer' and some other verbs are conjugated sometimes with 'être' and sometimes with 'avoir.'

b. In colloquial French the narrative past is always replaced by the present perfect: *I saw him last year* = je l'ai vu l'an dernier. This construction is frequently used also in the literary style. The French present perfect corresponds, therefore, both to the English present perfect and to the English past: 'j'ai donné' may mean either *I have given* or *I gave*.

c. The usual form of the past perfect is made by combining the *descriptive* past of the auxiliary with the past participle of the main verb: *I had been* = j'avais été; *I had gone* = j'étais allé. A second form of the past perfect is constructed from the *narrative* past of the auxiliary and the past participle of the verb; this combination is used after expressions meaning *as soon as*. Ex.: *as soon as I had spoken* = aussitôt que j'eus parlé. This second form of the past perfect is often called the "past anterior."

97. When an action is represented as having taken place and as still continuing in the present or in the past, English uses the present perfect or past perfect tense, French the simple present or descriptive past: *I have been here for two years* = je suis ici depuis deux ans.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — The following exercise is based on the examples in this chapter, and on French Text 20, p. 61. The past participles of 'aperçus,' 'descendais,' 'entendis,' 'partir' are: aperçu, descendu, entendu, parti.]

1. Name and explain the tense of all the verbs in French Text 20.

2. Give four translations of 'je descendais,' three of 'il veille,' two of 'je sentis.'

3. Translate into French:—

1. If the *Bel-Ami* were ready, I should see the harbor.—
2. When she comes into the harbor, she will see the jetty.—
3. The *Bel-Ami* has started.— 4. She has got up.— 5. I had gone down.— 6. The wharf had moved.— 7. As soon as I had started, I heard the splashing of the water.— 8. I spoke to him last year.— 9. I have watched for two years.— 10. She had been ready for two hours.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. If I went down the street, I should see a few boats along the wharf.— 2. The water is being stirred.— 3. I had been going down for two hours.— 4. She started a few hours later.— 5. I was going down the wharf, watching.— 6. He watches without sleeping.— 7. I have heard voices in the street.— 8. I saw it moved.— 9. The dogs that he has heard seem to be watching over the dockyard.— 10. I was going down the streets that I had caught sight of.

XXV. PERSON AND NUMBER.**Lesson 140.**

98. French verbs have special endings for the different persons, both in the singular and in the plural; and every French finite verb must agree in person and number with its subject, whether that subject be expressed or understood. Ex.: *I give* = je donne, *we give* = nous donnons, *you give* = vous donnez, *they give* = ils donnent; *let's give* = donnons, *give* = donnez.

- a. Let us consider the word *cut*, in the sentence *now we cut it*. *Cut*, in itself, might be the infinitive, the past participle, the

imperative, any part of the indicative past, and any form of the indicative present except the third person singular; but the construction of the sentence makes it clear that *cut* is here in the indicative active, the adverb *now* tells us that it is present, and the pronoun *we* shows us that it is in the first person plural: so we must select, among the forms of the French verb, the one that belongs to the first person plural of the present indicative active — ‘coupons.’

b. A verb whose subject is a noun is in the third person: *the child fell* = l'enfant tomba. A verb with two subjects which are or might be connected by *and* is in the plural: *the doctor and his brother went away* = le médecin et son frère partirent. When there are two or more subjects, one of which is of the first person, the verb is in the first person plural: *my sister and I are here* = ma sœur et moi, nous sommes ici. If there are two or more subjects, all belonging to the second and third persons, the verb is in the second person plural: *you and they understand me* = vous et eux, vous me comprenez.

99. French ‘vous,’ like its English equivalent, *you*, may be either singular or plural in sense, but its verb is always plural; a past participle or an adjective agreeing with it is singular or plural according to the number of persons represented by ‘vous.’ Ex.: *you have come*, *my friend* = vous êtes venu, mon ami; *you have come*, *my friends* = vous êtes venus, mes amis.

In the singular the French language has, however, another form of address: when *you* stands for the name of a near relative, an intimate friend, a small child, an animal, or an inanimate object, it is usually translated by ‘tu,’ and the verb is singular. The word ‘tu’ corresponds also to English *thou*, used in poetry and poetic prose. The plural of ‘tu’ is ‘vous.’ Ex.: *where are*

you, my child = où es-tu, mon enfant? *where are you,*
my children = où êtes-vous, mes enfants?

a. In French poetry 'tu' is less common than *thou* in English verse. French children are often taught to call their parents 'vous,' as a mark of respect. Servants were formerly called 'tu,' and are still frequently so addressed by their employers.

100. The French imperative has three forms: a second person singular, and a first and a second person plural. Ex.: *give* = *donne*, *subject understood*, tu; *let's give* = *donnons*, *subject understood*, nous; *give* = *donnez*, *subject understood*, vous.

a. The subject of a verb in the imperative is never expressed. In such phrases as 'approchez-vous,' *approach*, the pronoun is the *object* of the verb, which is *reflexive*.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — The vocabulary of the following exercise is taken mainly from the examples in this chapter, and from French Text 17, p. 50. The exercise consists, however, for the most part, of a review of Chapters XXI, XXII, XXIII, XXIV, and contains some words that are to be found in the exercises in these chapters. — 'Décider,' 'livrer,' 'traiter,' are conjugated like 'trouver.' The forms 'livre' and 'règle' are present subjunctive as well as present indicative; the present subjunctive corresponding to 'peut' is 'puisse.' The infinitive of 'mettons' is 'mettre.' The past participles of 'obligeant' and 'sortir' are 'obligé' and 'sorti.' — 'Livrer' means *to hand over, to turn over, to deliver*; 'régler' means *to regulate*.]

Translate into French: —

1. You and I are putting it into the records. — 2. I want the court to hand over its criminals to us. — 3. You do not believe that it can be seen. — 4. It is right for the court to determine the pension. — 5. Although the court turns over its criminals' pensions to us, it is necessary for the government to regulate them. — 6. If the decision were in the records, I should see it. — 7. When she comes to Monaco, she will see them. — 8. She has decided to depart. — 9. The government has delivered the records to us. —

10. The principality has been treating with us for two years. —
 11. We had been told that the criminal would treat with us. —
 12. What criminals has he handed over to us? — 13. A pension
 is turned over to the criminals; has he regulated it? — 14. They
 are compelled to see the decision in the records. — 15. The pen-
 sion is determined by the court.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. The court and the government are giving a pension to the rascal. — 2. Decide (yourself) to depart from Monaco! — 3. The rascal has departed. — 4. The court had obliged her to depart. — 5. Had he departed, he would have had the pension. — 6. He lets himself be decided. — 7. I should like to see the decision, if it were in the records. — 8. I had him delivered to the court. — 9. I have seen them put out of the way. — 10. You hear them treating with the government. — 11. It is the court turning over its criminals to the French government. — 12. She has compelled them to depart. — 13. They have decided (themselves). — 14. We feared that he had turned over the pension to her. — 15. He is compelled to treat with the government.

XXVI. AVOIR and ÊTRE.

Lesson 21.

101. The *present indicative* and the *imperative* of 'avoir,' to have, and 'être,' to be, are conjugated as follows:—

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

j'ai	<i>I have, I do have, I am having</i>
tu as	<i>you have, you do have, you are having</i>
il a (elle a)	<i>he (she) has, does have, is having</i>
nous avons	<i>we have, we do have, we are having</i>
vous avez	<i>you have, you do have, you are having</i>
ils ont (elles ont)	<i>they have, they do have, they are having</i>

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

je suis	<i>I am, I am being</i>
tu es	<i>you are, you are being</i>
il est (elle est)	<i>he (she) is, is being</i>
nous sommes	<i>we are, we are being</i>
vous êtes	<i>you are, you are being</i>
ils sont (elles sont)	<i>they are, they are being</i>

IMPERATIVE.

aie	<i>have</i>	sois	<i>be</i>
ayons	<i>let's have</i>	soyons	<i>let's be</i>
ayez	<i>have</i>	soyez	<i>be</i>

a. Observe that 'ai' is pronounced é, while 'es,' 'est,' 'aie' are all pronounced è.

. French Text.

[NOTE. — 'Abri' is masculine; 'escadre,' 'île,' 'vague' are feminine.]

21. Vers midi, le vent d'ouest se leva¹ de nouveau,²
At-about noon the west-wind came-up again
 moins³ fort que³ la veille, et je résolus
not-so strong as the day-before, and I decided
 d'en⁴ profiter pour aller visiter l'escadre au
to take-advantage-of-it to go and-visit the squadron in-the
 golfe Juan. Le *Bel-Ami*, en sortant du port,
Bay-of-Juan. The Bel-Ami, on going-out of-the harbor,
 dansait comme une chèvre, et je dus gouverner
danced like a goat, and I had to-steer
 avec grande attention pour ne pas recevoir des
with great care so-as not to-ship (some)
 paquets d'eau⁵ à chaque vague, qui nous arrivait⁶
heavy-seas at every wave, which struck-us
 presque par le travers. Mais bientôt je gagnai
nearly on the beam. But soon I reached

l'abri des îles et je m'engageai dans¹ le passage
the shelter of-the islands and (I) made into the channel
 sous le château fort² de Sainte-Marguerite.
below the fortress of Sainte-Marguerite.

¹ *Lifted itself*: see French Text 20, note 1.

² *Anew*: 'nouveau' means *new*.

³ *Less . . . than.*

⁴ The pronoun 'en' stands for 'de' with a personal pronoun of the third person.

⁵ *Loads of water*. 'Eau' is feminine.

⁶ *Came to us.*

⁷ 'Dans' means also *in*.

⁸ *Strong castle.*

Exercise.

[NOTE.—Translate *you* by the second person plural, unless the singular is called for.]

Translate into French:—

1. I am not so strong as you. — 2. They (*masc.*) have a castle. — 3. You (*tu*) are in the harbor. — 4. You have a friend. — 5. It is a west wind. — 6. We have some water. — 7. We are nearly below the fortress. — 8. He has a great castle. — 9. You are in the bay. — 10. You (*tu*) have some friends. — 11. They (*fem.*) are not so strong as the waves. — 12. I haven't any water. — 13. Let's be friends. — 14. Let's have some water. — 15. Be strong.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Be (*tu*) great. — 2. Have a shelter under the castle. — 3. I have them. — 4. You (*tu*) have it (*masc.*). — 5. He has it (*fem.*). — 6. We have some great islands in the bay. — 7. You have a great squadron in the harbor. — 8. The friends have some great goats. — 9. The waves are not so strong as the wind. — 10. You are nearly in the harbor. — 11. We are great friends. — 12. Below the islands the wind is not so strong as in the bay. — 13. You (*tu*) are stronger than a goat. — 14. I am again in the harbor. — 15. The castle is under the water.

XXVII. AVOIR and ÊTRE.

Lesson 22.

102. The *descriptive* and *narrative past* tenses of 'avoir' and 'être' are conjugated as follows:—

DESCRIPTIVE PAST.

j'avais	<i>I had, I did have, I was having</i>
tu avais	<i>you had, you did have, you were having</i>
il (elle) avait	<i>he (she) had, did have, was having</i>
nous avions	<i>we had, we did have, we were having</i>
vous aviez	<i>you had, you did have, you were having</i>
ils (elles) avaient	<i>they had, they did have, they were having</i>
j'étais	<i>I was, I was being</i>
tu étais	<i>you were, you were being</i>
il (elle) était	<i>he (she) was, was being</i>
nous étions	<i>we were, we were being</i>
vous étiez	<i>you were, you were being</i>
ils (elles) étaient	<i>they were, they were being</i>

NARRATIVE PAST

j'eus	<i>I had, I got</i>
tu eus	<i>you had, you got</i>
il (elle) eut	<i>he (she) had, got</i>
nous eûmes	<i>we had, we got</i>
vous eûtes	<i>you had, you got</i>
ils (elles) eurent	<i>they had, they got</i>
je fus	<i>I was</i>
tu fus	<i>you were</i>
il (elle) fut	<i>he (she) was</i>
nous fûmes	<i>we were</i>
vous fûtes	<i>you were</i>
ils (elles) furent	<i>they were</i>

a. Observe that the endings *-ais, -ait, -aient* are all pronounced
 ð. *Eu*, wherever it occurs in the verb 'avoir,' is sounded u. *Ent*,
 at the end of the third person plural of verbs, is silent.

b. 'J'avais,' etc., 'j'étais,' etc., mean also *I used to have*, etc.,
I used to be, etc.

c. In most books the descriptive past is called *imperfect*; the
 narrative past, *preterit* or *past definite*.

French Text.

[NOTE. — 'Détail,' 'roc,' 'rocher,' 'sommet' are masculine; 'épaule,' 'évasion,'
 'île,' 'muraille' are feminine. 'Enfoncer' means also *to break in*.]

22. Sa muraille tombe sur les rocs battus du flot,¹
Its wall descends upon the wave-beaten-ledges
 et son sommet ne dépasse guère² la côte peu élevée³
and its top hardly-rises-above the low-lying-shore
 de l'île. On dirait⁴ une tête enfoncée entre
of the island. It-looks-like a head sunk between
 deux grosses épaules. On voit très bien la
two big shoulders. You can-see very clearly the
 place où descendit Bazaine.⁵ Il n'était pas besoin
spot where Bazaine-came-down. There-was-no-need
 d'être un gymnaste habile pour se laisser glisser
of being a skillful-gymnast to let-one's-self slide
 sur ces rochers complaisants. Cette évacion
over these accommodating-rocks. This escape
 me fut racontée en grand détail par un homme
was-related-to-me in great detail by a man
 qui se prétendait et qui pouvait être bien
who said-he-was and (who) may-have-been well
 renseigné.
informed.

¹ Rocks beaten by the wave.

² Hardly overtops.

³ The little elevated shore.

⁴ One would say.

⁵ Marshal Bazaine, who had surrendered a large army in the Franco-Prussian war, was found guilty of treason and sentenced to death; his sentence was commuted to twenty years' imprisonment. He escaped from prison in 1874, and died in Spain fourteen years later.

Exercise.

[NOTE.—In this exercise use the descriptive past in the sentences with odd, the narrative past in the sentences with even numbers.]

Translate into French:—

1. The man was well informed.—2. I was informed by him.—
3. You (*tu*) were a skillful gymnast.—4. We were beaten.—
5. You were on the rocks where he came down.—6. The escapes were related¹ to him in great detail.—7. I was very accommodating.—8. You (*tu*) were elevated² on the shoulders of two men.—9. We were between the wall and the shore.—10. I had need of a gymnast.—11. He had a big head sunk between the shoulders.—12. We had the details of this escape.—13. They had big shoulders.—14. They had need of two skillful men.—
15. I had related² the escape to her.

¹ Feminine plural form of the past participle.

² Masculine singular form of the past participle.

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE.—In this exercise the narrative past of 'avoir' and 'être' is to be used only in translating *italicised* words.]

1. When (*quand*) he *had* broken in¹ the wall, he came down.—
2. They were on the island.—3. When you (*tu*) *had* related¹ the details to him, he *was* well informed.—4. You *had* soon (*bientôt*) broken in¹ the top.—5. We had some big walls on the islands.—6. You *were* beaten by Bazaine.—7. The island had low-lying shores.—8. You (*tu*) had some skillful gymnasts.—
9. They were great gymnasts.—10. You had big shoulders.—
11. The great rocks are beaten by the waves.—12. These men have broken in¹ the top of the wall.—13. You have need of being well informed.—14. We are on the shore of the great island.—15. The shore of the island is not so high as the top of the wall.

¹ Masculine singular form of the past participle.

XXVIII. AVOIR and ÊTRE.

Lesson 23.

103. The *future* and the *conditional* of 'avoir' and 'être' are conjugated as follows:—

FUTURE.

j'aurai	<i>I shall have, I shall be having</i>
tu auras	<i>you will have, you will be having</i>
il (elle) aura	<i>he (she) will have, will be having</i>
nous aurons	<i>we shall have, we shall be having</i>
vous aurez	<i>you will have, you will be having</i>
ils (elles) auront	<i>they will have, they will be having</i>
je serai	<i>I shall be</i>
tu seras	<i>you will be</i>
il (elle) sera	<i>he (she) will be</i>
nous serons	<i>we shall be</i>
vous serez	<i>you will be</i>
ils (elles) seront	<i>they will be</i>

CONDITIONAL.

j'aurais	<i>I should have, I should be having</i>
tu aurais	<i>you would have, you would be having</i>
il (elle) aurait	<i>he (she) would have, would be having</i>
nous aurions	<i>we should have, we should be having</i>
vous auriez	<i>you would have, you would be having</i>
ils (elles) auraient	<i>they would have, they would be having</i>
je serais	<i>I should be</i>
tu serais	<i>you would be</i>
il (elle) serait	<i>he (she) would be</i>
nous serions	<i>we should be</i>
vous seriez	<i>you would be</i>
ils (elles) seraient	<i>they would be</i>

a. Observe that the ending *-ai* is sounded *é*, while *-ais*, *-ait*, *-aient* are all pronounced *è*.

b. For the uses of the conditional, see § 81, *b*.

French Text.

[NOTE. — 'Plan' is masculine.]

23. Bazaine vivait assez¹ libre,² recevant chaque
Bazaine lived rather freely, receiving every
 jour sa femme et ses enfants. Or, M^{me} Bazaine,
day his wife and (his) children. Now, Mrs. Bazaine,
 nature énergique, déclara à son mari qu'elle
an-energetic-character, declared to her husband that she
 s'éloignerait pour toujours avec les enfants s'il
would-go-away for ever with the children if he
 ne s'évadait pas, et elle lui exposa son plan. Il
did-not-escape, and she disclosed-to-him her plan. He
 hésitait devant les dangers de la fuite et les
hesitated before the dangers of the flight and the
 doutes sur³ le succès; mais, quand il vit sa
doubts of (the) success; but when he saw his
 femme décidée à accomplir sa menace, il
wife resolved to carry-out her threat, he
 consentit.
consented.

¹ 'Assez' means also *enough*.

² *Free*.

³ *On, concerning*.

Exercise.

Translate into French:—

1. He will have a wife and children. — 2. She will be free. —
3. They will have plans. — 4. The children will be energetic. —
5. He would have doubts. — 6. She would be with him. —
7. They would have success. — 8. They would be resolved. —
9. I shall have a husband. — 10. I shall be energetic. — 11. I

should have a plan. — 12. I should be with her. — 13. We shall have him. — 14. You would have them. — 15. We should be free, if we had a plan.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. You would be with me, if you were free. — 2. We shall be with them. — 3. We should have it. — 4. You will be free, if you are energetic. — 5. You (*tu*) will have them. — 6. You (*tu*) will be with us every day. — 7. You (*tu*) would have doubts, if you were not energetic. — 8. You (*tu*) would not be free, if you were less energetic than she. — 9. I have no doubts. — 10. You will have no success. — 11. They will be resolved. — 12. He is not so decided as his wife. — 13. They have big (*grands*) children. — 14. Let's be free. — 15. Have a plan.

XXIX. AVOIR and ÊTRE.

Lesson 141.

104. The *present* and *past* tenses of the *subjunctive* of 'avoir' and 'être' are conjugated as follows:—

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

j'aie	nous ayons	je sois	nous soyons
tu aies	vous ayez	tu sois	vous soyez
il ait	ils aient	elle soit	elles soient

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

j'eusse	nous eussions	je fusse	nous fussions
tu eusses	vous eussiez	tu fusses	vous fussiez
il eût	ils eussent	elle fût	elles fussent

a. 'Aie,' 'aies,' 'ait,' 'aient' are all pronounced è. 'Ayons, ayez' are pronounced è-yon, è-yé. Remember that *eu*, wherever it occurs in the verb 'avoir,' is sounded u.

6. No translation of the subjunctive forms has been given, as the meaning of these forms varies according to the context. See Chapter XXIII.

105. Review Chapter XXIII.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — This exercise is based on the examples in Chapter XXIII, and on French Text 15, p. 43. When a verb depends on 'craindre,' *to fear*, or on the conjunction 'à moins que,' *unless*, or 'avant que,' *before*, it is preceded by 'ne': see § 90, (1).]

Translate into French: —

1. Let them be condemned! — 2. I did not say that you are ridiculous. — 3. What do you expect us to be? — 4. He fears (*crain*t) that the prisoner will be executed. — 5. We feared that they would be condemned. — 6. I regret (*regrette*) that you have deprived me of my jailer. — 7. He was glad (*content*) that we had some means of subsistence. — 8. I believe that she is here. — 9. You do not believe that I am here. — 10. This decision was the only one that was not executed. — 11. It was right for you (*tu*) to be condemned to death. — 12. It is because I am your prisoner. — 13. I shall be executed before (*avant que*) he is condemned. — 14. What is to become of me unless (*à moins que*) I am executed? — 15. Although they have no means of subsistence, you wish to drive them from the country.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Let him have a guardian! — 2. What do you expect them to have? — 3. They wanted (*voulaient*) me to be executed. — 4. I am surprised (*surpris*) that she has said nothing. — 5. You did not know (*saviez*) that he was condemned. — 6. I do not believe that he is given into the hands of a jailer. — 7. I said nothing that was ridiculous. — 8. Your prisoner is the only one that has said nothing. — 9. It is necessary for you to be give

the hands of a jailer. — 10. Although you had deprived me of my guardian, I said nothing. — 11. I shall stay here, so that (*afin que*) he may not be executed. — 12. We should have said nothing, provided (*pourvu que*) you had judged them faithfully. — 13. I shall stay here until (*jusqu'à ce que*) you have deprived me of my prisoner. — 14. I shall undergo my punishment, although they have not condemned me. — 15. Had they judged the prisoner, they would have condemned him to imprisonment for life.

XXX. AVOIR and ÊTRE.

Lesson 24.

Lesson 199.

106. The whole conjugation of 'avoir' and 'être' is given below. First year pupils should read aloud the subjunctive forms, but need not commit them to memory; second year pupils should learn them.

Avoir

INFINITIVE.

avoir, to have

PARTICIPLES.

ayant, having

eu, had

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

I have or I am having

j'ai

tu as

elle a

nous avons

vous avez

elles ont

DESCRIPTIVE PAST *or* INDICATIVE IMPERFECT.*I had or I was having or I used to have*

j'avais	nous avions
tu avais	vous aviez
elle avait	elles avaient

NARRATIVE PAST *or* PRETERIT *or* PAST DEFINITE.*I had or I got*

j'eus	nous eûmes
tu eus	vous eûtes
elle eut	elles eurent

FUTURE.

I shall have or I shall be having

j'aurai	nous aurons
tu auras	vous aurez
elle aura	elles auront

CONDITIONAL.

I should have or I should be having

j'aurais	nous aurions
tu aurais	vous auriez
elle aurait	elles auraient

IMPERATIVE.

have, let's have, have

aie	ayons	ayez
-----	-------	------

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

j'aie	nous ayons
tu aies	vous ayez
elle ait	elles aient

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST *or* IMPERFECT.

j'eusse	nous eussions
tu eusses	vous eussiez
elle eût	elles eussent

Être

INFINITIVE.

être, to be

PARTICIPLES.

étant, being**été, been**

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

*I am or I am being***je suis****nous sommes****tu es****vous êtes****il est****ils sont**

DESCRIPTIVE PAST or INDICATIVE IMPERFECT.

*I was or I used to be or I was being***j'étais****nous étions****tu étais****vous étiez****il était****ils étaient**

NARRATIVE PAST or PRETERIT or PAST DEFINITE.

*I was***je fus****nous fûmes****tu fus****vous fûtes****il fut****ils furent**

FUTURE.

*I shall be***je serai****nous serons****tu seras****vous serez****il sera****ils seront**

CONDITIONAL.

*I should be***je serais****nous serions****tu serais****vous seriez****il serait****ils seraient**

IMPERATIVE.

*be, let's be, be***sois****soyons****soyez**

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

je sois**nous soyons****tu sois****vous soyez****il soit****ils soient**

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST or IMPERFECT.

je fusse**nous fussions****tu fusses****vous fussiez****il fût****ils fussent**

a. 'Ayant,' 'eu' are pronounced *à-yan, u.*

French Text.

[NOTE. — 'Joujou' is masculine; 'chambre,' room, is feminine. 'Un' means *one* as well as *a* or *an*.]

24. Alors, chaque jour, on¹ introduisit dans la
Then, every day, they introduced into the
 forteresse des jouets pour les petits, toute une
fort some toys for the little-ones, a-whole
 minuscule gymnastique de chambre. C'est avec ces
tiny indoor-gymnastic-outfit. It is with these
 joujoux que fut fabriquée² la corde à nœuds qui
playthings that they-constructed the knotted-rope which
 devait servir au maréchal. Elle fut confectionnée
was to-be-of-service to-the marshal. It was put-together
 lentement, pour ne point éveiller de soupçons, puis
slowly, so-as not to-awaken any suspicions, then
 cachée avec soin³ dans un coin du préau par
hidden carefully in a corner of-the yard by
 une main amie. La date de l'évasion fut alors
a friendly-hand. The date of the escape was then
 fixée. On¹ choisit un dimanche, la surveillance
fixed. They chose a Sunday, the supervision

ayant paru moins sévère ce jour-là;⁴ et M^{me}
having appeared less strict on-that-day; and Mrs.
 Bazaine s'absenta pour quelque⁵ temps.
Bazaine absented-herself for a-short time.

¹ One.² Was constructed; the subject, 'la corde,' follows.³ With care. ⁴ 'Ce' = this or that; 'ce' . . . 'ci' = this; 'ce' . . . 'là' = that.⁵ Some.

Exercise.

Translate into French:—

1. They have some playthings. — 2. You used to have some little toys. — 3. Then he got a knotted rope. — 4. We shall have no suspicions. — 5. I should have some suspicions. — 6. She is hidden in the fort. — 7. The supervision used to be less strict on that day. — 8. The rope was put together on Sunday. — 9. They will be in the yard. — 10. I should be strict.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Be (*tu*) strict. — 2. Take (= have) care. — 3. The little ones have no toys. — 4. You are less strict than we. — 5. I used to have suspicions. — 6. Every day we used to be in a corner of the yard. — 7. They got some playthings on that day. — 8. The rope was hidden by the marshal. — 9. I shall have a little rope. — 10. You (*tu*) would be less strict than a marshal. — 11. Let's take care. — 12. They have hands. — 13. The date will be fixed. — 14. We shall have a whole room. — 15. If you had a rope, you would not be in the fort.

XXXI. REGULAR VERBS.

Lesson 25.

107. In French, as in English, there are *regular* and *irregular* verbs. French regular verbs are inflected in three different ways, and these three kinds of inflection are called the *first*, the *second*, and the *third conjugation*. 'Donner,' *to give*, belongs to the first conjugation; 'choisir,' *to choose*, to the second; 'rompre,' *to break*, to the third.

108. The *present indicative* and the *imperative* of 'donner,' 'choisir,' and 'rompre' are inflected as follows:—

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

je donne	<i>I am giving, I give, I do give</i>
tu donnes	<i>you are giving, you give, you do give</i>
il donne	<i>he is giving, he gives, he does give</i>
nous donnons	<i>we are giving, we give, we do give</i>
vous donnez	<i>you are giving, you give, you do give</i>
ils donnent	<i>they are giving, they give, they do give</i>
je choisis	<i>I am choosing, I choose, I do choose</i>
tu choisis	<i>you are choosing, you choose, you do choose</i>
il choisit	<i>he is choosing, he chooses, he does choose</i>
nous choisissons	<i>we are choosing, we choose, we do choose</i>
vous choisissez	<i>you are choosing, you choose, you do choose</i>
ils choisissent	<i>they are choosing, they choose, they do choose</i>
je romps	<i>I am breaking, I break, I do break</i>
tu romps	<i>you are breaking, you break, you do break</i>
il rompt	<i>he is breaking, he breaks, he does break</i>

INDICATIVE PRESENT. — *Continued.*

nous rompons	<i>we are breaking, we break, we do break</i>
vous rompez	<i>you are breaking, you break, you do break</i>
ils rompent	<i>they are breaking, they break, they do break</i>

IMPERATIVE.

donne	<i>give</i>	choisis	<i>choose</i>
donnons	<i>let's give</i>	choisissons	<i>let's choose</i>
donnez	<i>give</i>	choisissez	<i>choose</i>
	romps		<i>break</i>
	rompons		<i>let's break</i>
	rompez		<i>break</i>

French Text.

[NOTE. — 'Cadenasser,' 'rentrer,' 'verrouiller' are verbs of the first conjugation.]

25. Le	maréchal	se promenait ¹	généralement
<i>The</i>	<i>marshal</i>	<i>took-a-walk</i>	<i>generally</i>
jusqu'à	huit heures	du soir	dans le
<i>until</i>	<i>eight o'clock</i>	<i>in-the evening</i>	<i>in the</i>
préau de la prison,	en	compagnie	du directeur,
<i>prison-yard,</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>company with-the</i>	<i>warden,</i>
homme aimable	dont	le commerce	lui plaisait. ²
<i>a-pleasant-man,</i>	<i>whose</i>	<i>(the) society</i>	<i>he-liked.</i>
Puis il rentrait	en	ses appartements,	que le
<i>Then he went-back</i>	<i>into</i>	<i>his apartments,</i>	<i>which the</i>
geôlier chef verrouillait	et	cadenassait	en présence
<i>head-jailer bolted</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>padlocked</i>	<i>in the-presence</i>
de son supérieur.			
<i>of his superior.</i>			

¹ Reflexive verb.² Was pleasing to him.

Exercise.

1. Go (*tu*) back into the prison. — 2. Let's bolt the apartments. — 3. Padlock the yard. — 4. Choose (*tu*) the hour. — 5. Let's choose a jailer. — 6. Choose the company of a pleasant

man. — 7. Break (*tu*) the padlock (*cadenas*, m.). — 8. Let's break the bolt (*verrou*, m.). — 9. Break the padlocks. — 10. They go back at eight o'clock.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. We are bolting the door (*porte*, f.). — 2. The warden is padlocking the apartment. — 3. Generally we choose pleasant men. — 4. They are breaking the padlock. — 5. He is breaking the bolt in the presence of the warden. — 6. They are in the prison yard. — 7. You have pleasant jailers. — 8. I have some superiors. — 9. Let's be pleasant. — 10. You are in the presence of the marshal. — 11. Have some company. — 12. They have apartments. — 13. I am choosing jailers. — 14. You are choosing apartments. — 15. You (*tu*) are breaking padlocks.

XXXII. REGULAR VERBS.

Lesson 26.

109. The *descriptive past*, or *imperfect indicative*, of 'donner,' 'choisir,' and 'rompre' is inflected as follows:—

DESCRIPTIVE PAST.

je donnais	<i>I was giving or I used to give</i>
tu donnais	<i>you were giving or you used to give</i>
elle donnait	<i>she was giving or she used to give</i>
nous donnions	<i>we were giving or we used to give</i>
vous donniez	<i>you were giving or you used to give</i>
elles donnaient	<i>they were giving or they used to give</i>
je choisissais	<i>I was choosing or I used to choose</i>
tu choisissais	<i>you were choosing or you used to choose</i>
elle choisissait	<i>she was choosing or she used to choose</i>

DESCRIPTIVE PAST. — *Continued.*

nous choisissions *we were choosing or we used to choose*
 vous choisissiez *you were choosing or you used to choose*
 elles choisissaient *they were choosing or they used to choose*

je rompais *I was breaking or I used to break*
 tu rompais *you were breaking or you used to break*
 elle rompaît *she was breaking or she used to break*
 nous romptions *we were breaking or we used to break*
 vous rompiez *you were breaking or you used to break*
 elles rompaient *they were breaking or they used to break*

a. 'Je donnais,' etc., means also *I gave* and *I would give*, etc., in the sense of *I used to give*, etc.

French Text.

[NOTE. — 'Cacher,' 'chercher,' 'enfermer,' 'rentrer,' 'verrouiller' belong to the first conjugation. To form the descriptive past of 'feignit,' 'prévenir,' 'ressortit,' 'voulut,' drop the last two letters and add -ais, etc.]

26. Le soir de la fuite, Bazaine feignit d'être
On-the evening of the flight, Bazaine pretended to be
 souffrant et voulut rentrer une heure plus tôt.
indisposed, and desired to-go-in an hour earlier.
 Il pénétra, en effet,¹ en son logement; mais
He really-did-go inside his quarters; but
 dès que le directeur se fut éloigné² pour chercher
as-soon-as the warden had-gone-off to look-for
 son geôlier et le prévenir d'enfermer immédiatement
his jailer and tell-him to lock-up immediately
 le captif, le maréchal ressortit bien vite et
the captive, the marshal came-out-again very quickly and
 se cacha² dans la cour. On³ verrouilla la
hid in the court. They bolted the
 prison vide. Et chacun rentra chez soi.
empty-prison. And everyone went-back home.

¹ He penetrated in reality.² Reflexive verb.³ One.

Exercise.

1. They were locking up the captive. — 2. You used to go in an hour earlier. — 3. We were bolting the empty quarters. — 4. He used to hide (himself) in the empty court. — 5. You (*tu*) were looking for the marshal. — 6. I used to pretend to go in. — 7. I was choosing an hour. — 8. We used to choose quarters. — 9. The warden was choosing his jailer. — 10. They used to break it.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. You were breaking them. — 2. He was giving his quarters to the captive. — 3. I used to break it. — 4. You (*tu*) were choosing some quarters. — 5. We used to choose the hour. — 6. Lock up the captive. — 7. Let's go in very quickly. — 8. Look (*tu*) for the captives. — 9. Choose an evening. — 10. We used to tell him to go in earlier. — 11. The warden was coming out again. — 12. They desired to be in the court. — 13. We were indisposed. — 14. I had quarters in the prison. — 15. The prison was empty.

XXXIII. REGULAR VERBS.**Lesson 27.**

110. The *narrative past*, *preterit*, or *past definite*, of 'donner,' 'choisir,' and 'rompre' is inflected as follows:—

NARRATIVE PAST.

je donnai	<i>I gave or I did give</i>
tu donnas	<i>you gave or you did give</i>
il donna	<i>he gave or he did give</i>
nous donnâmes	<i>we gave or we did give</i>
vous donnâtes	<i>you gave or you did give</i>
ils donnèrent	<i>they gave or they did give</i>

NARRATIVE PAST.—Continued.

je choisis	<i>I chose or I did choose</i>
tu choisis	<i>you chose or you did choose</i>
il choisait	<i>he chose or he did choose</i>
nous choisismes	<i>we chose or we did choose</i>
vous choisîtes	<i>you chose or you did choose</i>
ils choisirent	<i>they chose or they did choose</i>

je rompis	<i>I broke or I did break</i>
tu rompis	<i>you broke or you did break</i>
il rompit	<i>he broke or he did break</i>
nous rompîmes	<i>we broke or we did break</i>
vous rompîtes	<i>you broke or you did break</i>
ils rompirent	<i>they broke or they did break</i>

French Text.

27. Vers onze heures, Bazaine sortit de sa
At-about eleven o'clock Bazaine emerged from his
cachette, muni de l'échelle. Il l'attacha et
hiding-place, equipped with the ladder. He fastened-it and
descendit sur les rochers. Au jour levant, un
descended over the rocks. At (the) daybreak an
complice détacha la corde et la jeta au pied
accomplice unfastened the rope and threw-it-down at-the foot
des murs. Vers huit heures et demie,¹ le directeur
of-the walls. Towards half-past-eight the warden
de Sainte-Marguerite . s'informa² du prisonnier,
of Sainte Marguerite inquired about-the prisoner,
surpris de ne pas le voir encore, car il sortait
being-surprised not-to see-him yet, for he used-to-come-out
tôt chaque matin. Le valet de chambre de Bazaine
early every morning. Bazaine's-servant
refusa d'entrer chez son maître.³ À neuf heures
refused to go into-his-master's-room. At nine o'clock,

enfin, le directeur força la porte et trouva la
finally, the warden forced-open the door, and found the
 cage abandonnée.
cage deserted.

¹ *Eight hours and a half.*

² *Informed himself: reflexive verb.*

³ *'Chez' means at or to or into the abode of.*

Exercise.

Inflect the narrative past of 'trouver,' 'sortir,' and 'descendre.'

Supplementary Exercise.

1. I came out of the cage. — 2. I fastened the rope. — 3. I descended on the ladder. — 4. They emerged from the hiding-places. — 5. They went into the warden's room. — 6. They descended over the walls. — 7. We came out at about half past eight. — 8. We fastened the rope to the rocks. — 9. We descended at day-break. — 10. You came out at the foot of the walls. — 11. You threw them down on the rocks. — 12. You descended at about eleven o'clock. — 13. You came out early. — 14. She inquired about the warden. — 15. You (*tu*) refused to see her. — 16. Finally I forced open the doors. — 17. I was surprised. — 18. They had some ladders. — 19. He was equipped with a rope. — 20. We had accomplices.

XXXIV. REGULAR VERBS.

Lesson 28.

III. The *future* and the *conditional* of 'donner,' 'choisir,' and 'rompre' are inflected as follows:—

FUTURE.

je donnerai
 tu donneras
 elle donnera

I shall give or I shall be giving
you will give or you will be giving
she will give or she will be giving

FUTURE. — *Continued.*

nous donnerons
vous donnerez
elles donneront

*we shall give or we shall be giving
you will give or you will be giving
they will give or they will be giving*

je choisirai
tu choisiras
elle choisira
nous choisirons
vous choisirez
elles choisiront

*I shall choose or I shall be choosing
you will choose or you will be choosing
she will choose or she will be choosing
we shall choose or we shall be choosing
you will choose or you will be choosing
they will choose or they will be choosing*

je romprai
tu rompras
elle rompra
nous romprons
vous romprez
elles rompront

*I shall break or I shall be breaking
you will break or you will be breaking
she will break or she will be breaking
we shall break or we shall be breaking
you will break or you will be breaking
they will break or they will be breaking*

CONDITIONAL.

je donnerais
tu donnerais
il donnerait
nous donnerions
vous donneriez
ils donneraient

*I should give or I should be giving
you would give or you would be giving
he would give or he would be giving
we should give or we should be giving
you would give or you would be giving
they would give or they would be giving*

je choisirais
tu choisirais
il choisirait
nous choisirions
vous choisiriez
ils choisiraient

*I should choose or I should be choosing
you would choose or you would be choosing
he would choose or he would be choosing
we should choose or we should be choosing
you would choose or you would be choosing
they would choose or they would be choosing*

je romprais
tu romprais
il romprait

*I should break or I should be breaking
you would break or you would be breaking
he would break or he would be breaking*

CONDITIONAL. — *Continued.*

nous romprions	<i>we should break or we should be breaking</i>
vous rompiez	<i>you would break or you would be breaking</i>
ils rompraient	<i>they would break or they would be breaking</i>

French Text.

28. M^{me} Bazaine, de son côté,¹ pour exécuter
Mrs. Bazaine, for her part, to carry-out
 ses projets, avait été trouver² un homme à qui
her schemes, had been to-see a man to whom
 son mari avait rendu jadis un service capital.
her husband had rendered formerly a vital-service.
 Elle s'adressait à un cœur reconnaissant, et elle
She appealed to a grateful-heart, and (she)
 se fit un allié aussi dévoué qu'énergique. Ils
won-for-herself an ally as devoted as-he-was energetic. They
 réglèrent ensemble tous les détails; puis elle
arranged together all the details; then she
 se rendit³ à Gênes sous un faux nom et loua,
proceeded to Genoa under a false name, and hired,
 sous prétexte d'une excursion à Naples, un petit
under pretence of an excursion to Naples, a little
 vapeur italien, au prix de mille francs par⁴ jour,
Italian-steamers, at-the price of a-thousand francs a day,
 en stipulant que le voyage durerait au moins
(while) stipulating that the voyage should-last at (the) least
 une semaine et qu'on⁵ pourrait le prolonger
a week, and that she might lengthen-it
 d'un temps égal⁶ aux mêmes conditions.
by-the-same-amount on-the same conditions.

¹ On her side.² To find.³ Betook herself: reflexive verb.⁴ By.⁵ One.⁶ By an equal time.

Exercise.

Inflect the future of 'durer,' the conditional of 'louer,' the future and conditional of 'rendre' and 'sortir' (French Text 27).

Supplementary Exercise.

1. She will carry out her plans. — 2. He will choose devoted men. — 3. She will render me a service. — 4. They will find a little steamer. — 5. They will choose the conditions. — 6. They will render us little services. — 7. We shall arrange all the details. — 8. We shall choose a false name. — 9. You will render him the same service. — 10. The little excursions would last at least a week. — 11. I should lengthen them. — 12. I shall choose Genoa and Naples. — 13. He would proceed to Genoa. — 14. We should hire steamers. — 15. You would render me a vital service. — 16. You (*tu*) would choose the price. — 17. You (*tu*) will arrange the conditions. — 18. They will have a thousand francs a day. — 19. I should have a grateful heart. — 20. You will be devoted and energetic. — 21. We should be at Naples.

XXXV. REGULAR VERBS.**Lesson 142.**

112. The *present* and *past* (or *imperfect*) tenses of the *subjunctive* of 'donner,' 'choisir,' and 'rompre' are inflected as follows:—

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

je donne
tu donnes
il donne
nous donnions
vous donniez
ils donnent

je choisisse
tu choisisses
il choisisse

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

je donnasse
tu donnasses
elle donnât
nous donnassions
vous donnassiez
elles donnassent

je choisisse
tu choisisses
elle choisît

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT. — *Cont.*

nous choisissons
vous choisissiez
ils choisissent

je rompe
tu rompes
il rompt
nous rompons
vous rompiez
ils rompent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST. — *Cont.*

nous choisissons
vous choisissiez
elles choisissent

je rompisse
tu rompisses
elle rompt
nous rompiissions
vous rompiez
elles rompiissent

a. For the meanings of these forms, see Chapter XXIII.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — The vocabulary of this exercise is taken from the examples in Chapter XXIII, and from French Text 27, on p. 100. See also the exercise in Chapter XXIX, p. 89.]

1. Let them descend. — 2. I did not say that you were coming out. — 3. What do you expect us to find? — 4. He fears that she will unfasten the rope. — 5. We feared that they would descend. — 6. I regret that you are throwing them down. — 7. He was glad that we came out of the hiding-places. — 8. I believe you are fastening the rope. — 9. You do not believe that we are throwing it down on the rocks. — 10. It was right for you (*tu*) to refuse to see him. — 11. It is because I do not find the prisoner. — 12. The servant was the only one that inquired about his master. — 13. I shall find him before he descends. — 14. He refused to see us unless we came out. — 15. Although he forced the door open, he did not find the prisoner.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Let him choose! — 2. What do you expect them to fasten? — 3. They wanted me to come down. — 4. I am surprised that she refuses to go in. — 5. You did not know that he came out every

morning. — 6. I do not believe that she is coming down. — 7. The accomplice was the only one that was not surprised. — 8. I see (*vois*) nothing that is fastened to the walls. — 9. It is necessary for us to go in. — 10. Although you refuse to go in, it is necessary for you to go down. — 11. I shall unfasten the rope, so that the warden may not find it on the walls. — 12. You did not refuse to go in, provided we came out. — 13. He will refuse to go in until you have fastened the rope. — 14. She went down, although they had not fastened the rope. — 15. Had she thrown down the rope, the warden would not have found it.

XXXVI. DONNER.

Lesson 29.

Lesson 148.

113. The whole conjugation of 'donner' is given below. First year pupils need not learn the subjunctive forms, although they should read them aloud.

INFINITIVE.

donner, to give

PARTICIPLES.

donnant, giving

donné, given

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

I am giving, I give, I do give

je donne

nous donnons

tu donnes

vous donnez

il donne

ils donnent

DESCRIPTIVE PAST or INDICATIVE IMPERFECT.

I was giving, I used to give, I gave

je donnais

nous donnions

tu donnais

vous donniez

elle donnait

elles donnaient

NARRATIVE PAST *or* PRETERIT *or* PAST DEFINITE.*I gave, I did give*

je donnai	nous donnâmes
tu donnas	vous donnâtes
il donna	ils donnèrent

FUTURE.

I shall give, I shall be giving

je donnerai	nous donnerons
tu donneras	vous donnerez
elle donnera	elles donneront

CONDITIONAL.

I should give, I should be giving

je donnerais	nous donnerions
tu donnerais	vous donneriez
il donnerait	ils donneraient

IMPERATIVE.

give, let's give, give

donne
 donnons
 donnez

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

je donne	nous donnions
tu donnes	vous donniez
il donne	ils donnent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST *or* IMPERFECT.

je donnasse	nous donnassions
tu donnasses	vous donnassiez
elle donnât	elles donnassent

French Text.

29. Le bâtiment se mit en route¹; mais à peine
The vessel started; but hardly
 eut-il pris la mer² que la voyageuse³ parut changer
had it put-out-to-sea when the traveller seemed to-change
 de⁴ résolution, et elle demanda au capitaine
her mind, and (she) asked (to) the captain
 s'il lui déplaisait d'aller jusqu'à Cannes chercher
whether it would-trouble-him to go as-far-as Cannes to-get
 sa belle-sœur. Le marin y consentit volontiers,
her sister-in-law. The seaman (to-it) consented willingly,
 et il jeta l'ancre, le dimanche soir, au
and (he) cast (the) anchor, (the) Sunday evening, in-the
 golfe Juan. M^{me} Bazaine se fit mettre à terre
Bay-of-Juan. Mrs. Bazaine had-herself set ashore,
 en recommandant que le canot ne s'éloignât⁵ point.
(while) requesting that the tender should-not-stir-away.

¹ Set itself on the way: 'se mit' is reflexive.² Taken the sea.³ Feminine of 'voyageur.'⁴ Of.⁵ 'S'éloigner' is a reflexive verb.

Exercise.

Inflect the indicative present of 'éloigner,' the descriptive past of 'jeter,' the narrative past of 'demander,' the future of 'recommander,' the conditional of 'changer,' the imperative of 'chercher,' and the participles of 'aller.'

Supplementary Exercise.

1. He is changing his mind. — 2. We were asking the seaman whether he was going to get the tender. — 3. They anchored Sunday evening. — 4. I shall get the traveller at Cannes. — 5. You would willingly change your mind. — 6. Let's go as far as Cannes. — 7. He has cast anchor in the Bay of Juan. — 8. I anchored, asking the traveller whether she had changed her mind. — 9. Go to Cannes

to get the tender's anchor.— 10. We used to get seamen in the Bay of Juan.

Supplementary Review Exercise. 4

1. Explain the use of moods and tenses in French Text 29.

2. Inflect the subjunctive present of 'changer' and the subjunctive past of 'chercher.'

XXXVII. CHOISIR.

Lesson 80.

Lesson 144.

114. The whole conjugation of 'choisir' is given below. First year pupils need not commit to memory the subjunctive forms.

INFINITIVE.

choisir, to choose

PARTICIPLES.

choisissant, choosing

choisi, chosen

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

I am choosing, I choose, I do choose

je choisais

nous choisissons

tu choisais

vous choisissez

il choisait

ils choisissent

DESCRIPTIVE PAST or INDICATIVE IMPERFECT.

I was choosing, I used to choose, I chose

je choisissais

nous choisissions

tu choisissais

vous choisissiez

elle choisissait

elles choisissaient

NARRATIVE PAST or PRETERIT or PAST DEFINITE.

I chose, I did choose

je choisis	nous choisîmes
tu choisis	vous choisîtes
il choisit	ils choisirent

FUTURE.

I shall choose, I shall be choosing

je choisirai ,	nous choisirons
tu choisiras	vous choisirez
elle choisira	elles choisiront

CONDITIONAL.

I should choose, I should be choosing

je choisirais	nous choisirions
tu choisirais	vous choisiriez
il choisirait	ils choisiraient

IMPERATIVE.

choose, let's choose, choose

choisis
choisissons
choisissez

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

je choisisse	nous choisissions
tu choisisses	vous choisissiez
il choisisse	ils choisissent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST or IMPERFECT.

je choisisse	nous choisissions
tu choisisses	vous choisissiez
elle choisît	elles choisissent

French Text.

30. Son complice dévoué l'attendait avec
Her devoted-accomplice was-waiting-for-her with
 une autre barque sur la plage, et ils traversèrent
another boat on the beach, and they crossed
 la passe qui sépare du continent la petite île
the channel which separates from-the mainland the little island
 Sainte-Marguerite. Son mari était là sur les
of-Sainte-Marguerite. Her husband was there on the
 roches, les¹ vêtements déchirés, le¹ visage meurtri,
rocks, with-his clothes torn, his face bruised,
 les¹ mains en sang.² La mer étant un peu forte,
his hands bloody. The sea being rather heavy,
 il fut contraint d'entrer dans l'eau pour gagner
he was obliged to go into the water to reach
 la barque, qui se serait brisée³ contre⁴ la côte.
the boat, which would-have-been-broken on the shore.

¹ The. ² In blood. ³ Would have broken itself: reflexive. ⁴ Against.

Exercise.

Conjugate in full the verb 'meurtrir,' except the subjunctive.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. I am choosing devoted accomplices. — 2. She was bruising her husband's face. — 3. We chose another boat. — 4. The rocks will bruise the accomplices' hands. — 5. You would not choose torn clothes. — 6. Let's bruise her accomplice's face. — 7. Choose a husband. — 8. The accomplices' hands would have been bruised¹ on the shore. — 9. I have chosen boats. — 10. He went into the water, bruising his hands on the rocks.

¹ Feminine plural form.

Supplementary Review Exercise.

1. Explain the use of moods and tenses in French Text 30.

2. Inflect the subjunctive of 'meurtrir.'

XXXVIII. ROMPRE.**Lesson 81.****Lesson 145.**

115. The whole conjugation of 'rompre' is given below. First year pupils need not learn the subjunctive forms.

INFINITIVE.

rompre, to break

PARTICIPLES.

rompant, breaking

rompu, broken

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

I am breaking, I break, I do break

je romps

nous rompons

tu romps

vous rompez

il rompt

ils rompent

DESCRIPTIVE PAST or INDICATIVE IMPERFECT.

I was breaking, I used to break, I broke

je rompais

nous rompions

tu rompais

vous rompiez

elle rompait

elles rompaient

NARRATIVE PAST or PRETERIT or PAST DEFINITE.

I broke, I did break

je rompis

nous rompîmes

tu rompis

vous rompîtes

il rompit

ils rompirent

FUTURE.

I shall break, I shall be breaking

je romprai

nous romprons

tu rompras

vous romprez

elle rompra

elles rompront

CONDITIONAL.

I should break, I should be breaking

je romprais	nous romprions
tu romprais	vous rompiez
il romprait	ils rompraient

IMPERATIVE.

break, let's break, break

romps
rompons
rompez

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

je rompe	nous rompons
tu rompes	vous rompiez
il rompe	ils rompent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST or IMPERFECT

je rompis	nous rompissions
tu rompisses	vous rompiez
elle rompt	elles rompissent

French Text.

31. Lorsqu'ils furent descendus à terre,¹ le canot
When they had-landed, the skiff
 fut abandonné. Ils regagnèrent alors² la première
was abandoned. They now-got-back-to the first
 embarcation, puis le bâtiment resté³ sous vapeur.⁴
row-boat, then to-the vessel, which-had-remained with-its-steam-up.
 M^{me} Bazaine déclara alors au capitaine que sa
Mrs. Bazaine then-declared to-the captain that her
 belle-sœur se trouvait⁵ trop souffrante pour venir,
sister-in-law was too ill to come,
 et, montrant le maréchal, elle ajouta: «N'ayant pas de
and pointing-to the marshal, she added: "Having-no
 domestique, j'ai pris un valet de chambre. Cet
domestic, I have taken a man-servant. This

imbécile vient de tomber⁶ sur les rochers et
idiot has-just-fallen on the rocks and
 de se mettre⁶ dans l'état où vous le voyez.
put-himself into the condition in-which you see-him.
 Bazaine alla coucher dans l'entrepont avec les
Bazaine went to-bed between-decks with the
 matelots.
sailors.

¹ *Were descended on land.*² *Regained then.*³ *Remained.*⁴ *Under steam.*⁵ *Found herself; reflexive verb.*⁶ *Comes from falling . . . and from putting: 'venir de' with the infinitive corresponds to English to have just with the past participle.*

Exercise.

Conjugate in full the verb 'descendre,' except the subjunctive.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. He is breaking it. — 2. The sailors were putting themselves into the skiff. — 3. Then we landed. — 4. You will break them. — 5. He would put the captain ashore. — 6. Let's go down on the rocks. — 7. Put this idiot between decks. — 8. When I had landed, I went to bed on the rocks. — 9. Going down between decks, she pointed to the marshal. — 10. The captain's sister-in-law is too ill to land.

Supplementary Review Exercise.

1. Explain the use of moods and tenses in French Text 31.

2. Inflect the subjunctive present of 'mettre' and the subjunctive past of 'descendre.'

XXXIX. Review of AVOIR, ÊTRE.

Lesson 32.

116. Review Chapter XXX.

French Text.

32. Le lendemain, au point du jour,¹ on²
The next-day, at (the) dawn, they
 avait gagné la haute³ mer. M^{me} Bazaine
had reached the open sea. Mrs. Bazaine
 changea encore de projet, et, se disant malade,⁴ se fit
changed-her-plan-again, and, saying-she-was-not-well, had-herself
 reconduire à Gênes. Mais la nouvelle de
taken-back to Genoa. But the news of
 l'évasion était déjà connue, et le populaire,
the escape was already known, and the populace,
 averti,⁵ s'ameuta en vociférant sous les
which-had-been-informed, gathered (while) yelling under the
 fenêtres de l'hôtel. Le tumulte devint bientôt
windows of the hotel. The uproar became before-long
 si violent que le propriétaire, épouvanté,
so violent that the proprietor, terrified,
 fit s'enfuir les voyageurs par une porte cachée.
had-the-travellers-flee by a secret-door.

Je donne ce récit comme il me fut fait,⁶ et
I give this tale as it was-told-me, and
 je n'affirme rien.
 (I) *affirm-nothing.*

¹ Point of the day.² One.³ High.⁴ Saying herself ill.⁵ Informed.⁶ Made.

Exercise.

Inflect the phrases 'j'ai encore un projet' and 'je suis sous la fenêtre' in the indicative present, the descriptive past, the narrative past, the future, and the conditional.

Supplementary Exercise.

Translate into French:—

1. We have reached the open sea. — 2. I am already ill. —
3. You used to have plans. — 4. She used to be known at Genoa. —
5. The next day I got the news of the escape. — 6. We were terrified¹ by the uproar. — 7. At dawn they will have reached Genoa. —
8. You will be informed. — 9. He would have informed the populace. — 10. They would be at the windows of the hotel. — 11. Let's have some plans. — 12. Let's be ill. — 13. Have a secret door. —
14. Be violent. — 15. Having been at Genoa, they had been informed¹ by the proprietor of the hotel. — 16. Being under the windows, we were terrified by a violent uproar. — 17. Mrs. Bazaine has had some news.¹ — 18. The tales were told¹ us by a traveller. —
19. The hotel will have a proprietor. — 20. We should be violent, if (*si*) we were not ill.

¹ Plural.

XL. PERSONAL ENDINGS.**Lesson 83.****Lesson 146.**

117. The terminations that mark the different persons and numbers, in the inflection of verbs, are called the *personal endings*. A list of these terminations is given below. The endings of each tense are arranged in the following order: first person singular, second person singular, third person singular, first person plural, second person plural, third person plural.

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

First conjugation:	e,	es,	e;	ons,	ez,	ent
Other verbs:	s or x,	s or x,	t;	ons,	ez,	ent

IMPERATIVE.

First conjugation: **e;** **ons, ez**

Other verbs: **is or x;** **ons, ex**

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

All conjugations: e, es, e; ions, iez, ent

FUTURE.

All conjugations: ai, as, a; ons, ez, ont

CONDITIONAL.

All conjugations: ais, ais, ait; ions, iez, aient

DESCRIPTIVE PAST.

All conjugations: *like the conditional*

NARRATIVE PAST.

First conjugation: ai, as, a, âmes, âtes, èrent

Second and third } is, is, it; imes, ites, irent
conjugations:

Other verbs: **us, us, ut; ūmes, ūtes, urent**

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

First conjugation: asse, asses, ât; assions, assiez, assent

Second and third } **isse, isses, it; issions, issiez, issent**
conjugations:

Other verbs: usse, usses,ût; ussions, ussiez, ussent

a. Remember that final consonants and the terminations *e*, *es*, and *ent* are silent.

b. A few irregular verbs have different endings in some tenses.

French Text.

[NOTE.—Henceforth, in the interlinear version, articles, forms of 'avoir' and 'être,' personal pronouns, and words that have often occurred before, will generally not be translated.]

33. À cinq heures le *Bel-Ami* s'amarra¹ au
five *was-moored*
 quai, à côté d'un petit vapeur. Au moment où
side *steamer* *when*

Supplementary Exercise.

Inflect the tenses represented by: amarra, entraîs, remît (*narrative past*), attendaient, serra, portent, semblent, déchire, attachent, cachez, ajoutait, attache (*subjunctive present*).

Supplementary Review Exercise.

Explain the use of moods and tenses in the above text.

XLII. FORMATION OF TENSES.

Lesson 34.

118. Study §§ 120, 121, 122, (i), (ii) in Chapter XLIII.

French Text.

34. Est-il rien de plus sinistre qu'une conversation
there anything (of) more depressing than
 de table d'hôte? J'ai vécu dans les hôtels, j'ai subi
public-dining-room lived (the) endured
 l'âme humaine qui se montre là dans toute sa platitude.
soul human which shows-itself there all its
 Il faut¹ vraiment être bien résolu à la suprême indifférence
One-must really quite resigned (the)
 pour ne pas pleurer de chagrin, de dégoût et de honte
not-to weep for vexation disgust shame
 quand on entend l'homme parler. L'homme, l'homme
when hears his-fellow-man speak
 ordinaire, riche, connu, estimé, respecté, considéré,
everyday rich known esteemed respected honored
 content de lui: il ne sait rien, ne comprend rien et parle
self-satisfied knows understands speaks

de l'intelligence avec un orgueil désolant. Écoutez-les,
 (the) pride distressing Listen-to-them
 assis autour de la table, ces misérables! Ils causent!
 seated around those creatures are-conversing
 Ils causent avec ingénuité, avec confiance, et ils appellent
 unreservedly confidently call
 cela échanger des idées. Quelles idées? Ils disent où
 that exchanging (some) ideas What say where
 ils se sont promenés pour digérer: «la route était bien
 have-been-walking to digest road very
 jolie, mais il faisait un peu froid, en revenant²»; «la
 pretty but it-was rather cold on-the-way-back
 cuisine n'est pas mauvaise dans l'hôtel, bien que les
 cooking bad although (the)
 nourritures de restaurant soient toujours un peu excitantes.»
 food is always stimulating
 Et ils racontent ce qu'ils ont fait, ce qu'ils aiment, ce
 relate what done like
 qu'ils croient!
 believe

¹ It is necessary.² While returning.**Exercise.**

Construct the future of 'pleurer,' the conditional of 'parler,' the imperative plural of 'désolant,' the descriptive past of 'revenant.'

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Give the principal parts of 'montrer,' 'subir,' and 'entendre,' regular verbs of the first, second, and third conjugations.
2. Construct the future and the conditional of 'échanger.'
3. Construct the present indicative plural and the present subjunctive of 'excitant.'

XLII. FORMATION OF TENSES.

Lesson 35.

119. Study § 122, (iv), (v) in Chapter XLIII.

French Text.

35. Je me couche à dix heures, et je dors d'un profond
go-to-bed ten sleep deep
 sommeil jusqu'à l'heure où Bernard me réveille pour me
sleep until hour when wakes to
 dire: «Mauvais temps, monsieur, je ne peux pas sortir ce
tell Bad weather sir can get-out this
 matin.» Je me levai tout de suite, et je regardai au large.
morning got-up at-once looked outside
 La mer était toujours très grosse, mais je vis bien que le
sea still heavy but saw clearly
 vent était tombé. «Encore un jour à passer à l'hôtel!»
wind had gone-down Another day spend
 m'écriai-je. Vers huit heures, pourtant, un vent d'ouest
I-exclaimed eight however
 se leva, et je résolus de partir.
arose determined start

Exercise.

1. Construct the present indicative singular of 'couche,' 'dors,' and 'peux.'
2. Construct the narrative past of 'levai,' 'vis,' and 'résolus.'

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Construct the imperative singular of 'couche' and 'dors.'

2. Construct the narrative past of 'regardai' and 'écriai.'

3. Construct the past subjunctive of 'levai,' 'vis,' and 'résolus.'

XLIII. FORMATION OF TENSES.

Lesson 86.

Lesson 147.

120. The following five forms of the active verb are called the *principal parts*: (i.) the present infinitive, (ii.) the present participle, (iii.) the past participle, (iv.) the first person singular of the present indicative, (v.) the first person singular of the narrative past. Ex.: i. *donner*, ii. *donnant*, iii. *donné*, iv. *je donne*, v. *je donnai*.

121. From these forms we can construct the whole conjugation of all regular and of most irregular verbs.*

The *infinitive* gives us (1) the future, (2) the conditional.

The *present participle* gives us: (1) the plural of the present indicative, (2) the plural of the imperative, (3) the descriptive past, (4) the present subjunctive.

The *past participle* is used only in the formation of compound tenses.

The *first person singular of the present indicative* gives us: (1) the rest of the present indicative singular, (2) the imperative singular.

* It is extremely important that pupils learn to construct the conjugation of verbs according to these rules. Teachers should constantly insist on this method.

The *first person singular of the narrative past* gives us: (1) the rest of the narrative past, (2) the past subjunctive.

122. The method of formation is stated below:—

i. Add to the **infinitive**, dropping final *e* if there is one,

(1) for the *future*: **ai, as, a, ons, ez, ont.** Ex.: *infin.* finir, *fut.* finirai, finiras, finira, finirons, finirez, finiront.

(2) for the *conditional*: **ais, ais, ait, ions, iez, aient.** Ex.: *infin.* vendre, *fut.* vendrais, vendrais, vendrait, vendrions, vendriez, vendraient.

ii. Change the ending *ant* of the **present participle**,

(1) for the *present indicative plural*, to: **ons, ez, ent.** Ex.: *pres. part.* finissant, *pres. ind. pl.* finissons, finissez, finissent.

(2) for the *imperative plural*, to: **ons, ez.** Ex.: *pres. part.* vendant, *imper. pl.* vendons, vendez.

(3) for the *descriptive past*, to: **ais, ais, ait, ions, iez, aient.** Ex.: *pres. part.* croyant, *descr. past* croyais, croyais, croyait, croyions, croyiez, croyaient.

(4) for the *present subjunctive*, to: **e, es, e, ions, iez, ent.** Ex.: *pres. part.* sachant, *pres. subj.* sache, saches, sache, sachions, sachiez, sachent.

iii. For compound tenses, formed with the aid of the **past participle**, see Chapter L.

iv. The first person singular of the **present indicative** always ends in *e, x, or s*.*

* Except in the verb 'avoir,' to have.

(1) The *other two persons* are formed by changing this

e to: **es, e.** Ex.: *first pers.* parle, *second* parles, *third* parle.

x to: **x, t.** Ex.: *first pers.* veux, *second* veux, *third* veut.

s to: **s, t.** Ex.: *first pers.* sais, *second* sais, *third* sait.

But if the s is preceded by c, d, or t, no t is added in the third person: vaincs, vaincs, vainc; vends, vends, vend; mets, mets, met.

(2) The one form of the *imperative singular* is exactly like the first person singular of the present indicative. Ex.: *I speak, I choose, I break* = je parle, je choisis, je romps; *speak, choose, break* = parle, choisis, romps. If the pronoun or adverb 'en' or 'y' immediately follows, an imperative regularly ending in a vowel adds a final *s*, which is pronounced **z**. Ex.: donne, *va*; donnes-en, *vas-y*.

v. The first person singular of the **narrative past** always ends in *ai, is, or us*.*

(1) The rest of the *narrative past* is formed by changing this

ai to: **as, a, âmes, âtes, èrent.** Ex.: allai, allas, alla, allâmes, *etc.*

is to: **is, it, îmes, îtes, irent.** Ex.: pris, pris, prit, primes, *etc.*

us to: **us, ut, ûmes, ûtes, urent.** Ex.: dus, dus, dut, dûmes, *etc.*

(2) The *past subjunctive* is formed by changing the same

ai to: **asse, asses, ât, assions, assiez, assent.** Ex.: allasse, *etc.*

is to: **isse, isses, ît, issions, issiez, issent.** Ex.: prisse, *etc.*

us to: **usse, usses, ût, ussions, ussiez, ussent.** Ex.: dusse, *etc.*

123. Some of the irregular verbs do not conform to all of these rules: their peculiarities will be noted in Chapter CV. A few irregularities in some *regular* verbs of the first conjugation will be mentioned in Chapters XLVII–XLIX.

* Except in 'tenir' and 'venir' and their compounds: see Chapter XCV.

French Text.

36. Je regarde l'heure, huit heures, et je dis en
say (while)
 m'adressant à mon matelot: «Il est tôt pour le vent
turning skipper It early for
 d'ouest.» «Il va souffler dur!» s'écrie Bernard. Je ne
It is-going to-blow hard
 réponds pas; je crois qu'il a raison, mais je ne veux pas
answer believe that he is-right want
 retourner au port. La voile frémissait déjà, et la longue
to-return sail was-shaking already long
 barre de cuivre se raidissait dans ma main. Une rafale
tiller copper stiffened gust
 brusque nous pencha à faire monter l'eau sur le pont.
sudden tipped so-as to-make the-water-come-in deck
 Je dus louvoyer; puis je commandai d'amener le foc en
had to-luff then gave-orders lower jib (while)
 prenant un ris dans la voile. Un quart d'heure plus tard
taking reef quarter later
 je pris un second ris.
took

Exercise.

1. Construct the future of 'souffler' and the conditional of 'monter.'
2. Construct the present indicative plural and the imperative plural of 'prenant' and the descriptive past of 'adressant.'
3. Construct the present indicative singular of 'regarde,' 'dis,' and 'veux.'
4. Construct the narrative past of 'commandai,' 'pris,' and 'dus.'

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Give the principal parts of 'retourner,' 'frémir,' and 'répondre,' regular verbs of the first, second, and third conjugations.

2. Construct the future and the conditional of 'retourner.'

3. Construct the descriptive past of 'prenant' and the present subjunctive of 'adressant.'

4. Construct the present indicative singular and the imperative singular of 'réponds.'

5. Construct the past subjunctive of 'commandai,' 'pris,' and 'dus.'

XLIV. FORMATION OF TENSES.**Lesson 87.****Lesson 200.**

124. Regular verbs are divided into three conjugations, according to the ending of the present active infinitive: verbs in *-er* belong to the first, those in *-ir* to the second, and those in *-re* to the third conjugation.

a. Many grammarians make of a few verbs in *-oir* another regular conjugation, which they call the *third*; the conjugation in *-re* they call the *fourth*. In this book the verbs in *-oir* are all classed as *irregular*.

125. If the infinitive of a regular verb is known, the other principal parts can be constructed from it:—

First Conj.: drop final *er*, and add *ant, é, e, ai*.

Second Conj.: drop final *ir*, and add *issant, i, is, is*.

Third Conj.: drop final *re*, and add *ant, u, s, is*.

Ex.: *donner*, donnant, donné, je donne, je donnai
grandir, grandissant, grandi, je grandis, je grandis
rompre, rompant, rompu, je romps, je rompis

French Text.

37. En *approchant* de l'île *Saint-Honorat*, nous
On approaching (of) island
 passons auprès d'un rocher nu, rouge, hérissé comme un
pass near rock bare red bristly as
 porc-épic, tellement rugueux, armé de dents, de pointes
porcupine so rugged armed with teeth points
 et de griffes qu'on peut à peine marcher dessus; il faut
claws can hardly walk on-it one-must
 poser le pied dans les creux, entre ses défenses, et avancer
place foot hollows between its tusks proceed
 avec précaution. On le nomme Saint-Ferréol.
cautiously It-is named

Exercise.

1. Construct the principal parts of 'marcher,' according to the rule in § 125.
2. Construct the whole conjugation (including the subjunctive) of 'marcher,' according to the directions given in Chapter XLIII.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Describe all the forms of first conjugation verbs that occur in the above text.
2. Conjugate in full the phrase 'poser le pied dessus.'

XLV. FORMATION OF TENSES.

Lesson 38.

Lesson 201.

126. Review Chapter XLIII and § 125.

French Text.

38. C'est sur cet écueil bizarre, en pleine mer que fut
It this rock strange open that
 enseveli et caché pendant cinq ans le corps de Paganini.¹
buried hidden for five years body
 L'aventure est digne de la vie de cet artiste génial et
adventure worthy life that artist gifted
 macabre, qu'on disait² possédé du diable, si étrange
uncanny who-was-said-to-be possessed by-the devil so odd
 d'allures, de corps, de visage, dont le talent surhumain
in manners person face of-whom his superhuman
 et la maigreur prodigieuse firent un être de légende, une
his thinness marvellous made legendary-being
 espèce de personnage d'Hoffmann.³
sort character

¹ A famous Italian violinist.² Whom one said.³ A German writer, celebrated for his fantastic tales.

Exercise.

1. Construct the principal parts of 'ensevelir,' according to the rule in § 125.

2. Construct the whole conjugation (including the subjunctive) of 'ensevelir,' according to the directions given in Chapter XLIII.

Supplementary Exercise.

Conjugate in full the phrase 'ensevelir le corps de cet artiste génial.'

XLVI. FORMATION OF TENSES.**Lesson 39.****Lesson 202.****127. Review Chapter XLIII and § 125.****French Text.**

39. Comme il retournait à Gênes, sa patrie, accom-
As was-returning Genoa his native-place accom-
 pagné de son fils, qui, seul maintenant, pouvait l'entendre
panied by his son who alone at-this-time could hear-him
 tant sa voix était devenue faible,¹ il mourut à Nice, du
so-much his voice had become weak died
 choléra, le 27 mai 1840. Donc, son fils embarqua sur un
May So put-aboard
 navire le cadavre de son père et se dirigea² vers l'Italie.
ship corpse father turned towards
 Mais le clergé génois refusa de donner la sépulture à ce
clergy Genoese refused (the) burial this
 démoniaque.
demoniac

¹ I.e., his voice had grown so weak.

² Directed himself: reflexive.

Exercise.

1. Construct the principal parts of 'entendre,' according to the rule in § 125.
2. Construct the whole conjugation (including the subjunctive) of 'entendre,' according to the directions given in Chapter XLIII.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Conjugate in full the phrase 'entendre la voix de son père.'

XLVII. FORMATION OF TENSES.**Lesson 148.**

128. Verbs of the first conjugation ending in *-cer* change *c* to *ç* before *a* and *o*; verbs in *-ger* insert *e* between the *g* and an *a* or *o*. These changes are made in order to show that the *c* and the *g* keep the sounds *s* and *j*; the *e* after the *g* is exactly equivalent to the cedilla under the *c*. See § 2. As samples of these two classes of verbs we shall take 'placer,' *to put*, and 'manger,' *to eat*. In the future, the conditional, and the present subjunctive the *c* or *g* is never followed by *a* or *o*.

(1)	Placer	plaçant	placé
(2)	Manger	mangeant	mangé

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

je place	je mange
tu places	tu manges
il place	elle mange
nous plaçons	nous mangeons
vous placez	vous mangez
ils placent	elles mangent

DESCRIPTIVE PAST.

je plaçais	je mangeais
tu plaçais	tu mangeais
il plaçait	elle mangeait

DESCRIPTIVE PAST. — *Continued.*

nous placions	nous mangions
vous placiez	vous mangiez
ils plaçaient	elles mangeaient

NARRATIVE PAST.

je plaçai	je mangeai
tu plaças	tu mangeas
il plaça	elle mangea
nous plaçâmes	nous mangeâmes
vous plaçâtes	vous mangeâtes
ils placèrent	elles mangèrent

IMPERATIVE.

place	mange
plaçons	mangeons
placez	mangez

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

je plaçasse	je mangeasse
tu plaçasses	tu mangeasses
il plaçât	elle mangeât
nous plaçassions	nous mangeassions
vous plaçassiez	vous mangeassiez
ils plaçassent.	elles mangeassent

Exercise.

[NOTE. — The vocabulary of this exercise is taken from French Texts 37 and 39, on pp. 127, 129.]

1. We are proceeding cautiously. — 2. He was turning towards his native place. — 3. I proceeded between the bare rocks. — 4. The 27th of May, 1840, they turned towards Genoa. — 5. Let's proceed in the hollows. — 6. The father and the son were turning towards Italy. — 7. We were proceeding near the island. — 8. We are directing the burial of the corpse. — 9. On approaching the rock, she proceeded towards us. — 10. We directed them.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. I am putting my foot on it. — 2. They are eating it. — 3. We are putting them into the hollows of the rock. — 4. We are eating at this time. — 5. I used to put them on the island. — 6. He was eating at Nice. — 7. We were putting his father's corpse on a ship. — 8. You used to eat so much. — 9. She put her foot on the corpse. — 10. We ate the porcupine. — 11. Put the tusks near him. — 12. Let's eat the corpse. — 13. I shall put them between his son's feet. — 14. The father will eat alone. — 15. He would put himself between the father and the son.

XLVIII. FORMATION OF TENSES.**Lesson 149.**

129. Verbs in *-oyer* and *-uyer* change the *y* to *i* before the endings *-e*, *-es*, *-ent*, and before the *-er-* of the future and conditional. Verbs in *-ayer* may either keep the *y* throughout or change it to *i* in the cases mentioned. Verbs in *-eyer* always keep the *y*. 'Employer,' *to use*, 'appuyer,' *to lean*, and 'payer,' *to pay*, are examples of the first three classes. The present indicative and subjunctive, the imperative, the future, and the conditional are the only parts of the verb where the change occurs.

(1) Employer	employant	employé
(2) Appuyer	appuyant	appuyé
(3) Payer	payant	payé

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

j'emploie	j'appuie	je paye or paie
tu emploies	tu appuies	tu payes or paies
il emploie	elle appuie	il paye or paie

INDICATIVE PRESENT. — *Continued.*

nous employons	nous appuyons	nous payons
vous employez	vous appuyez	vous payez
ils emploient	elles appuient	ils payent or paient

FUTURE.

j'emploierai	j'appuierai	je payerai or paierai
tu emploieras	tu appuieras	tu payeras or paieras
il emploiera	elle appuera	il payera or paiera
nous emploierons	nous appuierons	{ nous payerons or paierons
vous emploierez	vous appuierez	{ vous payerez or paierez
ils emploieront	elles appuieront	{ ils payeront or paieront

CONDITIONAL.

j'emploierais	j'appuierais	je payerais or paierais
----------------------	---------------------	--------------------------------

and so forth

IMPERATIVE.

emploie	appuie	paye or paie
employons	appuyons	payons
employez	appuyez	payez

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

j'emploie	j'appuie	je paye or paie
tu emploies	tu appuies	tu payes or paies
il emploie	elle appuie	il paye or paie
nous employions	nous appuyions	nous payions
vous employiez	vous appuyiez	vous payiez
ils emploient	elles appuient	ils payent or paient

a. When *y* is followed by the ending *-ions* or *-iez*, as in 'appuyions,' 'payiez,' there is a sound of double *y*.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — The vocabulary of this exercise is taken from the French Texts 36 and 38, on pp. 125, 128.]

Translate into French: —

1. I am leaning my hand on the deck. — 2. We shall luff in a quarter of an hour. — 3. They were leaning the body on a tiller. — 4. You would pay the artist. — 5. He is using the jib. — 6. She was paying him. — 7. We used the superhuman talent of that gifted artist. — 8. At eight o'clock they luffed. — 9. Lean on the sail. — 10. They are paying us.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. They are luffing. — 2. He is paying Bernard. — 3. You (*tu*) are using them. — 4. Lean (*tu*) on the tiller. — 5. Let's use the sails. — 6. You were paying the artist. — 7. I don't want him to luff.¹ — 8. I don't believe that you (*tu*) are paying him. — 9. It is odd that Bernard and Hoffmann do not luff. — 10. They did not say that he was using the devil. — 11. We shall pay in five years. — 12. You were using them for eight years. — 13. It's blowing hard: let's luff. — 14. I don't say that they are paying this strange artist. — 15. She paid a quarter of an hour earlier.

¹ *I don't want that he luff.*

XLIX. FORMATION OF TENSES.**Lesson 150.**

130. In some verbs the next-to-last vowel of the infinitive is *é*: this *é* becomes *è*, whenever the ending of the verb is *-e*, *-es*, or *-ent* — that is to say, in the singular and third person plural of the present in-

dicative and subjunctive, and in the singular of the imperative. But verbs in *-éer* keep their *é* throughout.

- (1) *To yield* = *céder*, *yielding* = *cédant*, *yielded* = *cédé*
 (2) *To create* = *créer*, *creating* = *créant*, *created* = *créé*.

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

je cède	je crée
tu cèdes	tu crées
il cède	elle crée
nous cédon	nous créons
vous cédez	vous créez
ils cèdent	elles créent

IMPERATIVE.

cède	crée
cédon	créons
cédez	créez

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

je cède	je crée
----------------	----------------

and so forth

a. In the case of verbs in *-éer*, some writers still keep the *é* throughout, using 'abrége,' for instance, instead of 'abrège.'

131. In some verbs the next-to-last vowel of the infinitive is an *e* that is silent or pronounced *e* — that is, an *e* not followed by a consonant letter in the same syllable: in the future and conditional, and wherever the ending of the verb is *-e*, *-es*, or *-ent*, this *e* is changed to an *è* sound.

The sound *è* is spelled in two ways: in most verbs it is written *è*; but verbs in *-eler* and *-eter* indicate the sound by doubling the *l* or the *t* after the *e*. The most

important exceptions to this rule are 'geler,' 'peler,' 'acheter,' 'racheter,' which have 'gèle,' 'pèle,' 'achète,' 'rachète,' etc.

a. The complete list is: bourreler, celer, ciseler, écarteler, geler, harceler, marteler, peler; acheter, becqueter, colleter, crocheter, épousseter, étiqueter, haleter; *and their compounds*. All these verbs are spelled with *è* in the cases mentioned above.

(1) *To lift* = lever, *lifting* = levant, *lifted* = levé

(2) *To throw* = jeter, *throwing* = jetant, *thrown* = jeté.

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

je lève	je jette
tu lèves	tu jettes
il lève	elle jette
nous levons	nous jetons
vous levez	vous jetez
ils lèvent	elles jettent

FUTURE.

je lèverai	je jetterai
------------	-------------

and so forth

CONDITIONAL.

je lèverais	je jetterais
-------------	--------------

and so forth

IMPERATIVE.

lève	jette
levons	jetons
levez	jetez

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

je lève	je jette
---------	----------

and so forth

Exercise.

[NOTE. — The vocabulary for this exercise is taken from French Texts 34 and 35 on pp. 119, 121.]

1. I digest what I eat. — 2. They are walking this morning. — 3. He calls me at ten o'clock. — 4. We do not digest restaurant food. — 5. He was walking around the hotel. — 6. You call that bad weather. — 7. She would not digest the food in hotels. — 8. They will walk towards the sea. — 9. I shall call him at eight o'clock. — 10. Call Bernard.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Let's digest what we eat. — 2. You do not digest it. — 3. He digests what he eats. — 4. It is necessary for them to digest it. — 5. I shall always digest hotel food. — 6. I get up at eight o'clock. — 7. The sea is very heavy, although the wind does not arise. — 8. I used to get up at once. — 9. The wind arose at about ten o'clock. — 10. I should not get up this morning. — 11. Throw the food into the sea. — 12. I call her, to converse a little. — 13. They do not say that she is calling them. — 14. You will not call the cooking bad. — 15. He called me at once.

L. COMPOUND TENSES.**Lesson 40.**

132. Study §§ 74; 95; 95, *a*; 96, *b*.

133. Review 'avoir' and 'être' (Chapter XXX), and learn the subjunctive forms.

French Text.

40. On allait cependant débarquer le corps lorsque
They were going nevertheless to-unload when
 la municipalité s'y opposa¹ sous prétexte que l'artiste était
city-government intervened pretext that had

mort du choléra. Gênes était alors ravagé par une
died Genoa then devastated
 épidémie de ce mal; mais on argua que la présence de ce
epidemic this disease they argued that
 nouveau cadavre pouvait aggraver le fléau.
new corpse might aggravate affliction

¹ *Opposed itself to it.*

Exercise.

1. I have unloaded the body. — 2. The cholera has devastated Genoa. — 3. The artists had unloaded the corpse. — 4. We shall have aggravated the affliction. — 5. You would have devastated the municipality.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Inflect the phrases: 'j'ai débarqué le corps,' 'j'avais ravagé Gênes,' 'j'aurais aggravé le fléau.'

2. Translate into French: —

1. He has died of the cholera. — 2. You will have died of the epidemic. — 3. I should have died of this disease. — 4. You (*tu*) had died of this new affliction. — 5. Then I shall have died.

LI. COMPOUND TENSES.

Lesson 41.

Lesson 208.

134. Study § 96; read § 96, *a*.

135. Below is given a synopsis of the compound tenses of 'sauter,' *to jump*, and 'tomber,' *to fall*. The first is conjugated with 'avoir,' the second with 'être.'

- (1) *To have jumped* = **avoir sauté**, *having jumped* = **ayant sauté**

IND. PRES. PERF. : *I have jumped or I have been jumping or I jumped*
j'ai sauté

IND. PAST PERF. : *I had jumped or I had been jumping*
j'avais sauté

IND. FUT. PERF. : *I shall have jumped or I shall have been jumping*
j'aurai sauté

COND. PERF. : *I should have jumped or I should have been jumping*
j'aurais sauté

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT PERFECT.
j'aie sauté

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST PERFECT.
j'eusse sauté

- (2) *To have fallen* = **être tombé**, *having fallen* = **étant tombé**

IND. PRES. PERF. : *I have fallen or I have been falling or I fell*
je suis tombé

IND. PAST PERF. : *I had fallen or I had been falling*
j'étais tombé

IND. FUT. PERF. : *I shall have fallen*
je serai tombé

COND. PERF. : *I should have fallen*
je serais tombé

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT PERFECT.
je sois tombé

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST PERFECT.

je fusse tombé

a. The past participle 'tombé' must agree in gender and number, like an adjective, with the subject of the verb: elle est tombée, ils sont tombés, elles sont tombées. 'Sauté' does not change.

French Text.

41. Le fils de Paganini revint alors à Marseille, où
 came-back *Marseilles* *where*
 l'entrée du port lui fut interdite pour les mêmes raisons.
 entrance *forbidden* *same* *reasons*
 Puis il se dirigea vers Cannes où il ne put pénétrer
 could-not *get-in*
 non plus.
 either

Exercise.

Conjugate in full 'avoir sauté' and 'être tombé.'

Supplementary Exercise.

Inflect the phrases: 'j'ai pénétré dans le port de Cannes,'
 'je l'avais dirigé vers Marseilles,' 'je serais revenu¹ pour les
 mêmes raisons.'

¹ 'Revenu' must agree in gender and number with the subject of the verb.

LII. COMPOUND TENSES.

Lesson 42.

Lesson 204.

136. Study § 84.

137. Construct a synopsis of the compound tenses of 'grandir,' *to grow*, and 'sortir,' *to go out*. 'Grandir' is conjugated with 'avoir,' 'sortir' with 'être.'

French Text.

[NOTE.—'Mer' is feminine. 'Aller,' 'rester' are conjugated with 'être'; 'bercer,' 'débarquer,' 'enfouir,' 'porter,' 'repousser,' with 'avoir.']

42. Il restait donc en mer, berçant sur la vague le
remained therefore at rocking billow
 cadavre du grand artiste bizarre que les hommes repoussaient
eccentric which men rejected
 de partout. Il ne savait plus que faire, où aller, où
(from) everywhere no-longer-knew what to-do where to-go
 porter ce mort sacré pour lui, quand il vit cette rochè
to-carry this dead-body sacred when saw this rock
 nue de Saint-Ferréol au milieu des flots. Il y fit débarquer
bare midst waves there had-unloaded
 le cercueil qui fut enfoui au milieu de l'îlot.
coffin buried middle islet

Exercise.

1. I have remained at sea. — 2. You had unloaded the coffin. —
 3. He will have gone to the islet. — 4. We should have carried
 this dead body to St. Ferréol. — 5. They have remained on the
 billow. — 6. I had buried the corpse on this bare rock. — 7. You
 will have gone in the midst of the waves. — 8. The billows would
 have rocked the coffin. — 9. We have remained in the middle of
 the sea. — 10. Men had rejected the great artist.

Supplementary Exercise.

Conjugate in full the phrases: 'avoir enfoui le cercueil,'
 'être allé partout.'

Supplementary Review Exercise.

1. I don't believe (*crois*) that he has remained at sea. — 2. You
 had not buried the corpse, although (*quoique*) we had unloaded
 it. — 3. He did not believe (*croyait*) that I had gone to St.

Ferréol. — 4. The great artist has remained, although men have rejected him. — 5. I don't believe that you have remained in the midst of the waves. — 6. Although she had carried him this dead body, he did not see it. — 7. She did not believe that he had gone to the islet. — 8. He had the coffin unloaded at St. Ferréol, although the billows had rocked it everywhere. — 9. If (*si*) you had carried the corpse to St. Ferréol, you would have buried it on this bare rock. — 10. If men had rejected me everywhere, I should have remained at sea.

LIII. COMPOUND TENSES.

Lesson 43.

Lesson 205.

138. Study § 85, omitting (A) and (B).

139. Construct a synopsis of the compound tenses of 'entendre,' *to hear*, and 'descendre,' *to go down*. 'Entendre' is conjugated with 'avoir,' 'descendre' with 'être.'

French Text.

[NOTE. — 'Chanter,' 'chercher,' 'transporter' are conjugated with 'avoir.']

43. C'est seulement en 1845 qu'il revint avec deux amis
It only in that returned with two friends
chercher les restes de son père pour les transporter à
to-look-for remains his to transport
Gênes, dans la villa Gajona. N'aimerait-on pas mieux
Would-not-one-like better
que¹ l'extraordinaire violiniste fût demeuré¹ sur l'écueil
that wonderful violinist stayed rock
hérissé où chante la vague dans les étranges découpures
bristly sings strange fissures
du roc?
stone

¹ *Would one not prefer to have had . . . stay.*

Exercise.

1. I have looked for her. — 2. We have stayed on the rock. — 3. You had transported them to Genoa. — 4. He had stayed in the Gajona villa. — 5. She will have sung with us. — 6. The two friends will have stayed on the billow. — 7. I should have looked for them. — 8. We should have stayed in the villa. — 9. You have transported them to the rock. — 10. She has stayed with him.

Supplementary Exercise.

Conjugate in full the phrases: 'avoir cherché les restes du violiniste,' 'être demeuré sur l'écueil.'

Supplementary Review Exercise.

1. I should prefer to have had him look for his father's remains.¹ — 2. He would prefer to have had me stay at Genoa. — 3. You would prefer to have had us sing in the Gajona villa. — 4. We should prefer to have had you stay on the bristly rock. — 5. She would prefer to have had them transport the remains to Genoa. — 6. I don't believe (*crois*) that he has looked for them. — 7. He doesn't believe (*croit*) that she has stayed at Genoa. — 8. You do not believe (*croyez*) that we have sung. — 9. We do not believe (*croyons*) that you have stayed on the rock. — 10. She doesn't believe that they have transported her to Genoa.

¹ Follow the construction of the French Text.

LIV. COMPOUND TENSES.**Lesson 44.****Lesson 206.**

140. Review §§ 84, 85.

141. Construct a synopsis of the compound tenses of 'avoir' and 'être.' Both verbs are conjugated with 'avoir.'

French Text.

[NOTE. — 'Terre' is feminine, 'vent' masculine.]

44. « Beau temps, monsieur. » Je me lève et monte sur
Fine weather sir go-up
 le pont. Il est trois heures du matin; la mer est plate, le
deck it three morning smooth
 ciel infini ressemble à une immense voûte d'ombre
sky boundless looks-like (to) vault shade
 ensemencée de graines de feu. Une brise très légère
sprinkled with specks fire breeze very light
 souffle de terre. Le café est chaud, nous le buvons, et,
blows from land coffee hot drink
 sans perdre une minute pour profiter de ce vent
without losing in-order-to take-advantage this wind
 favorable, nous partons.
start

Exercise.

1. I have had fine weather. — 2. She had been on the deck. —
 3. You will have had some fire. — 4. The coffee would have been
 hot. — 5. We should have had a favorable wind. — 6. They have
 been on the sea. — 7. I had had three minutes. — 8. We shall
 have been on the land. — 9. You would have had a very light
 breeze. — 10. The sky has been without shade.

Supplementary Exercise.

Inflect in full the compound tenses of 'avoir' and
 'être.'

Supplementary Review Exercise.

1. I have gone up on the deck. — 2. They had taken advantage
 of a light breeze. — 3. You will have started at three o'clock. —
 4. We should have lost three hours. — 5. I have got up without
 losing a minute. — 6. The wind had blown from land. — 7. I don't

believe (*crois*) that she has been on the deck.—8. He doesn't believe (*croit*) that we have had any wind.—9. I didn't believe (*croyais*) that you had been without fire.—10. She didn't believe (*croyait*) that I had had some coffee.

LV. PASSIVE.

Lesson 45.

Lesson 207.

142. Study §§ 78, 84; read § 78, a.

143. Below will be found a synopsis of the entire passive voice of 'oublier,' *to forget*.

To be forgotten = *être oublié*, *to have been forgotten* = *avoir été oublié*, *being forgotten* = *étant oublié*, *having been forgotten* = *ayant été oublié*.

IND. PRES. : *I am forgotten or I am being forgotten*

je suis oublié

IND. PRES. PERF. : *I have been forgotten or I was forgotten*

j'ai été oublié

DESCR. PAST : *I was forgotten or I was being forgotten*

j'étais oublié

IND. PAST PERF. : *I had been forgotten*

j'avais été oublié

NAR. PAST : *I was forgotten*

je fus oublié

FUTURE : *I shall be forgotten*

je serai oublié

FUTURE PERF. : *I shall have been forgotten***j'aurai été oublié**CONDITIONAL : *I should be forgotten***je serais oublié**COND. PERF. : *I should have been forgotten***j'aurais été oublié**IMPERATIVE, second person singular : *be forgotten***sois oublié**

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

je sois oublié

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT PERFECT.

j'aie été oublié

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

je fusse oublié

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST PERFECT.

j'eusse été oublié

a. Remember that the past participle 'oublié' must agree in gender and number, like an adjective, with the subject of the verb. 'Été' is invariable. Ex.: elle est oubliée, ils ont été oubliés, elles avaient été oubliées.

French Text.

45. Nous voilà glissant sur l'onde, vers la pleine mer.

Here-we-are gliding wave open

La côte disparaît; on ne voit plus rien autour de nous que

*coast disappears no-longer-sees-anything around (of) but*du noir. C'est là une sensation, une émotion troublante¹*blackness. That-is exciting*

et délicieuse: s'enfoncer dans cette nuit vide, dans ce

delightful to-plunge that night empty that

silence, sur cette eau, loin de tout. Il semble qu'on
far everything It seems as-if
 quitte le monde, qu'on ne doit plus jamais arriver
were-leaving world as-if were-never-again to-arrive
 nulle part, qu'il n'y aura plus de rivage, qu'il
anywhere as-if there-would-be-no-more shore as-if
 n'y aura pas de jour.
there-would-be-no-more day

¹ Feminine form of the present participle of 'troubler,' used adjectively.

Exercise.

1. I am excited. — 2. You were being excited in that silence. — 3. The coast was forgotten. — 4. We had been excited, far from everything. — 5. The delightful emotions have been forgotten. — 6. I shall be excited on the wave. — 7. You will have been forgotten in that empty night. — 8. They would have been excited on that water. — 9. The sensation would be forgotten. — 10. Be excited.

Supplementary Exercise.

Conjugate in full the passive of 'troubler.'

Supplementary Review Exercise.

1. Although (*quoique*) they are not forgotten, one does not see them.— 2. That was a delightful sensation, although we were excited.— 3. Although the sea has been forgotten, we shall never forget that night.— 4. Although you had been excited, you had had a delightful emotion.— 5. Although I am far from everything, I am not forgotten.— 6. It does not seem as if we were excited.— 7. It did not seem as if they were forgotten.— 8. I do not believe (*crois*) that you have been excited.— 9. I did not believe (*croisais*) that she had been forgotten.— 10. Had they been forgotten, we should have been excited.

LVI. INTERROGATION.

Lesson 46.

Lesson 151.

144. In English we often construct interrogative and negative sentences with the help of the word *to do*; the French language has no such auxiliary. Ex.: *do we speak* = *speak we* = parlons-nous? *when does he go* = *when goes he* = quand part-il? *what did you see* = *what saw you* or *what have you seen* = que vîtes-vous or qu'avez-vous vu? *we don't speak* = *we speak not* = nous ne parlons pas; *why doesn't he go* = *why goes he not* = pourquoi ne part-il pas? *you didn't see anything* = *you saw nothing* or *you haven't seen anything* = vous ne vîtes rien or vous n'avez rien vu.

145. When the subject of an interrogative verb is a noun, or a word used as a noun, and the sentence is not introduced by an interrogative word, the French language employs one of the two constructions illustrated by the following examples: *is your brother here* = votre frère est-il ici or est-ce que votre frère est ici? *were those soldiers killed* = ces soldats furent-ils tués or est-ce que ces soldats furent tués? *has the officer gone* = l'officier est-il parti or est-ce que l'officier est parti? *will my sister see it* = ma sœur le verra-t-elle or est-ce que ma sœur le verra?

146. The indicative of 'porter,' *to carry* or *to wear*, is conjugated interrogatively on next page:—

PRES.: *do I carry or am I carrying?*

est-ce que je porte	portons-nous
portes-tu	portez-vous
porte-t-il	portent-ils

PRES. PERF.: *have I carried or have I been carrying or did I carry?*

ai-je porté	avons-nous porté
as-tu porté	avez-vous porté
a-t-il porté	ont-ils porté

DESCR. PAST: *was I carrying or did I carry?*

est-ce que je portais	portions-nous
portais-tu	portiez-vous
portait-il	portaient-ils

PAST PERF.: *had I carried or had I been carrying?*

avais-je porté	avions-nous porté
avais-tu porté	aviez-vous porté
avait-il porté	avaient-ils porté

NAR. PAST: *did I carry?*

est-ce que je portai	portâmes-nous
portas-tu	portâtes-vous
porta-t-il	portèrent-ils

FUTURE: *shall I carry or shall I be carrying?*

est-ce que je porterai	porterons-nous
porteras-tu	porterez-vous
portera-t-il	porteront-ils

FUT. PERF.: *shall I have carried or shall I have been carrying?*

aurai-je porté	aurons-nous porté
auras-tu porté	aurez-vous porté
aura-t-il porté	auront-ils porté

a. It is possible to use, instead of 'est-ce que je porte,' etc., the forms 'porté-je,' 'portais-je,' 'porterai-je,' and, in the conditional, 'porterais-je.' The *é* of 'porté-je' is pronounced *e*.

δ. The form with 'est-ce que' may be used also in any person and number of any tense. Ex.: *est-ce qu'il portait, est-ce que vous aurez porté?*

ε. Note that final *t* is sounded before 'il,' 'ils,' 'elle,' 'elles.'

French Text.

[NOTE. — Henceforth there will be no interlinear translation: the words are to be sought in the French-English Vocabulary at the back of the book. — Texts 46-65 are taken, with some changes, from a *conte* by Madame d'Aulnoy.]

46. Il était une fois un pauvre laboureur qui, en mourant, dit à son fils et à sa fille:

— Votre mère m'apporta en dot deux escabeaux et une paillasse; les voilà, avec ma poule, un pot d'œillets et une bague d'argent qui me fut donnée par une grande dame qui vint un jour chez moi et me dit: «Arrosez les œillets et serrez bien la bague. Quand vous serez près de mourir, donnez-les à votre fille, et le reste de ce que vous aurez, à son frère.»

Exercise.

Conjugate interrogatively the simple and the perfect conditional of 'porter.'

Supplementary Exercise.

Make the following sentences interrogative: —

1. Il était un pauvre laboureur. — 2. Son fils et sa fille mouraient. — 3. Nous apportâmes deux escabeaux. — 4. La bague me fut donnée par une dame. — 5. Vous vîntes un jour chez moi. — 6. J'arroserai les œillets. — 7. Tu serrerais bien la bague d'argent. — 8. Vous serez près de mourir. — 9. Nous les donnons à votre fille. — 10. Son frère aurait une paillasse. — 11. Je donne un pot d'œillets à ma mère. — 12. Il a apporté sa paillasse. — 13. Elles avaient arrosé mes œillets. — 14. Le laboureur aurait donné la poule à sa fille. — 15. Nous aurons bien serré la bague.

LVII. INTERROGATION.

Lesson 152.

147. The subject of an interrogative verb may be an interrogative pronoun, a personal pronoun, a possessive pronoun, a demonstrative pronoun, or a noun. If the subject is a noun, it may or may not be modified by an interrogative adjective.

The French construction differs according to the nature of the subject. We must distinguish three cases, which are described in §§ 148, 149, and 150.

148. When the subject is an **interrogative pronoun** or a **noun modified by an interrogative adjective**, the construction is generally the same in French and in English. Ex.: *who speaks* = qui parle? *which one has gone* = lequel est parti? *what seats were taken* = quelles places étaient prises?

a. The interrogative pronoun *what*, used as subject of a verb, is 'qu'est-ce qui'; *who* is usually 'qui,' but sometimes 'qui est-ce qui': *what comes of it* = qu'est-ce qui en résulte? *who is speaking* = qui parle or qui est-ce qui parle?

149. When the subject is a **personal pronoun**, the French interrogative form may be made in either one of two ways:—

(1) The subject may be put after the verb, instead of before it, a hyphen being inserted between the verb and

the pronoun: *is it I* = *est-ce moi?* *do you speak* = *parlez-vous?* In compound tenses the subject comes immediately after the auxiliary: *have we spoken* = *avons-nous parlé?* Before 'il,' 'elle,' 'ils,' 'elles,' or 'on,' if the third person of the verb ends in a consonant letter, that letter is pronounced; if it ends in a vowel letter, a *t* is inserted — with a hyphen before and after — between the verb and the pronoun: *does she go* = *part-elle?* *does he sell* = *vend-il?* *do they speak* = *parlent-ils?* *does he speak* = *parle-t-il?* *did she speak* = *parla-t-elle?* Before 'je,' if the first person of the verb ends in silent *e*, this *e* is changed to *é*: *do I speak* = *parlé-je?*

(2) The phrase '*est-ce que*' may be prefixed to the affirmative form; the *e* of '*que*' is elided before a vowel: *it is he* = *c'est-lui*, *is it he*, *est-ce que c'est lui?* *I speak* = *je parle*, *do I speak* = *est-ce que je parle?* *they have spoken* = *ils ont parlé*, *have they spoken* = *est-ce qu'ils ont parlé?* If the sentence begins with an interrogative adjective or adverb, this construction is seldom used in written French.

a. The former method is the commoner, except in the first person singular, where the latter is generally employed. In the present indicative of 'avoir,' 'être,' and 'pouvoir,' however, the forms 'ai-je,' 'suis-je,' 'puis-je' are more usual than the constructions with '*est-ce que*.'

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 46, on p. 150.]

1. Who gave the pinks to his daughter? — 2. What was in my house? — 3. Which rings were given to me? — 4. Am I near to death? — 5. Have I a son and a daughter? — 6. Are the two daughters watering the pinks? — 7. Had you given the stools to

your mother?—8. Did a great lady come to my house?—
9. Should we have kept the ring?—10. Am I bringing the
mattress?

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Am I watering the pinks?—2. Were you keeping the
ring?—3. What (*que*) did he give to his son?—4. Will they be
near dying?—5. Would you give me my hen?—6. Have we
given them to his daughter?—7. Had I brought her some pinks?
—8. Will you have kept the rest?—9. Would his daughter have
given me some hens?—10. Have they any sons?

LVIII. INTERROGATION.

Lesson 153.

150. When the subject is a **possessive** or **demonstrative pronoun**, or a **noun not modified by an interrogative adjective**, the French interrogative form may be made in three ways:—

(1) By adding to the personal verb of the affirmative form a hyphen followed by 'il,' 'elle,' 'ils,' or 'elles,' according to the gender and number of the subject. See § 149,
(1). Ex.: *mine has come* = le mien est arrivé, *has mine come* = le mien est-il arrivé? *is that one the best* = celle-là est-elle la meilleure? *does Coquelin act this evening* = Coquelin joue-t-il ce soir? *was the house new* = la maison était-elle neuve? *when will these gentlemen go* = ces messieurs quand partiront-ils? *have those young ladies gone* = ces demoiselles sont-elles parties?

(2) By prefixing 'est-ce que' to the affirmative form: *that is true* = cela est vrai, *is that true* = est-ce que cela est

vrai? *will Coquelin act* = *est-ce que Coquelin jouera?*
had my sister gone = *est-ce que ma sœur était partie?*

(3) By putting the subject after the verb, instead of before it: *what is the minister doing* = *que fait le ministre?* *how is our aunt* = *comment va notre tante?* *where are our friends* = *où sont nos amis?* This construction is not used at all unless the sentence begins with an interrogative word or phrase. It is hardly ever employed with compound tenses; it never occurs with a negative verb, nor with a verb governing a direct object other than the interrogative word or phrase that begins the sentence.

a. When all or a part of a direct quotation precedes the verb of saying, that verb is generally put before its subject, as if the sentence were interrogative. Ex.: "*Stop!*" *I said to him.* "*Where are you going?*" = "*Arrêtez-vous,*" lui *dis-je.* "*Où allez vous?*" — "*I am going to my brother's,*" he *replied* = "*Je vais chez mon frère,*" *répondit-il.*

b. The subject is usually put after the verb if the sentence begins with 'à peine,' *hardly*, 'aussi,' *so*, or 'peut-être,' *perhaps*. Ex.: *hardly had he spoken* = *à peine eut-il parlé*; *perhaps it would have been better* = *peut-être eût-il mieux valu*. Several other words and phrases may cause the same inversion.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 46, on p. 150.]

1. What is the poor farmer giving me? — 2. Where were the two stools? — 3. Where will his son be? — 4. Is mine nearly dying? — 5. Had I brought you the silver ring? — 6. Was that one given you by a fine lady? — 7. Was your daughter watering the pinks? — 8. Will the farmers bring us the hens? — 9. "There they are!" he said, as he died. — 10. Perhaps she would have given the rest to her brother.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Hardly had I watered the pinks, when (*quand*) her brother came to my house.—2. What did your mother bring me as a dowry?—3. “Keep the ring,” she said to me.—4. Where are the pinks?—5. Will the fine lady bring you some rings?—6. Was the silver ring given to him by a farmer?—7. Had the ladies watered the pinks?—8. Has his son brought the stools?—9. Where was his son?—10. Has mine been at my house?

LIX. INTERROGATION.**Lesson 47.**

151. The simple tenses of the indicative of ‘avoir’ and ‘être’ are conjugated interrogatively below:—

A VOIR		ÊTRE	
ai-je	avons-nous	suis-je	sommes-nous
as-tu	avez-vous	es-tu	êtes-vous
a-t-il	ont-ils	est-il	sont-ils
avais-je	avions-nous	étais-je	étions-nous
avais-tu	aviez-vous	étais-tu	étiez-vous
avait-il	avaient-ils	était-il	étaient-ils
est-ce que j’eus	eûmes-nous	est-ce que je fus	fûmes-nous
eus-tu	eûtes-vous	fus-tu	fûtes-vous
eut-il	eurent-ils	fut-il	furent-ils
aurai-je	aurons-nous	serai-je	serons-nous
auras-tu	aurez-vous	seras-tu	serez-vous
aura-t-il	auront-ils	sera-t-il	seront-ils

a. ‘Est-ce que j’avais,’ ‘est-ce que j’aurai,’ ‘est-ce que j’étais,’ ‘est-ce que je serai’ are in common use also.

French Text.

47. Le laboureur mourut. La fille, qui s'appelait **Marie**, voulut s'asseoir sur un des escabeaux, mais son frère lui **dit**: «Garde tes œillets et ta bague, mais ne touche **point** à mes escabeaux.» Marie se tint debout tandis que **Jean** (c'était le nom du frère) était assis.

Exercise.

Inflect interrogatively the compound tenses of the indicative of 'avoir' and 'être.'

Supplementary Exercise.

Make the following sentences interrogative:—

1. Marie serait debout. — 2. Le laboureur et son frère seraient assis. — 3. J'aurais été laboureur. — 4. Vous auriez été debout. — 5. Nous serions assis. — 6. Le laboureur mourut. — 7. J'appelais Marie. — 8. La fille voulut s'asseoir. — 9. Je garde les œillets. — 10. Nous ne touchons pas aux escabeaux. — 11. Marie se tint debout. — 12. Jean était assis. — 13. Vous avez gardé la bague. — 14. Marie et son frère avaient touché aux escabeaux. — 15. C'était le nom du frère.

LX. INTERROGATION.**Lesson 48.**

152. The present indicative of 'grandir,' *to grow*, and 'descendre,' *to go down*, is conjugated interrogatively below:—

Grandir: *do I grow or am I growing?*

est-ce que je grandis	grandissons-nous
grandis-tu	grandissez-vous
grandit-il	grandissent-ils

Descendre: do I go down or am I going down?

est-ce que je descends	descendons-nous
descends-tu	descendez-vous
descend-il	descendent-ils

a. 'Grandis-je' and 'descends-je' are not used. The second and third conjugations have, in the present indicative, no form corresponding to the inverted first person singular of the first conjugation. See § 146, *a*.

b. Note that the *d* preceding 'il,' in 'descend-il,' is sounded *t*.

French Text.

48. À souper, Jean eut un œuf frais de sa poule; il en jeta les coquilles à sa sœur. Marie ne dit rien, mais elle se retira dans sa chambre en pleurant. Elle la trouva parfumée de l'odeur de ses œillets, et leur dit: «Beaux œillets, ne craignez pas que je vous laisse manquer d'eau; j'aurai soin de vous, puisque vous êtes mon unique bien.»

Exercise.

Conjugate interrogatively all the simple tenses of the indicative and conditional of 'grandir' and 'descendre.'

Supplementary Exercise.

Make the following sentences interrogative:—

1. Jean et Marie grandissaient.— 2. Marie descend dans sa chambre.— 3. Je choisis des œufs.— 4. Nous avons jeté les coquilles.— 5. Jean avait eu un œuf frais.— 6. Marie et sa sœur se retirèrent.— 7. Vous pleurerez.— 8. Tu auras trouvé les œillets.— 9. Vous ne craignez pas que je vous laisse.— 10. Tu me laisserais.— 11. J'aurais eu soin de vous.— 12. Vous êtes mon unique bien.— 13. Nous eûmes des œufs frais.— 14. Je descends dans ma chambre.— 15. Je manque d'eau.

LXI. NEGATION.

Lesson 49.

Lesson 154.

153. French expressions of negation used with verbs nearly always consist of two parts; the first is 'ne,' the second varies according to the sense. 'Ne' always *precedes* the verb it modifies. Before a vowel or semivowel sound the *e* of 'ne' is replaced by an apostrophe. Ex.: *I am not* = je ne suis pas; *I have not* = je n'ai pas.

The commonest of these phrases are given below:—

ne ... guère, <i>hardly</i>	ne ... plus, <i>no more</i>
ne ... jamais, <i>never</i>	ne ... point, <i>not at all</i>
ne ... pas, <i>not</i>	ne ... que, <i>only</i>
ne ... personne, <i>nobody</i>	ne ... rien, <i>nothing</i>

154. 'Guère,' 'jamais,' 'pas,' 'plus,' 'point,' 'rien,' when used with an infinitive, stand before it, with the 'ne': *I promise you not to look* = je vous promets de ne pas regarder.

When used with any other part of the verb, they follow it; in compound tenses they stand between the auxiliary and the past participle: *he never speaks* = il ne parle jamais, *they have never spoken* = ils n'ont jamais parlé.

155. 'Personne' always comes after the verb; in compound tenses it follows the past participle: *I promise you to look at nobody*: je vous promets de ne

regarder *personne*, *he sees nobody* = il **ne** voit *personne*;
they have seen nobody = ils n'ont vu *personne*.

156. 'Que' always comes after the verb and immediately precedes the word or phrase it modifies: *I promise you to look only once* = je vous promets de **ne** regarder *qu'une fois*, *he sees here only his sister* = il **ne** voit ici *que* sa sœur, *they have spoken this morning only to our friends* = ils n'ont parlé ce matin *qu'à* nos amis.

French Text.

49. Comme ils avaient besoin d'être arrosés, elle prit sa cruche et courut, au clair de la lune, jusqu'à la fontaine, qui était assez loin. S'étant assise au bord pour se reposer, elle vit venir une belle dame qu'une nombreuse suite accompagnait. On dressa une table couverte de vaisselle d'or, et on lui servit un excellent souper au bord de la fontaine.

Exercise.

1. They hardly needed to be watered. — 2. She did not take her pitcher. — 3. She ran, so as not to rest at all. — 4. The fountain was not far. — 5. She saw nobody. — 6. They set up only one table. — 7. They served her nothing. — 8. I promise you to come no more. — 9. She has seen nothing. — 10. You have never seen the moon.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. She never needs to rest. — 2. I promise you never to come to the fountain. — 3. I promise you to give nothing to the beautiful lady. — 4. I promise you to give her pitcher to nobody. — 5. I promise you to give the eggs only to the lady. — 6. I promise you not to water the pinks. — 7. He had never seen the fountain by moonlight. — 8. You have not watered the pinks. — 9. The lady had seen nobody. — 10. I have seen, at the brink of the fountain, only a table covered with gold ware.

LXII. NEGATION.

Lesson 155.

157. A fuller list of negative phrases is given below. Some of them express restriction rather than negation.

(1) Adverbs: —

<i>hardly, scarcely, barely</i>	ne . . . guère
<i>never, not ever</i>	ne . . . jamais
<i>nohow, not anyhow</i>	ne . . . nullement
<i>no longer, not any longer</i>	ne . . . plus
<i>no more, not any more</i>	
<i>not</i>	{ ne . . . pas
	{ ne . . . point *
<i>nowhere, not anywhere</i>	ne . . . nulle part
<i>only, but</i>	ne . . . que

(2) Pronouns: —

<i>hardly any, scarcely any</i>	n'en . . . guère
<i>nobody, not anybody</i>	ne . . . personne
<i>no one, not anyone</i>	
<i>no more, not any more</i>	n'en . . . plus
<i>none, not any</i>	{ n'en . . . pas
	{ n'en . . . point
<i>nothing, not anything</i>	ne . . . rien
<i>not one</i>	ne . . . aucun **

(3) Adjectives: —

<i>hardly any, scarcely any</i>	ne . . . guère de
<i>no, not any</i>	{ ne . . . pas de
	{ ne . . . point de

* The difference between 'pas' and 'point' is that 'point' forms a somewhat stronger negation than 'pas.' *At all, after not or nothing, is 'du tout.'*

** Also 'ne . . . pas un,' feminine 'ne . . . pas une.'

(3) Adjectives. — *Continued.*

<i>no more, not any more</i>	ne . . . plus de
<i>not a, not an</i>	{ ne . . . aucun *
	{ ne . . . nul
<i>only</i>	ne . . . que

a. Of the *pronouns* mentioned above, those containing 'en' can be used only as direct object of a verb: *he hasn't any more* = *il n'en a plus*. An English sentence whose subject is *hardly any, no more, or none* must be translated by a different construction in French: *hardly any were seen* = *people saw hardly any* = *on n'en vit guère*; *none came* = *there came none* = *il n'en arriva pas*. 'Personne,' 'rien,' and 'aucun' can stand in any relation to the verb: *I speak to no one* = *je ne parle à personne*; *he finds nothing* = *il ne trouve rien*; *not one has gone* = *aucun n'est parti*; *nobody has seen me* = *personne ne m'a vu*; *nothing is lost* = *rien n'est perdu*.

b. Of the *adjective phrases* mentioned above, those ending with the preposition 'de' can modify nothing but the direct object of a verb; 'ne . . . que' cannot limit the subject: *they had no friends* = *ils n'avaient pas d'amis*; *I have seen only two* = *je n'ai vu que deux*. An English sentence whose subject is qualified by *hardly any, no, no more or only* must generally be translated by a different construction in French: *hardly any pupils were there* = *there were hardly any pupils* = *il n'y avait guère d'élèves*; *no more noise is heard* = *people hear no more noise* = *on n'entend plus de bruit*; *only his dog accompanied him* = *he was accompanied only by his dog* = *il n'était accompagné que de son chien*. *No* meaning *not a* may, of course, be translated by 'ne . . . aucun' or 'ne . . . nul': *no poet has described it* = *aucun poète ne l'a décrit*. *Only* is often rendered by the adjective 'seul,' *alone*, or the adverb 'seulement,' *only Paul remained faithful to him* = *Paul seul lui resta fidèle*.

c. In the combinations 'guère de,' 'pas de,' 'point de,' 'plus de' the 'de' always stands just before the word or phrase modified,

* Also 'ne . . . pas un,' feminine 'ne . . . pas une.'

and is therefore often separated from the 'guère,' 'pas,' 'point,' or 'plus': *I haven't received any letter* = je n'ai pas reçu de lettre. 'Que,' likewise, immediately precedes the word or phrase limited: *she only laughs* = elle ne fait que rire; *I write this only for my friends* = je n'écris ceci que pour mes amis.

d. The adjectives 'aucun' and 'nul' stand immediately before the noun they modify. If that noun is feminine, they become 'aucune' and 'nulle.' Ex.: *no sacrifice seemed to him too great* = aucun sacrifice ne lui sembla trop grand; *I see no reason* = je ne vois aucune raison. When the *pronoun* 'aucun' stands for a feminine noun, it becomes 'aucune.'

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 49, on p. 159.]

1. They did not set up any tables. — 2. Hardly any were set up. — 3. Nobody accompanied her. — 4. I have seen no fountains. — 5. No more fountains were seen. — 6. She had seen only the moonlight. — 7. Only a supper was served. — 8. No table was set up. — 9. I haven't seen any at all. — 10. I didn't accompany her anywhere.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. I have seen hardly any retinue. — 2. The beautiful lady hasn't any. — 3. Nobody watered them. — 4. They did not serve us anyhow. — 5. You hadn't seen anybody. — 6. We should have seen nothing. — 7. She saw not a fountain. — 8. They will set up no more tables. — 9. They served us, by moonlight, only an excellent supper. — 10. She had never seated herself at the brink of the fountain.

LXIII. NEGATION.

Lesson 156.

158. When the verb accompanied by one of the negative phrases mentioned in § 157 is an infinitive, the two parts of the negation are sometimes separated, but oftener stand together before the verb: —

A. — If the second part is 'guère,' 'jamais,' 'pas,' 'plus,' 'point,' or 'rien,' both parts precede the verb: *promise me not to laugh* = promettez-moi de ne pas rire. Nothing can come between the negation and the verb, except a conjunctive object-pronoun or one of the adverbs 'en' and 'y': *I advise you not to do it any more* = je vous conseille de ne plus le faire; *he told me never to go there* = il m'a dit de ne jamais y aller.

(1) Before an infinitive, 'n'en guère,' 'n'en pas,' 'n'en plus,' 'n'en point' become 'ne guère en,' 'ne pas en,' 'ne plus en,' 'ne point en': *he is obliged not to buy any* = il est obligé de ne pas en acheter.

(2) For the position of 'de' see § 157, c: *I beg you not to make any promises* = je vous prie de ne point faire de promesses.

B. — If the second part is 'aucun,' 'nul,' 'nullement,' 'nulle part,' 'personne,' or 'que,' it follows the infinitive: *I hope I am not forgetting anybody* = j'espère n'oublier personne. The 'ne' precedes the verb; nothing can come between, except 'en,' 'y,' or a conjunctive object-pronoun.

(1) 'Aucun,' 'nul,' and 'que' immediately precede the word or phrase they modify (see § 157, *c, d*): *he intends to come here only once* = il a l'intention de ne venir ici qu'une fois.

a. When a negative expression modifies an infinitive dependent on the impersonal verb 'falloir' (see Chapter LXXII), the negation goes with 'falloir,' and not with the infinitive: *you mustn't speak to them* = il ne faut pas leur parler.

Exercise.

[NOTE.—See French Text 49, on p. 159. For the infinitives of 'prit,' 'courut,' 'vit,' 'accompagnait,' 'servit,' see the Vocabulary.]

1. I advise you never to water the pinks. — 2. He told me to serve nobody. — 3. I hope to see nothing. — 4. I beg you not to run anywhere. — 5. You mustn't water them. — 6. He told me not to water any. — 7. He is obliged not to run any more. — 8. I advise you to come to the fountain only once. — 9. She intends never to take her pitcher. — 10. He told me not to accompany any lady.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. I beg you hardly to water them. — 2. He intends not to see any more. — 3. I hope not to have any. — 4. You mustn't serve any supper. — 5. I advise you not to accompany anybody. — 6. I beg you never to set up any tables. — 7. He told me not to set up any at all. — 8. She is obliged not to see anything. — 9. I advise you not to serve us anyhow. — 10. He intends not to run.

LXIV. NEGATION.

Lesson 157.

159. When the verb accompanied by one of the negative phrases mentioned in § 157 is not an infinitive, the two parts of the negation are separated.—The first part stands just before the verb—in compound tenses, just before the auxiliary; nothing can come between ‘ne’ and the verb, except ‘en,’ ‘y,’ or a conjunctive object-pronoun: *we haven't any money* = nous n'avons pas d'argent; *you don't believe it* = vous ne le croyez pas; *he doesn't go there any more* = il n'y va plus.—The second part, in simple tenses, immediately follows the verb: *she doesn't find it anywhere* = elle ne le trouve nulle part. In compound tenses it is placed sometimes between the auxiliary and the past participle, sometimes just after the participle:—

A.—‘Guère,’ ‘jamais,’ ‘pas,’ ‘plus,’ ‘point,’ ‘rien’ are put between: *I have never seen him* = je ne l'ai jamais vu; *he hasn't come* = il n'est pas venu; *they have heard nothing* = ils n'ont rien entendu. Some of these words, however, especially ‘guère’ and ‘rien,’ occasionally follow the past participle.

B.—‘Aucun,’ ‘nul,’ ‘nullement,’ ‘nulle part,’ ‘personne,’ and ‘que’ come after: *I have accused no one* = je n'ai accusé personne; *we have eaten only bread* = nous n'avons mangé que du pain.

(1) For the position of 'aucun,' 'nul,' and 'que' see § 157, *c, d*: *he hasn't made a mistake to-day* = *il n'a fait aujourd'hui aucune faute*.

(2) For the position of 'de' see § 157, *c*: *you have lost no time* = *vous n'avez pas perdu de temps*.

(3) The words 'aucun,' 'jamais,' 'nul,' 'nulle part,' 'personne,' and 'rien' may be put at the beginning of a sentence; in this case the 'ne' stands, as usual, just before the verb: *never will he consent* = *jamais il ne consentira*; *nobody has come* = *personne n'est arrivé*; *nothing astonishes me* = *rien ne m'étonne*.

a. In some cases negation is expressed by 'ne' alone: (1) occasionally with the verbs 'cesser,' 'oser,' 'pouvoir,' 'savoir'; (2) always with the conditional of 'savoir' when it expresses the idea of *being able*; (3) generally with a subjunctive dependent on a negation; (4) in certain idiomatic constructions, which must be learned by observation. Ex.: *I dare not speak* = *je n'ose parler*; *I cannot tell you* = *je ne saurais vous le dire*; *there is no one that doesn't know it* = *il n'y a personne qui ne le sache*; *why doesn't he write in prose* = *que n'écrit-il en prose?*

b. Through a confusion of positive and negative constructions, a 'ne' that implies no negation is regularly used in certain kinds of dependent clauses, *unless the main verb is negative*: (1) with a subjunctive dependent on a verb of fearing or hindering; (2) with a finite verb dependent on a comparative; (3) in various idiomatic constructions, which must be learned by practice. Ex.: *I fear he will come* = *je crains qu'il ne vienne*; *he is better than people say* = *il est meilleur qu'on ne le dit*; *since I saw you* = *depuis que je ne vous ai vu*.

c. In colloquial French, 'ne' is sometimes omitted: *it isn't I* = *c'est pas moi*. In questions, 'ne' is occasionally omitted in poetry also.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 48, on p. 157.]

1. I have not had an egg from his hen. — 2. He had never had any. — 3. We have not thrown the shells at anybody. — 4. You would have found nothing. — 5. She has found in her room only the smell of her pinks. — 6. They hadn't thrown any shells. — 7. Never will he weep. — 8. We cannot take care of you. — 9. You fear that she will retire to her room. — 10. The pinks are more beautiful than people say.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. She has not found it anywhere. — 2. I had found hardly any. — 3. We have left nobody. — 4. We should have thrown nothing. — 5. He has had only an egg. — 6. You hadn't had any pinks. — 7. Nothing is found. — 8. There is no one that doesn't throw shells at his sister. — 9. Do you fear that they will lack water? — 10. They have never had any.

LXV. NEGATION.**Lesson 158.**

160. When a negation is used without any verb, the 'ne' is omitted. Ex.: "*Have you read it?*" "*Never*" = «L'avez-vous lu?» «Jamais»; "*Who is coming?*" "*Not I*" = «Qui viendra?» «Pas moi»; *no more sickness, no more poverty* = plus de maladie, plus de misère.

(1) When used without a verb, *hardly* is 'à peine' and *only* is 'rien que' or 'seulement'; 'pas' and 'plus' scarcely

ever stand entirely alone: *only a flower* = rien qu'une fleur; *no more* = *nothing more* = rien de plus; *no more* = *never more* = jamais plus; *none* = point.

(2) When the adverb *not* does not modify a verb, it is translated, in certain cases, by 'non': *not only* = non seulement; *I think not* = je crois que non; *whether he does it or not* = qu'il le fasse ou non; *not without glory* = non sans gloire. Sometimes 'non pas' is used instead of 'pas': *I'm speaking to him, and not to you* = c'est à lui que je parle, et non pas à vous.

a. *No* and *yes* are 'non' and 'oui.' In answering a negative statement or a negative question, 'si' is used instead of 'oui.'

b. *Nor* is 'ni.' *Neither . . . nor* is generally 'ni' . . . 'ni,' with 'ne' before the verb, if there is one: *neither this nor that* = ni ceci ni cela; *he has neither father nor mother* = il n'a ni père ni mère. But before finite verbs *neither . . . nor* is to be translated by 'ne' . . . 'ni ne': *they neither sing nor dance* = ils ne chantent ni ne dansent.

c. *Neither* or *not either* without any correlative *nor* is 'ni l'un ni l'autre,' with 'ne' before the verb, if there is one: *I haven't seen either* = je n'ai vu ni l'un ni l'autre. *Either* without *or* is 'l'un ou l'autre.' 'L'un' changes its form according to the number and gender of the noun it modifies or represents: singular, *masc.* l'un, *fem.* l'une; plural, *masc.* les uns, *fem.* les unes. 'L'autre' has a plural 'les autres.'

161. The indicative of 'grandir,' *to grow*, is conjugated negatively below: —

PRES. : *I hardly grow* or *I'm scarcely growing*

je ne grandis guère	nous ne grandissons guère
tu ne grandis guère	vous ne grandissez guère
elle ne grandit guère	elles ne grandissent guère

PRES. PERP.: *I've never grown or I never grew*

je n'ai jamais grandi	nous n'avons jamais grandi
tu n'as jamais grandi	vous n'avez jamais grandi
elle n'a jamais grandi	elles n'ont jamais grandi

DESCR. PAST: *I didn't ever grow or I wasn't ever growing*

je ne grandissais jamais	nous ne grandissions jamais
tu ne grandissais jamais	vous ne grandissiez jamais
elle ne grandissait jamais	elles ne grandissaient jamais

PAST PERF.: *I hadn't grown or I hadn't been growing*

je n'avais pas grandi	nous n'avions pas grandi
tu n'avais pas grandi	vous n'aviez pas grandi
elle n'avait pas grandi	elles n'avaient pas grandi

NAR. PAST: *I didn't grow*

je ne grandis pas	nous ne grandîmes pas
tu ne grandis pas	vous ne grandîtes pas
elle ne grandit pas	elles ne grandirent pas

FUTURE: *I shall not grow any more*

je ne grandirai plus	nous ne grandirons plus
tu ne grandiras plus	vous ne grandirez plus
elle ne grandira plus	elles ne grandiront plus

FUT. PERF.: *I shall not have grown at all*

je n'aurai point grandi	nous n'aurons point grandi
tu n'auras point grandi	vous n'aurez point grandi
elle n'aura point grandi	elles n'auront point grandi

Exercise.

Conjugate negatively the simple and the perfect conditional and all the subjunctive tenses of 'grandir.'

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 48, on p. 157.]

1. Have you had an egg? Not one! — 2. Will you take care of us? Never! — 3. No more pinks! — 4. Only a hen! — 5. Hardly a smell! — 6. Whether I leave her or not, she will never retire. — 7. She said not. — 8. We found neither hen nor eggs. — 9. John and Mary neither sing nor weep. — 10. I haven't found either of them.

LXVI. NEGATION.**Lesson 50.**

162. Read § 160 and § 160, *a*, and study the negative conjugation of 'grandir' in § 161.

French Text.

50. Marie, dans son coin, n'osait¹ remuer. La reine dit à son écuyer: «Faites approcher cette bergère.» Marie s'avança et salua avec modestie. «Que faites-vous ici?» dit la reine. «Ne craignez-vous pas les voleurs?» «Hélas!» dit Marie, «que gagneraient-ils avec une pauvre bergère comme moi?» «Vous n'êtes donc pas riche?» reprit la reine. «Je suis si pauvre,» dit Marie, «que je n'ai qu'un pot d'œillets et une bague d'argent.»

¹ See § 159, *a*, (1).

Exercise.

1. Mary had hardly grown. — 2. That shepherdess will never grow. — 3. What are you doing here? Nothing. — 4. Aren't you afraid of thieves? No. — 5. Are you poor? Yes. — 6. You

aren't rich, then? Yes. — 7. Have you any silver rings? Not one! — 8. Will he stir? Never! — 9. Who advanced? Nobody. — 10. She hasn't any pinks.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. I have hardly stirred. — 2. Nobody has bowed. — 3. You have gained nothing. — 4. They will have no more pinks. — 5. I had never had any rings. — 6. She has nothing but some pinks. — 7. Is Mary so poor? Yes. — 8. What would the thieves gain? Nothing. — 9. Will the shepherdesses not grow any more? Never. — 10. Has Mary never grown? Yes!

LXVII. NEGATIVE QUESTIONS.

Lesson 51.

163. Negative questions combine the negative with the interrogative constructions. Four tenses of the indicative of 'vendre,' *to sell*, are conjugated both negatively and interrogatively below:—

PRES.: *do I sell only bread?*

est-ce que je ne vends que	ne vendons-nous que du
du pain	pain
ne vends-tu que du pain	ne vendez-vous que du pain
ne vend-il que du pain	ne vendent-ils que du pain

PRES. PERF.: *haven't I sold anything or didn't I sell anything?*

n'ai-je rien vendu	n'avons-nous rien vendu
n'as-tu rien vendu	n'avez-vous rien vendu
n'a-t-il rien vendu	n'ont-ils rien vendu

DESCR. PAST: *wasn't I selling any more?*

est-ce que je n'en vendais n'en vendions-nous plus
plus

n'en vendais-tu plus

n'en vendiez-vous plus

n'en vendait-il plus

n'en vendaient-ils plus

PAST PERF.: *hadn't I sold any?*

n'en avais-je pas vendu

n'en avions-nous pas vendu

n'en avais-tu pas vendu

n'en aviez-vous pas vendu

n'en avait-il pas vendu

n'en avaient-ils pas vendu

a. 'En,' as we have seen, means *of it, of them, some and any*. It occupies, with respect to the verb, the same position as the conjunctive personal pronouns.

French Text.

51. «Mais,» continua la reine, «avez-vous bien soupé?» «Non, madame,» dit Marie; «mon frère a tout mangé.» La reine la fit mettre à table, et lui offrit ce qu'il y avait de meilleur. «Que veniez-vous faire si tard à la fontaine?» lui demanda la reine. «Madame,» dit-elle, «je venais chercher de l'eau pour arroser mes œillets.» Elle voulut prendre sa cruche pour la montrer, mais la cruche était d'or et remplie d'une eau parfumée. «Je vous la donne,» lui dit la reine; «allez arroser vos fleurs, et souvenez-vous que la Reine des Bois est votre amie.»

Exercise.

Make the following sentences negative-interrogative, by use of 'ne' . . . 'pas':—

1. La reine continua.— 2. J'ai bien soupé.— 3. Mon frère a tout mangé.— 4. La reine la fit mettre à table.— 5. Nous lui

offrîmes ce qu'il y avait de meilleur. — 6. Vous veniez à la fontaine. — 7. Je venais chercher de l'eau. — 8. Les cruches étaient remplies d'eau. — 9. Je vous la donne. — 10. La Reine des Bois est votre amie.

Supplementary Exercises.

1. Were we coming no more to get water? — 2. Do I give you only a golden pitcher? — 3. Have they never watered my pinks? — 4. Had you eaten nothing? — 5. Hasn't Mary looked for anybody? — 6. Didn't Mary and the queen show you a golden pitcher? — 7. Haven't they shown any to my brother? — 8. Doesn't my brother water your flowers? — 9. Don't I water any more of them? — 10. Am I not your friend?

LXVIII. REFLEXIVE VERBS.

Lesson 52.

Lesson 208.

164. A verb is reflexive when it represents its subject as acting, either directly or indirectly, upon itself; *I see myself* = je me vois. A verb is reciprocal when it represents the different parts of its subject as acting on each other: *we see one another* = nous nous voyons.

The compound tenses of all reflexive and reciprocal verbs are formed, in French, with the auxiliary 'être': *you have seen each other* = vous vous êtes vus. For the agreement of the past participle see §§ 84, 85.

In French no distinction is made between reflexive and reciprocal verbs: 'elles se voient' may mean either *they see themselves* or *they see each other*; see, however, § 166, b.

a. Many verbs are reflexive in French but not in English: *to go away* = *s'en aller*, *to sit down* = *s'asseoir*, *to lie down* = *se coucher*, *to get up* = *se lever*, *to begin* = *se mettre*, *to be silent* = *se taire*.

165. The reflexive and reciprocal pronouns, arranged in the order of persons, are:—

SINGULAR.

me, myself = **me**

you, thee, yourself, thyself = **te**; *in the positive imp.*, ***toi**;

him, her, it, himself, herself, itself, one's self = **se**.

PLURAL.

us, ourselves, each other, one another = **nous**

you, yourself, yourselves, each other, one another = **vous**

them, themselves, each other, one another = **se**.

These words may be either **direct** or **indirect** objects.

166. They stand immediately before the verb — in compound tenses, before the auxiliary; nothing can be put between the reflexive pronoun and the verb, except another conjunctive object-pronoun or one of the adverbs 'en' and 'y': *she places herself there* = *elle s'y met*; *I have gone away* = *je m'en suis allé*.

But in the *positive imperative* the pronoun stands after the verb, and is joined to it by a hyphen: *get up* = *lève-toi*; while *don't get up* = *ne te lève pas*.

a. The form of reflexive verbs given in the dictionary is always the infinitive accompanied by 'se,' the reflexive pronoun of the third person; but when the verb is used in a sentence, the object-pronoun must agree in person and number with the subject.

* The "positive imperative" is the imperative used without any negation.

b. Reciprocal verbs are often reinforced by the use of 'l'un l'autre': *they love one another* = ils s'aiment l'un l'autre (*if there are only two*) or ils s'aiment les uns les autres (*if there are more than two*). For the forms of 'l'un' and 'l'autre' see § 160, *c.* Sometimes this phrase is necessary to distinguish the reciprocal from the reflexive construction.

c. Notice the reflexive constructions 'cela se fait,' *that is done*, 'cela se peut,' *that is possible*, 'cela se dit,' *that is said*.

d. The *e* of 'me,' 'te,' 'se' is replaced by an apostrophe before a word beginning with a vowel or semivowel sound.

French Text.

52. La bergère se jeta à ses pieds. «Madame,» dit-elle, «j'ose vous prier d'attendre un moment; je vais vous chercher la moitié de mon bien, c'est mon pot d'œillets.» «Allez,» dit la reine en l'embrassant; «je vous attendrai.» Mais pendant l'absence de Marie, Jean avait pris les œillets et mis à la place un grand chou. Marie, bien affligée, retourna vers la reine, et s'agenouillant: «Madame,» dit-elle, «Jean a volé mes œillets; il ne me reste que ma bague; je vous supplie de la recevoir.» La reine mit la bague à son doigt, et partit dans son char de corail, tiré par six chevaux blancs.

Exercise.

1. We throw ourselves at her feet. — 2. You will kneel at the feet of the queen. — 3. "John has stolen them," she said to herself. — 4. I have put myself in the place of the shepherdess. — 5. The queen placed herself in her coral chariot. — 6. John and Mary were looking for each other. — 7. The shepherdess and the queen kiss each other. — 8. You will wait for one another. — 9. Kneel (*tu*) at her feet. — 10. Do not throw (*vous*) yourself at John's feet.

Supplementary Exercise.

Conjugate all the simple tenses of the indicative, the conditional, and the imperative of 's'agenouiller.'

LXIX. REFLEXIVE VERBS.**Lesson 53.****Lesson 209.**

167. Below will be found the imperative and several parts of the indicative of the reflexive verbs 'se mettre à,' *to begin to*, 's'en aller,' *to go away*, and 's'asseoir,' *to sit down*. The first verb will be conjugated affirmatively, the second interrogatively (except in the imperative), the third negatively. First year pupils need not commit these paradigms to memory, but should study them carefully. 'Mettre,' 'aller,' 'asseoir' are *irregular* verbs.

(1) *Beginning to read* = se mettant à lire.

IND. PRES.: *I am beginning to read or I begin to read*

je me mets à lire	nous nous mettons à lire
tu te mets à lire	vous vous mettez à lire
il se met à lire	ils se mettent à lire

IND. PRES. PERF.: *I've begun to read or I began to read*

je me suis mis à lire	nous nous sommes mis à lire
tu t'es mis à lire	vous vous êtes mis à lire
il s'est mis à lire	ils se sont mis à lire

IMPERATIVE: *begin to read, let's begin to read, begin to read*

mets-toi à lire	mettons-nous à lire
	mettez-vous à lire

(2) *Going away* = *s'en allant*.IND. FUTURE: *shall I go away or shall I be going away?*

est-ce que je m'en irai	nous en irons-nous
t'en iras-tu	vous en irez-vous
s'en ira-t-elle	s'en iront-elles

IND. FUT. PERF.: *shall I have gone away?*

m'en serai-je allé	nous en serons-nous allés
t'en seras-tu allé	vous en serez-vous allés
s'en sera-t-elle allée	s'en seront-elles allées

IMPERATIVE: *go away, let's go away, go away*

va-t'en	allons-nous-en
	allez-vous-en

(3) *Not sitting down* = *ne s'asseyant pas*.IND. DESCR. PAST: *I didn't sit down or I wasn't sitting down*

je ne m'asseyais pas	nous ne nous asseyions pas
tu ne t'asseyais pas	vous ne vous asseyiez pas
il ne s'asseyait pas	ils ne s'asseyaient pas

IND. PAST PERF.: *I hadn't sat down*

je ne m'étais pas assis	nous ne nous étions pas assis
tu ne t'étais pas assis	vous ne vous étiez pas assis
il ne s'était pas assis	ils ne s'étaient pas assis

IMPERATIVE: *don't sit down, let's not sit down, don't sit down*

ne t'assieds pas	ne nous asseyons pas
	ne vous asseyez pas

a. 'Mets' and 'assieds' are pronounced *mè* and *a-sié*; but in the phrase 'mets à lire' the *s* is sounded as *z*.

French Text.

53. Marie retourna chez Jean, et en entrant dans sa chambre elle jeta le chou par la fenêtre. Mais elle entendit

une voix lui crier: «Ah! je suis mort!» Les choux ne parlent pas, d'ordinaire. Marie, inquiète, descendit dès qu'il fit jour. La première chose qu'elle vit, ce fut le chou, à qui elle donna un coup de pied. Mais le chou lui dit: «Reportez-moi près de mes camarades; vos œillets sont dans la paillasse de Jean.» Marie ne savait comment les reprendre. Elle replanta le chou, et prenant la poule de son frère, elle lui dit: «Méchant bête, tu vas me payer tous les chagrins que Jean me donne.»

Exercise.

1. Inflect: the present indicative of 'se retourner,' affirmatively; the present perfect indicative of 'se payer,' negatively; the descriptive past of 'se jeter,' interrogatively.
2. Give the positive and negative imperative forms of 'se retourner.'

Supplementary Exercise.

1. We have not thrown ourselves out of the window. — 2. Were the cabbages talking to one another? — 3. I hear myself cry out. — 4. Mary and John had given each other kicks. — 5. Throw yourself out of the window. — 6. Give (*tu*) yourself to the wicked creature. — 7. Let's throw ourselves on the mattress. — 8. Don't throw yourself upon John. — 9. Don't give (*tu*) yourself to my companions. — 10. Let's not throw ourselves upon the hen.

LXX. REFLEXIVE VERBS.**Lesson 54.**

168. Construct the whole conjugation of 'se coucher,' *to go to bed*. 'Coucher' is a regular verb.

French Text.

54. «Ah!» dit la poule, «laissez-moi vivre, et je vous apprendrai des choses surprenantes. Le laboureur qui vous a élevée n'est point votre père. Vous êtes princesse. La reine, votre mère, avait eu six filles avant vous; son beau-père lui dit qu'il la tuerait si elle en avait encore une. Cette princesse écrivit ses craintes à sa sœur, qui était fée et qui venait d'avoir un fils. La fée mit son fils dans une corbeille et chargea les Zéphyrus de le mettre à la place de la fille de la reine. Mais celle-ci, n'ayant pas de nouvelles de sa sœur, se sauva et arriva dans cette maisonnette. J'étais laboureuse,» dit la poule, «et bonne nourrice. Elle me chargea de vous et mourut sans me donner d'ordres à votre sujet.»

Exercise.

1. "Ah!" said she to herself. — 2. We should have killed ourselves. — 3. Her son placed himself in a basket. — 4. She will not put herself in the place of the queen's daughter. — 5. The hens had not run away. — 6. Have your father and your mother killed themselves? — 7. Am I not running away? — 8. You have not given one another any orders. — 9. Don't kill yourself: run away! — 10. The princesses will have killed themselves.

Supplementary Exercise.

Conjugate, affirmatively and negatively, the present indicative, the past perfect indicative, and the imperative of 'se sauver.'

LXXI. IMPERSONAL VERBS.**Lesson 55.****Lesson 210.**

169. Impersonal verbs are used only in the third person singular, and their subject represents nothing definite. In English the subject of such a verb is *it*; in French the subject is 'il,' except with the verb 'être,' where it is usually 'ce.' Ex.: *it snows* = *il neige*, *it thunders* = *il tonne*; *it's the twentieth of February* = *c'est le vingt février*.

170. The indicative of the impersonal verb 'il y a,' *there is*, will be found below:—

(1) Affirmative:—PRES.: *there is, there are***il y a**PRES. PERF.: *there has been, there have been, there was, there were***il y a eu**DESCR. PAST: *there was, there were, there used to be***il y avait**PAST PERF.: *there had been***il y avait eu**NAR. PAST: *there was, there were***il y eut**

FUTURE: *there will be*

il y aura

FUT. PERF.: *there will have been*

il y aura eu

(2) **Interrogative:—**

PRES.: *is there, are there?*

y a-t-il

PRES. PERF.: *has there been, have there been, was there, were there?*

y a-t-il eu

DESCR. PAST: *was there, were there, did there use to be?*

y avait-il

PAST PERF.: *had there been?*

y avait-il eu

NAR. PAST: *was there, were there?*

y eut-il

FUTURE: *will there be?*

y aura-t-il

FUT. PERF.: *will there have been?*

y aura-t-il eu

(3) **Negative:—**

PRES.: *there isn't, there aren't*

il n'y a pas

PRES. PERF.: *there hasn't been, there haven't been, etc*

il n'y a pas eu

DESCR. PAST: *there wasn't, there weren't*

il n'y avait pas

PAST PERF.: *there hadn't been*

il n'y avait pas eu

NAR. PAST: *there wasn't, there weren't*

il n'y eut pas

FUTURE: *there will not be*

il n'y aura pas

FUT. PERF.: *there will not have been*

il n'y aura pas eu

a. 'Il y a' means literally *it has there*. In the English expressions *there is, there are*, etc., *there* is merely an adverb, and the subject of the verb is some following word; in the French phrases 'il y a,' etc., on the other hand, the subject is always 'il,' *it*, and so the verb is always singular. Ex.: *there are seven days* = *il y a sept jours*.

b. When the pronoun 'en' is used with one of these phrases, it stands between the 'y' and the verb: *there is none* = *il n'y en a pas*.

French Text.

55. «Comme j'ai toujours été bavarde,» continua la poule, «je contai cette aventure à une dame qui vint un jour ici. Alors elle me toucha d'une baguette; je devins poule, et je ne pus plus parler. Je fus bien chagrinée, et mon mari crut que j'étais noyée. La même dame vint une seconde fois ici; elle lui ordonna de vous nommer Marie et lui fit présent d'une bague d'argent et d'un pot d'œillets.»

Exercise.

1. There is some silver here. — 2. There is no silver. —
3. There were some hens here. — 4. Were there any hens? —
5. There were none. — 6. There have been some ladies here.

— 7. No, there have been none. — 8. Had there not been some silver here? — 9. Yes, there had been some. — 10. There would have been some pinks.

Supplementary Exercise.

Give the negative-interrogative forms of all the tenses of the indicative and conditional of 'il y a.'

LXXII. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Lesson 56.

Lesson 211.

171. The conjugation of the simple tenses of the irregular impersonal verb 'falloir' will be found below:—

To be necessary = falloir, been necessary = fallu

IND. PRES.: *it is necessary*

il faut

DESCR. PAST: *it was necessary or it used to be necessary*

il fallait

NAR. PAST: *it became necessary*

il fallut

FUTURE: *it will be necessary*

il faudra

CONDITIONAL: *it would be necessary*

il faudrait

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

il faille

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

il fallût

a. The use of this verb will be treated in Chapters CXI, CXII.

172. Construct the interrogative, negative, and negative-interrogative conjugation of 'falloir' in the simple tenses of the indicative and conditional.

a. See § 158, a. 'Il faut,' 'il ne faut pas,' followed by an infinitive, are generally to be translated by *we* or *you must*, *we* or *you must not*; 'il fallait' and 'il fallut,' 'il faudra,' 'il faudrait,' by *(one) had to*, *(one) will have to*, *(one) would have to*.

French Text.

56. «Comme elle était là,» poursuivit la poule, «arrivèrent vingt-cinq gardes du roi qui vous cherchaient pour vous tuer: elle dit quelques mots, et ils devinrent des choux verts, au nombre desquels est celui que vous avez jeté par la fenêtre. Ils ne parlaient pas plus que moi; j'ignore comment la voix nous est revenue.»

Exercise.

1. We must look for him. — 2. We mustn't kill her. — 3. We had to throw them out of the window. — 4. We had had to speak. — 5. It has been necessary to come back. — 6. Shall we have to look for the king? — 7. You mustn't throw yourself out of the window. — 8. You must look for some green cabbages. — 9. It had not been necessary to return. — 10. Should we have had to kill the guards?

Supplementary Exercise.

Conjugate affirmatively, negatively, and interrogatively the compound tenses of the indicative and conditional of 'falloir.'

LXXIII. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Lesson 57.

Lesson 212.

173. Review Chapter XLIII.

French Text.

57. «Vous me faites pitié, pauvre nourrice,» dit la princesse en partant; «mais j'espère que tout s'arrangera, et je vais chercher mes œillets.» Jean était au bois, et Marie alla droit à la paillasse. Mais elle vit une quantité de rats, armés en guerre et rangés par bataillons. Marie n'osait approcher, car les rats la mordaient et la mettaient en sang. «Mon cher œillet,» s'écria-t-elle, «resterez-vous en si mauvaise société?»

Exercise.

Construct: the future and the conditional of 'approcher'; the present indicative plural, the imperative plural, the descriptive past, and the present subjunctive of 'partant'; the present perfect indicative of 'rangé'; the present indicative singular and the imperative singular of 'j'espère'; the narrative past and the subjunctive past of 'je vis.'

Supplementary Exercise.

Inflect the present indicative of 'mordre' and 's'écrier,' the present subjunctive of 'mettre' and 's'arranger.'

LXXIV. IRREGULAR VERBS.**Lesson 58.**

174. The principal parts of 'rire,' *to laugh*, are:—

rire, riant, ri; ris, ris.

Construct the whole conjugation of the verb.

French Text.

58. Tout à coup elle s'avisa d'aller chercher l'eau parfumée qui était dans sa cruche. Elle en jeta quelques gouttes sur les rats, qui se sauvèrent dans leurs trous. La princesse prit ses œillets, qui allaient mourir, tant ils étaient secs, et versa dessus toute l'eau qui était dans la cruche d'or. Jean arriva. Quand il vit que Marie avait pris ses œillets, il la traîna à la porte et la jeta dehors. La princesse s'évanouit.

Exercise.

Inflect the narrative past and the subjunctive past of 'prit' and 's'évanouit.'

Supplementary Exercise.

1. John and Mary were not laughing.— 2. We saw them laugh.— 3. It occurred to the rats to run away.— 4. I was going to laugh.— 5. The princess had fainted.— 6. You would never have laughed.— 7. Had we run away?— 8. Am I not fainting?— 9. The rats took some pinks, which were in a pitcher.— 10. I haven't taken any pinks.— 11. We got some water, and threw a few drops of it on the pinks.— 12. There isn't any water in the pitcher.— 13. You mustn't throw them out of doors.— 14. Don't faint: run away!— 15. We shall laugh no more.

LXXV. IRREGULAR VERBS.**Lesson 59.****Lesson 213.**

175. The principal parts of 'prendre,' *to take*, are:—
 prendre, prenant, pris; prends, pris.

Construct the whole conjugation of the verb.

French Text.

59. La fraîcheur de la terre la ranima. Elle ouvrit les yeux et vit près d'elle la Reine des Bois. «Vous avez un mauvais frère,» dit-elle à Marie; «voulez-vous que je vous venge?» «Non, madame,» dit Marie. «Mais,» ajouta la reine, «j'ai idée que ce gros laboureur n'est pas votre frère; qu'en pensez-vous?» «Toutes les apparences me persuadent qu'il l'est,» dit modestement la bergère, «et je dois le croire.» «Que je vous aime de cette humeur!» s'écria la reine. «Oui, vous êtes princesse, et c'est malgré moi que vous avez éprouvé tant de disgrâces.»

Exercise.

1. We have not taken any. — 2. Were you taking them? —
3. You did not see any farmers. — 4. There are some woods near us. — 5. I have suffered no misfortunes.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. You will have to open your eyes. — 2. We mustn't take any. —
3. There were some shepherdesses near you. — 4. There are no farmers in the woods. — 5. Have you any brothers? — 6. I have never had any brothers. — 7. Are there any princesses near the woods? — 8. I have some bad brothers. — 9. Do I not love the queen? — 10. The farmer exclaimed "Yes!"

LXXVI. IRREGULAR VERBS.**Lesson 60.****Lesson 214.**

176. The principal parts of 'devoir,' *to owe*, are: —
devoĩt, devant, dû; dois, dus.

The future is: *devrai*. The present subjunctive is:
doive.

Construct the whole conjugation of the verb.

a. The uses of this verb will be discussed in Chapters CVII, CIX. When followed by an infinitive, its present tense is generally to be translated by *must*, its past tenses by *had to*, its future by *shall* or *will have to*, its conditional by *ought to*.

French Text.

60. Alors arriva un jeune homme beau comme le jour; il avait une couronne d'œillets et s'agenouilla devant la reine. «Ah! mon fils,» dit-elle, «mon cher Œillet, quelle joie de vous voir! La belle Marie vient de finir votre enchantement.»

Exercise.

1. You must kneel before the queen. — 2. She had to end your enchantment. — 3. We ought to kneel before the young man. — 4. I shall have to see the beautiful queen. — 5. He owes me nothing.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Kneel before the queen. — 2. He must have a crown of pinks. — 3. The young sons had to kneel. — 4. Do not kneel before my son. — 5. You ought to finish the crown. — 6. I have just knelt. — 7. There are some pinks before you. — 8. Mary had some beautiful crowns. — 9. Kneel (*tu*) before the crown. — 10. They have never knelt.

LXXVII. IRREGULAR VERBS.**Lesson 61.**

177. The principal parts of 'recevoir,' *to receive*, are:—

recevoir, recevant, reçu; reçois, reçus.

The future is: **recevrai**. The present subjunctive is: **reçoive**. Construct the whole conjugation of the verb.

a. All other verbs ending in *-cevoir* are conjugated like 'recevoir.'

French Text.

61. «Princesse,» ajouta-t-elle, «vous saurez que les Zéphyrus que j'avais chargés de mettre mon fils à votre place, l'ayant posé un instant dans un parterre de fleurs, une fée, avec qui je suis brouillée, le changea en œillet.»

Exercise.

1. He receives nobody. — 2. I had received nothing. — 3. We shall not receive any more flowers. — 4. They would have received some pinks. — 5. Receive my son.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Are there any flowers in the garden? — 2. There are no pinks. — 3. She ought to put herself in your place. — 4. He received some flowers. — 5. Will the princess receive nothing? — 6. They had to put down the pinks in a garden. — 7. You must receive the fairy. — 8. Shall I change her into a zephyr? — 9. Has my son received nothing? — 10. I have commanded her to receive them.

LXXVIII. IRREGULAR VERBS.**Lesson 62.**

178. The principal parts of '*écrire*,' *to write*, are:—

écrire, écrivant, écrit; écris, écrivis.

Construct the whole conjugation of the verb.

French Text.

62. «Je ne pus empêcher ce malheur,» continua-t-elle, «et je n'y trouvai point d'autre remède que d'apporter le prince Œillet chez votre nourrice, prévoyant que lorsque vous auriez arrosé ses fleurs de l'eau parfumée, il parlerait et vous aimerait. Il fallait que je reçusse de votre main la bague d'argent pour savoir que la fin de l'enchantement approchait. Maintenant, chère Marie, si mon fils vous épouse, avec cette bague votre bonheur sera fait.»

Exercise.

1. Mary wrote to your nurse. — 2. Do not take the silver ring. — 3. We receive the flowers from your hand. — 4. They ought not to speak. — 5. Will you laugh when the prince writes to you?

Supplementary Exercise.

1. I have prevented some misfortunes. — 2. You will find no remedies. — 3. Will Marie have no happiness? — 4. She would have watered the flowers, if she had had any water. — 5. Write to the prince, if you love him. — 6. Mary and the prince loved each other. — 7. There was no water. — 8. If I wrote to Mary, she would receive your ring. — 9. She will never marry him — 10. We haven't written to anybody.

LXXIX. IRREGULAR VERBS.**Lesson 63.**

179. The principal parts of 'boire,' *to drink*, are:—

boire, buvant, bu; bois, bus

The present subjunctive is: **boive**. Construct the whole conjugation of the verb.

French Text.

63. «Mais,» dit la princesse, en rougissant, «voudra-t-il de moi?» «Ah! princesse,» s'écria-t-il, «je serai trop heureux si vous m'acceptez pour époux.» La reine toucha Marie de sa baguette, et ses habits devinrent si magnifiques qu'on n'en pouvait soutenir l'éclat. Jean, qui arriva, crut rêver en la voyant. Mais Marie l'appela avec bonté, et pria la reine d'avoir pitié de lui.

Exercise.

1. I haven't drunk anything. — 2. Were John and Mary drinking? — 3. We exclaimed, "Drink, princess!" — 4. John never drinks. — 5. Am I dreaming?

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Nobody is drinking. — 2. The queen wrote to her: "You ought to accept him." — 3. Didn't John receive some magnificent clothes? — 4. The queen did not take her wand. — 5. Have pity on John: he has no clothes. — 6. "Blush no more!" exclaimed the princesses. — 7. "Do not laugh!" I exclaimed, "we ought not to laugh." — 8. If they had no more clothes, we should have pity on them. — 9. Am I not too happy? — 10. Mary would have been magnificent, if the queen had touched her with her wand.

LXXX. IRREGULAR VERBS.**Lesson 64.****Lesson 215.**

180 Find (in Chapter CV) and learn the principal parts of: *couvrir*, to cover; *offrir*, to offer; *ouvrir*, to open; *souffrir*, to suffer.

Read carefully § 206 and § 206, *a*, *b*.

Construct the whole conjugation of 'ouvrir.'

French Text.

64. La reine embrassa la princesse en louant sa générosité, et pour la contenter, enrichit l'ingrat Jean. Sa chaumière devint un palais superbe, mais les escabeaux et la paille ne changèrent pas, pour lui rappeler son premier état.

Exercise.

1. Cover yourself. — 2. The queen offered her a splendid palace. — 3. John was opening his hut. — 4. I have suffered nothing. — 5. Will he not cover his hut?

Supplementary Exercise.

1. We do not suffer any more. — 2. Do not offer him any mattresses. — 3. John wouldn't have drunk anything. — 4. I have received some stools. — 5. We hadn't taken any mattresses. — 6. I am writing to the queen, to praise her generosity. — 7. John had never laughed. — 8. The queen and the princess have kissed each other. — 9. There is nothing for you. — 10. I had to remind him of his former condition.

LXXXI. IRREGULAR VERBS.**Lesson 65.****Lesson 216.**

181. Find and learn the principal parts of: *battre*, *to beat*; *dormir*, *to sleep*; *mentir*, *to tell a lie*; *partir*, *to go away*; *sentir*, *to feel*; *servir*, *to serve*; *sortir*, *to go out*; *suivre*, *to follow*; *vaincre*, *to conquer*; *vêtir*, *to clothe*.

Construct the whole conjugation of 'sentir.'

French Text.

65. Les choux devinrent des hommes et la poule une femme et la Reine des Bois, ravie du mariage de son fils avec Marie, leur fit des noces somptueuses qui durèrent plusieurs années; mais leur bonheur dura toute leur vie.

Exercise.

1. Her son is beating the men, but they do not go away.—
2. Let's sleep: we have conquered the men who were serving the queen.—
3. Go out, I shall follow you no more.—
4. She feels nothing: she is sleeping.—
5. He is lying: I am not clothing myself for the wedding.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. The men who conquer us will never be beaten.—
2. If you feel nothing, you do not suffer.—
3. I serve only the queen.—
4. We offered them some hens.—
5. Did the women follow Mary?—
6. He doesn't go away any more, he never goes out, he sleeps.—
7. Weren't the men lying?—
8. The men ought not to beat the women.—
9. You don't receive any more hens.—
10. There are no cabbages in the woods.

LXXXII. IRREGULAR VERBS.**Lesson 66.****Lesson 217.**

182. Learn the principal parts of: *courir, to run; cueillir, to pluck; envoyer, to send; mettre, to put; pleuvoir, (impersonal) to rain; vivre, to live.*

Construct the whole conjugation of *mettre*.

French Text.

[NOTE.—Texts 66-85 are taken, with a few changes, from *Sur l'eau*, by Guy de Maupassant.]

66. Seul au monde, le Français a de l'esprit et seul il le goûte et le comprend. Il a l'esprit qui passe et l'esprit qui reste, l'esprit des rues et l'esprit des livres. Ce qui demeure, c'est l'esprit, dans le sens large du mot, ce grand souffle ironique ou gai répandu sur notre peuple depuis qu'il pense et qu'il parle. La saillie, le mot est la monnaie très menue de cet esprit-là. Et pourtant, c'est encore un côté, un caractère tout particulier de notre intelligence nationale. C'est un de ses charmes les plus vifs. Il fait la gaîté sceptique de notre vie parisienne, l'insouciance aimable de nos mœurs. Il est une partie de notre aménité.

Exercise.

1. Don't run: it never rains. — 2. He will send me some change. — 3. Our people lives in the streets. — 4. She plucks no flowers. — 5. We put some wit into our gayety.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. He hasn't offered me any change. — 2. The Frenchman puts into the books which (*que*) he writes, the skeptical indifference

of our Parisian life. — 3. I plucked some flowers, which I sent to a Frenchman. — 4. Weren't they running in the streets? — 5. Let's go out: it will hardly rain. — 6. There is some wit in the books which they have written. — 7. He no longer lives. — 8. They received only some books. — 9. He used to put no wit into his (*ses*) sallies. — 10. You ought not to run in the street.

LXXXIII. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Lesson 67.

Lesson 218.

183. Learn the principal parts of: *mourir, to die*; *mouvoir, to move*; *valoir, to be worth*.

Construct the whole conjugation of 'mourir.'

French Text.

67. Autrefois, on faisait en vers ces jeux plaisants; aujourd'hui, on les fait en prose. Cela s'appelle, selon les temps, épigrammes, bons mots, traits, pointes, gauloiseries. Ils courent la ville et les salons, naissent partout, sur le boulevard comme à Montmartre.¹ Et ceux de Montmartre valent souvent ceux du boulevard. On les imprime dans les journaux. D'un bout à l'autre de la France, ils font rire. Car nous savons rire.

¹ Montmartre is a poor quarter in the northern part of Paris.

Exercise.

1. These epigrams never die. — 2. He is worth nothing. —
3. The mattresses do not move.¹ — 4. Nobody will die to-day. —
5. Formerly these witticisms circulated through the city.

¹ Use the verb reflexively.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. They will suffer, but they will not die. — 2. The cabbages were living, but they did not move.¹ — 3. From one end of the city to the other, the newspapers would be worth nothing. — 4. We often laugh, for the newspapers send us epigrams in prose. — 5. There are verses everywhere. — 6. It is hardly raining: let's go out. — 7. Are the parlors opened? — 8. Follow the avenue from one end to the other. — 9. I am not sleeping any more: I am going away. — 10. Am I not called John?

¹ Use the verb reflexively.

LXXXIV. IRREGULAR VERBS.**Lesson 68.****Lesson 219.**

184. Learn the principal parts of: *conduire*, to *conduct*; *détruire*, to *destroy*; *instruire*, to *instruct*; *produire*, to *produce*; *réduire*, to *reduce*; *traduire*, to *translate*.

Construct the whole conjugation of 'conduire.'

French Text.

68. Pourquoi un mot plutôt qu'un autre, le rapprochement imprévu, bizarre de deux termes, de deux idées ou même de deux sons, une calembredaine quelconque, un coq-à-l'âne inattendu ouvrent-ils la vanne de notre gaîté, font-ils éclater tout d'un coup, comme une mine qui sauterait, tout Paris et toute la province? Pourquoi tous les Français riront-ils, alors que tous les Anglais et tous les Allemands ne comprendront pas notre amusement? Pourquoi? Uniquement parce que nous sommes Français, que nous avons l'intelligence française, que nous possédons la charmante faculté du rire.

Exercise.

1. Are the Englishmen conducting the Germans? — 2. The mine did not destroy all Paris. — 3. Instruct yourself, and produce ideas. — 4. The newspapers of Paris are reduced to producing¹ yarns of any kind. — 5. If you translated our yarn, the English would not understand it.

¹ Use infinitive.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Put into a yarn of any kind two whimsical ideas, and let the country will laugh. — 2. The mine has exploded, but Paris has not moved.¹ — 3. Is not French gayety² as good as German intelligence²? — 4. Destroy our gayety, and all Paris will die. — 5. You will never translate our gayety into³ German. — 6. Ideas² live: they never die. — 7. Why don't the Germans put some wit into their yarns? — 8. The Frenchman feels nothing while he is sleeping. — 9. Have the English never conquered the French? — 10. He is not lying: he is instructing us.

¹ Use the verb reflexively. ² Use the definite article with this noun. ³ 'En.'

LXXXV. IRREGULAR VERBS.**Lesson 69.****Lesson 220.**

185. Learn the principal parts of: *dire, to say; lire, to read; plaire, to please; taire (reflexive), to be silent.*

Construct the whole conjugation of 'dire.'

French Text.

69. Chez nous, d'ailleurs, il suffit d'un peu d'esprit pour gouverner. La bonne humeur tient lieu de génie, un bon mot sacre un homme et le fait grand pour la postérité. Tout le reste importe peu. Le peuple aime ceux qui

l'amusent et pardonne à ceux qui le font rire. Un seul coup d'œil jeté sur le passé de notre patrie, nous fera comprendre que la renommée de nos grands hommes n'a jamais été faite que par des mots heureux. Les plus détestables princes sont devenus populaires par des plaisanteries agréables, répétées et retenues de siècle en siècle.

Exercise.

1. He says that he has never read the witticisms of our great men. — 2. The brightest sayings of our princes hardly please me. — 3. The great man was silent: he had no wit at all. — 4. Do not princes read the great sayings of the past? — 5. You have some genius, but you don't say anything.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Those who amuse the people conduct our country. — 2. Genius¹ will never be worth so much as good humor.¹ — 3. Princes¹ will die, but the fame of our jests will live from century to century. — 4. You ought to translate some good French jests. — 5. There are hateful princes and popular princes. — 6. Be silent! you have no wit. — 7. Do you say that the people no longer reads the jests of princes¹? — 8. If our wit does not please you, read the bright sayings of the great men of the past. — 9. Do not be silent: a little wit is enough to make us laugh. — 10. Do not destroy the good humor of the French people: it will die if it does not laugh.

¹ Use the definite article with this noun.

LXXXVI. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Lesson 70.

Lesson 221.

186. Learn the principal parts of: *connaître*, to be or become acquainted with; *haïr*, to hate; *naître*, to be born; *paraître*, to appear.

Construct the whole conjugation of 'connaître.'

French Text.

70. Des mots, des mots, rien que des mots, ironiques ou héroïques, plaisants ou polissons, les mots surnagent sur notre histoire et la font paraître comparable à un recueil de calembours.

Clovis, le roi chrétien, s'écria, en entendant lire la Passion: «Que n'étais-je là avec mes Francs!» Ce prince, pour régner seul, massacra ses alliés et ses parents, commit tous les crimes imaginables. On le regarde cependant comme un monarque civilisateur et pieux. «Que n'étais-je là avec mes Francs!»

Exercise.

1. Do you know Clovis, king of the Franks? — 2. This monarch seemed heroic and pious. — 3. The prince was born in France. — 4. The king hates his allies. — 5. We hate nobody.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. The prince is not acquainted with his relatives. — 2. I hate puns.¹ — 3. This word appears ironical. — 4. Read history¹ and

instruct yourself. — 5. Be silent! say nothing, if you please.² — 6. The king will send the prince to his allies. — 7. Are puns¹ worth nothing? — 8. This pious monarch commits no crimes. — 9. Do I never serve princes¹? — 10. Clovis went away with his Franks.

¹ Use the definite article.² If it (il) pleases you.

LXXXVII. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Lesson 71.

Lesson 222.

187. Learn the principal parts of: *craindre, to fear; éteindre, to extinguish; joindre, to join; plaindre, to pity.*

Construct the whole conjugation of 'craindre.'

French Text.

71. Nous ne saurions rien du bon roi Dagobert, si la chanson¹ ne nous avait appris quelques particularités, sans doute erronées, de son existence.

Pépin, voulant déposséder du trône le roi Childéric, posa au pape Zacharie l'insidieuse question que voici: «Lequel des deux est le plus digne de régner, celui qui remplit dignement toutes les fonctions de roi, sans en avoir le titre, ou celui qui porte ce titre sans savoir gouverner?»

¹ *La chanson du roi Dagobert*, a long comic song of unknown authorship, was extremely popular in the early part of the nineteenth century. Most of the stanzas consist of burlesque dialogues between *le bon roi Dagobert* and *le grand saint Éloi*.

Exercise.

1. Let us fear nobody. — 2. Nothing will extinguish the gayety of our people. — 3. The pope's allies joined the two kings. —

4. Pity him who fulfils the duties of a king. — 5. I have never pitied king Childeric.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. The song dies away.¹ — 2. The French unite² gayety with intelligence. — 3. The king was afraid of the pope. — 4. I pity the good king who no longer governs. — 5. Does Childeric appear to have the title of king? — 6. The princes hated the monarch who had deprived them of the throne. — 7. He has told me³ that he is acquainted with some details of the song. — 8. Princes⁴ are born, peoples⁴ fade away,¹ but songs⁴ never die. — 9. Let's translate the song of king⁴ Dagobert. — 10. Have you never read the history of king⁴ Pepin?

¹ Use 's'éteindre.' ² 'Joindre.' ³ Said to me. ⁴ Use the definite article.

LXXXVIII. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Lesson 72.

Lesson 223.

188. Learn the principal parts of: *asseoir, to seat; croire, to believe; fuir, to flee; voir, to see.*

Construct the whole conjugation of 'voir.'

French Text.

72. Que savons-nous de Louis VI? Rien. Pardon. Au combat de Brenneville, comme un Anglais posait la main sur lui en s'écriant: «Le roi est pris!» ce prince, vraiment Français, répondit: «Ne sais-tu pas qu'on ne prend jamais un roi, même aux échecs?»

Louis IX, bien que saint, ne nous laissa pas un seul mot à retenir. Aussi son règne nous apparaît-il comme horriblement ennuyeux, plein d'oraisons et de pénitences.

Exercise.

1. We seated ourselves. — 2. They believe that the king **never** flees. — 3. I saw the Englishman lay his hand on the king. — 4. Seat yourself. — 5. We believed that the French were **fleeing**.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. I have seen nothing. — 2. Don't you believe anything? — 3. Louis's reign seemed to me horribly tiresome. — 4. Don't sit down, if you please. — 5. Let us flee! Don't you see the English? — 6. This prince's reign has never pleased me. — 7. The king is silent, but he is not sleeping; he is suffering. — 8. "Take the king!" I exclaimed, while going out. — 9. Run (*tu*), flee, do not sit down! — 10. You ought not to cover yourself; the king is dying.

LXXXIX. IRREGULAR VERBS.**Lesson 78.**

189. Review the conjugation of: **avoir** and **être** (Chapter XXX); **falloir** (Chapter LXXII); **prendre** (Chapter LXXV); **devoir** (Chapter LXXVI).

French Text.

73. Philippe VI, ce niais, battu et blessé à Crécy, alla frapper à la porte du château de l'Arbroie, en criant: «Ouvrez, c'est la fortune de la France!» Nous lui savons encore gré de cette parole de mélodrame.

an II, prisonnier du prince de Galles, lui dit, avec une grâce chevaleresque et une galanterie de troubadour ais: «Je comptais vous donner à souper aujourd'hui;

mais la fortune en dispose autrement et veut que je soupe chez vous.» On n'est pas plus gracieux dans l'adversité.

Exercise.

1. It was necessary to knock at the door of the castle. —
2. Had the prince taken any prisoners? — 3. One ought to be well-bred in adversity. — 4. We take no French prisoners. —
5. John had to sup with the Prince of Wales.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. It will be necessary to open the door. — 2. You must give me some supper to-day. — 3. Take no more prisoners. — 4. Fear nothing! do not flee! the French will never take you. — 5. I believe that Philip sat down at the door of the castle. — 6. Are French gallantry¹ and chivalrous grace¹ dying out? — 7. The wounded will join the French. — 8. We pity that conquered king, and we are grateful to him for his gallantry. — 9. I saw that idiot go and knock at the door. — 10. He used to say that he did not believe me.

¹ Use the definite article.

XC. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Lesson 74.

Lesson 224.

190. Review the conjugation of: *rire* (Chapter LXXIV); *recevoir* (Chapter LXXVII); *écrire* (Chapter LXXVIII); *boire* (Chapter LXXIX).

French Text.

74. François I^{er}, ce grand nigaud, a sauvé sa mémoire et entouré son nom d'une auréole impérissable, en écrivant

IMPERATIVE: *go, let's go, go*

va	allons	allez
-----------	---------------	--------------

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

j'aille	nous allions
tu ailles	vous alliez
il aille	ils aillent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

j'allasse	nous allussions
tu allasses	vous allassiez
il allât	ils allassent

a. 'Aller' followed by an infinitive corresponds to the English phrase *to be going to*. Ex.: *I'm going to be frank* = je vais être sincère; *he was going to speak* = il allait parler.

b. *To go and* do a thing is translated by 'aller' followed by an infinitive, without any conjunction: *he went and took it* = il alla le prendre.

c. Remember that 'aller' is conjugated with 'être.'

French Text.

75. Henri IV! Saluez, messieurs, c'est le maître! Sournois, sceptique, malin, faux bonhomme, rusé comme pas un, plus trompeur qu'on ne saurait croire, débauché, ivrogne et sans croyance à rien, il a su, par quelques mots heureux, se faire dans l'histoire une admirable réputation de roi chevaleresque, généreux, brave homme, loyal et probe. Oh! le fourbe, comme il savait jouer, celui-là, avec la bêtise humaine! «Pends-toi, brave Crillon,¹ nous avons vaincu sans toi!» Après une parole semblable, un général est toujours prêt à se faire pendre ou tuer pour son maître.

¹ It has been said that after the battle of Arques, in 1587, Henry IV wrote to the famous French general, Crillon, a letter beginning: "Pends-toi, brave Crillon: nous avons vaincu à Arques et tu n'y étais pas."

Exercise.

1. Go and hang yourself. — 2. I am not going to bow. — 3. Were you not going to play? — 4. Will the general and his master go to Arques? — 5. We should go to Arques, if you had not conquered without us.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Go (*tu*) and have yourself killed. — 2. I was not going to have myself hanged. — 3. Is he going to have himself seen? — 4. They went and took the honest man. — 5. Shall we go and salute Henry IV? — 6. I should have gone to see Crillon, if he had not gone to Arques. — 7. Has she not gone to see the king? — 8. They had gone to Arques without me. — 9. Let's go and play. — 10. Are the rogues going to make themselves known?

XCII. IRREGULAR VERBS.**Lesson 76.****Lesson 226.**

192. 'Faire,' *to do*, is conjugated below:—

To do = **faire**, *doing* = **faisant**, *done* = **fait**.

IND. PRES.: *I am doing or I do*

je fais	nous faisons
tu fais	vous faites
elle fait	elles font

DESCR. PAST: *I was doing or I used to do*

je faisais	nous faisions
tu faisais	vous faisiez
elle faisait	elles faisaient

NAR. PAST: *I did*

je fis	nous fîmes
tu fis	vous fîtes
elle fit	elles firent

FUTURE: *I shall do or I shall be doing*

je ferai	nous ferons
tu feras	vous ferez
elle fera	elles feront

CONDITIONAL: *I should do or I should be doing*

je ferais	nous ferions
tu ferais	vous feriez
elle ferait	elles feraient

IMPERATIVE: *do, let's do, do*

fais	faisons	faites
-------------	----------------	---------------

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

je fasse	nous fassions
tu fasses	vous fassiez
elle fasse	elles fassent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

je fissse	nous fissions
tu fisses	vous fissiez
elle fît	elles fissent

a. 'Faire' means also *to make*. We have seen, moreover, that when it is followed by an infinitive, it often has the sense of *causing* a thing to be done, or *having* it done: *he has them killed* = *il les fait tuer*.

b. The *ai* of *fais-*, when it is followed by another syllable, is pronounced *e*.

French Text.

76. Au moment de livrer la fameuse bataille d'Ivry: « Enfants, si les cornettes vous manquent, ralliez-vous à mon panache blanc; vous le trouverez toujours au chemin de l'honneur et de la victoire! » Pouvait-il n'être pas toujours victorieux, celui qui savait parler ainsi à ses capitaines et à ses troupes?

Il veut Paris, le roi sceptique; il le veut, mais il lui faut choisir entre sa foi et la belle ville: « Baste! murmura-t-il, Paris vaut bien une messe! » Et il changea de religion comme il aurait changé d'habit. N'est-il pas vrai, cependant, que le mot fit accepter la chose? « Paris vaut bien une messe! » fit rire les gens d'esprit, et l'on ne se fâcha pas trop.

Exercise.

1. Will the saying make them laugh? — 2. We had the battle fought. — 3. I should not have them accepted. — 4. Do nothing. — 5. They were making the captains speak.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Do not get angry: I am doing nothing. — 2. If he went to Paris, he would not make us change our religion. — 3. What (*que*) is she doing? Is she not going to Paris? — 4. What would you do, if we went and opened the battle? — 5. Haven't they done anything? — 6. Don't go and change your coat; the king never does it. — 7. What were we doing at Ivry? — 8. Shall I not make the troops laugh? — 9. What did they do at the battle of Ivry? — 10. Aren't the captains making people laugh?

XCIII. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Lesson 77.

Lesson 227.

193. 'Pouvoir,' *to be able*, is conjugated below:—

To be able = **pouvoir**, *being able* = **pouvant**, *been able* = **pu**.

IND. PRES. : *I can or I am able*

je peux or je puis	nous pouvons
tu peux	vous pouvez
elle peut	elles peuvent

DESCR. PAST : *I could or I was able or I used to be able*

je pouvais	nous pouvions
tu pouvais	vous pouviez
elle pouvait	elles pouvaient

NAR. PAST : *I was able or I succeeded*

je pus	nous pûmes
tu pus	vous pûtes
elle put	elles purent

FUTURE : *I shall be able*

je pourrai	nous pourrons
tu pourras	vous pourrez
elle pourra	elles pourront

CONDITIONAL : *I should be able or I could*

je pourrais	nous pourrions
tu pourrais	vous pourriez
elle pourrait	elles pourraient

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

je puisse	nous puissions
tu puisses	vous puissiez
elle puisse	elles puissent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

je pusse	nous pussions
tu pusses	vous pussiez
elle pût	elles pussent

a. Pouvoir has no imperative.

b. The interrogative form of the first person singular of the present indicative is regularly '*puis-je*,' never '*peux-je*.'

French Text.

77. N'est-il pas devenu le patron des pères de famille en demandant à l'ambassadeur d'Espagne, qui le trouva jouant au cheval avec le dauphin: «Monsieur l'ambassadeur, êtes-vous père?» L'Espagnol répondit: «Oui, sire.» «En ce cas, dit le roi, je continue.»

Mais il a conquis pour l'éternité le cœur des bourgeois et le cœur du peuple, par le plus beau mot qu'ait jamais prononcé un prince, un mot de génie, plein de profondeur, de bonhomie, de malice et de sens: «Si Dieu m'accorde vie, je veux qu'il n'y ait si pauvre paysan en mon royaume qui ne puisse mettre la poule au pot, le dimanche.»

Exercise.

1. Will the prince be able to find you? — 2. The poor peasant cannot pronounce the word. — 3. Can I win the heart of the people? — 4. We couldn't reply. — 5. If you pronounced that word, I couldn't do anything.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Have the ambassadors been able to reply to the king? —
2. What (*que*) could you do, if I went and found the Spaniard? —
3. He had the chicken put into the pot. —
4. Are you (*tu*) going to play horse? —
5. Can I grant it? —
6. Were the peasants able to find the king? —
7. We should never be able to go on. —
8. If God granted you life, you could win the heart of the middle classes. —
9. Can the Spaniard find us? —
10. I hadn't been able to do it.

XCIV. IRREGULAR VERBS.**Lesson 78.****Lesson 228.**

194. 'Savoir,' *to know*, is conjugated below:—

To know = **savoir**, *knowing* = **sachant**, *known* = **su**.

IND. PRES. : *I know*

je sais	nous savons
tu sais	vous savez
il sait	ils savent

DESCR. PAST : *I knew or I used to know*

je savais	nous savions
tu savais	vous saviez
il savait	ils savaient

NAR. PAST : *I learned or I found out*

je sus	nous sûmes
tu sus	vous sûtes
il sut	ils surent

FUTURE : *I shall know or I shall find out*

je saurai	nous saurons
tu sauras	vous saurez
il saura	ils sauront

CONDITIONAL: *I should know*

je saurais	nous saurions
tu saurais	vous sauriez
il saurait	ils sauraient

IMPERATIVE: *know, let's know, know*

sache	sachons	sachez
--------------	----------------	---------------

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

je sache	nous sachions
tu saches	vous sachiez
il sache	ils sachent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

je susse	nous sussions
tu susses	vous sussiez
il sût	ils sussent

a. 'Savoir' signifies also *to know how* and *to be able* (meaning *to know how*). Ex.: *he can sing = he knows how to sing = il sait chanter*. The negative conditional, 'je ne saurais,' etc., means *I cannot*, etc. Ex.: *I can't say = je ne saurais le dire*.

French Text.

78. C'est avec ces paroles-là qu'on prend, qu'on gouverne, qu'on domine les foules enthousiastes et niaises. Par deux paroles, Henri IV a dessiné sa physionomie pour la postérité. On ne peut prononcer son nom sans avoir aussitôt une vision de panache blanc et une saveur de poule au pot.

Exercise.

1. Henry IV knew how to rule the crowd. — 2. Do you know his name? — 3. I couldn't pronounce it to you. — 4. We shall never be able to govern. — 5. Did the crowds find out the name of the prince?

Supplementary Exercise.

1. I have found out his name. — 2. Know that we are governed by speeches. — 3. You couldn't rule the silly crowds. — 4. I know that you are having your portrait drawn for posterity. — 5. She is going to pronounce his name. — 6. Can I pronounce it? — 7. Henry found out that they could take him. — 8. You can't draw. — 9. Did Henry know how to govern? — 10. They can see me.

XCV. IRREGULAR VERBS.**Lesson 79.****Lesson 229.**

195. 'Tenir,' *to hold*, and 'venir,' *to come*, are conjugated as follows: —

- (1) *To hold* = **tenir**, *holding* = **tenant**, *held* = **tenu**.
 'Tenir' is conjugated exactly like 'venir': see below.
- (2) *To come* = **venir**, *coming* = **venant**, *come* = **venu**.

IND. PRES.: *I am coming or I come*

je viens	nous venons
tu viens	vous venez
elle vient	elles viennent

DESCR. PAST: *I was coming or I used to come*

je venais	nous venions
tu venais	vous veniez
elle venait	elles venaient

NAR. PAST. *I came*

je vins	nous vîmes
tu vins	vous vîtes
elle vint	elles vinrent

FUTURE: *I shall come or I shall be coming*

je viendrai	nous viendrons
tu viendras	vous viendrez
elle viendra	elles viendront

CONDITIONAL: *I should come or I should be coming*

je viendrais	nous viendrions
tu viendrais	vous viendriez
elle viendrait	elles viendraient

IMPERATIVE: *Come, let's come, come*

viens	venons	venez
--------------	---------------	--------------

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

je vienne	nous venions
tu viennes	vous veniez
elle vienne	elles viennent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

je vinsse	nous vinssions
tu vinsses	vous vinssiez
elle vînt	elles vinssent

a. 'Venir de,' followed by an infinitive, means *to have just* done something: *he has just died* = il vient de mourir.

b. *To come to or to come and* do anything are translated by 'venir' followed by an infinitive, without any connective: *she came and spoke to me* or *she came to speak to me* = elle vint me parler.

c. Remember that 'venir' is conjugated with 'être.'

French Text.

79. Louis XIII ne fit pas de mots. Ce triste roi eut un triste règne. Louis XIV donna la formule du pouvoir personnel absolu: «L'État, c'est moi.» Il donna la mesure

de l'orgueil royal dans son complet épanouissement: «J'ai failli attendre.» Il donna l'exemple des ronflantes paroles politiques qui font les alliances entre deux peuples: «Il n'y a plus de Pyrénées.» Tout son règne est dans ces quelques mots.

Exercise.

1. He is holding me. — 2. We had just made an alliance. —
3. They have come to see the Pyrenees. — 4. You will hold the power. — 5. I came and gave him the formula.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. They would come and give us an example of political speeches. — 2. I should have held them. — 3. You have just waited. — 4. They were coming to give us the measure. — 5. Come (*tu*)! I don't know how to wait. — 6. The kings hold the power. — 7. Will you be able to come? I shall not go. — 8. Are you (*tu*) going to make an alliance? I have just done it. — 9. He had them given to Lewis. — 10. She had come to wait for us.

XCVI. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Lesson 80.

Lesson 230.

196. 'Vouloir,' *to want* or *to wish*, is conjugated as follows:—

To want = **vouloir**, *wanting* = **voulant**, *wanted* = **voulu**.

IND. PRÉS. : *I want* or *I am meaning*

je veux
tu veux
il veut

nous voulons
vous voulez
ils veulent

DESCR. PAST: *I wanted or I used to want or I was meaning*

je voulais	nous voulions
tu voulais	vous vouliez
il voulait	ils voulaient

NAR. PAST: *I wanted or I tried*

je voulus	nous voulûmes
tu voulus	vous voulûtes
il voulut	ils voulurent

FUTURE: *I shall want or I shall be wanting*

je voudrai	nous voudrons
tu voudras	vous voudrez
il voudra	ils voudront

CONDITIONAL: *I should like*

je voudrais	nous voudrions
tu voudrais	vous voudriez
il voudrait	ils voudraient

IMPERATIVE: *wish, let's wish, wish*

veux voulons or veuillons voulez or veuillez

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

je veuille	nous voulions
tu veuilles	vous vouliez
il veuille	ils veuillent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

je voulusse	nous voulussions
tu voulusses	vous voulussiez
il voulût	ils voulussent

a. 'Vouloir' signifies *to want* in the sense of *to desire*, not in the sense of *to lack*. It means also *to be willing*; in affirmative clauses, when it has this meaning, it is generally accompanied by the adverb 'bien,' *well*. Ex.: *I am willing* = je veux bien; *he isn't willing* = il ne veut pas; *are you willing* = voulez-vous?

b. The imperative form 'veuillez' is usually equivalent to English *please*. Ex.: *please write to me* = veuillez m'écrire.

French Text.

80. Louis XV, le roi corrompu, élégant et spirituel, nous a laissé la note charmante de sa souveraine insouciance: «Après moi, le déluge!»

Si Louis XVI avait eu l'esprit de faire un mot, il aurait peut-être sauvé la monarchie. Avec une saillie, n'aurait-il pas évité la guillotine?

Napoléon I^{er} jeta à poignées les mots qu'il fallait aux cœurs de ses soldats.

Exercise.

1. Will you leave me the note? I am willing. — 2. Please save us! I am not willing. — 3. They would like to avoid the guillotine. — 4. We were meaning to save the monarchy. — 5. He tried to make a sally.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. I should have wanted to throw them by handfuls. — 2. Can she leave us? Yes, but she is not willing. — 3. Please have them thrown! We are willing. — 4. They didn't know how to make a sally. — 5. Do you know that I have just avoided the guillotine? — 6. Isn't he going to save the monarchy? He doesn't know how to do it. — 7. Have the note left, if you please! I am willing. — 8. Could not Louis XVI avoid the guillotine? No, he had no wit. — 9. I have found out that you were meaning to save the monarchy. — 10. We should like to save her, but we cannot do it.

XCVII. IRREGULAR VERBS.**Lesson 281.**

197. Review: aller, faire, pouvoir, savoir, tenir, venir, vouloir.

Exercise.

[NOTE.—See French Text 75, on p. 206.]

1. I don't believe that he is going to Arques.—2. He doesn't believe that I am having them killed.—3. We didn't believe that the king would conquer without us.—4. Don't you believe that we know how to play?—5. They didn't believe that the general held himself ready.—6. I don't believe that they have just hanged themselves.—7. She doesn't believe that he is willing to have himself killed.—8. We didn't believe that the king wanted to conquer them.—9. Didn't you believe that we knew it?—10. They didn't believe that the general had the rogues killed.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Will you salute the master? I am willing.—2. Does she know how to play? Yes, but she isn't willing.—3. We had just had them killed.—4. I am going to have myself killed.—5. Can they believe us?—6. He will have the rogues hanged.—7. She went and saluted the king.—8. We have come to salute him.—9. I was not able to hold them.—10. They have gone to kill the king.—11. I should like to have them hanged.—12. Hasn't the king just had the general killed?—13. Please come and play with me.—14. Go (*tu*) and have yourself killed.—15. Know that the king is an honest man.

XCVIII. IRREGULAR VERBS.**Lesson 232.**

198. Review: ouvrir, sentir, mettre, mourir, conduire, dire, connaître, craindre, voir. See Chapters LXXX-LXXXVIII.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 76, on p. 209.]

1. I do not fear that you will open the city to the troops. —
2. He was angry that we felt nothing. — 3. You were not willing that he should put himself on the road to victory. — 4. We were not willing that the captains should die for us. — 5. Are you angry that I am conducting you to Paris? — 6. He didn't know that we were saying "Die!" — 7. They were not willing that I should know them. — 8. I didn't know that you were afraid of the king. — 9. She is not willing that the king shall see her. —
10. We were not afraid that he would see us.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. We shall see him no more: he will die. — 2. Put (*tu*) yourself on the road to honor, and fear nothing. — 3. I no longer feel anything: I am dying. — 4. They have opened the road to honor; they will lead us to victory. — 5. I know and fear her. — 6. Let's see Paris! Do you know the beautiful city? — 7. You do not say to him: "Lead the troops to victory!" — 8. We knew the captain, but we did not fear him. — 9. Have you seen the king? He is not dead. — 10. I have led them to Paris; they are not afraid of the king. — 11. If they had not been afraid of the king's white plume, we should have seen them victorious. — 12. If you had known the road to victory, you would not have feared the battle. — 13. He led us to Paris; we did not know the city. — 14. They were dying, but they had felt nothing. — 15. I was saying that you would see me no more.

XCIX. IRREGULAR VERBS.**Lesson 233.**

199. Review the principal parts of the verbs in Chapters LXXX-LXXXVIII.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 77, on p. 211.]

1. I don't say that you are fleeing. — 2. I wanted the ambassador to seat himself. — 3. The king doesn't want the middle classes to hate him. — 4. We did not say that the prince was as good as¹ the king. — 5. The dauphin is the handsomest prince that lives. — 6. Don't you want the poor peasant to put the chicken into the pot? — 7. The king wants me to be silent. — 8. I don't want you to pity me: pity the poor peasants. — 9. It was the poorest peasant that I had ever known. — 10. I don't want you to translate my father's sayings.

¹ See French Text 67.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. You pity nobody: have you never suffered? — 2. The dauphin doesn't sleep, and the king is beating him. — 3. It is raining, but I shall not run. — 4. The horse does not move; do you want me to beat him? — 5. Read the beautiful saying that I have just uttered, and instruct yourself. — 6. Does the prince's fine saying please you? I do not know it. — 7. The king was instructing the crown prince; he wanted the ambassador to go out. — 8. I hate the middle classes: they appear to me full of shrewdness. — 9. We pity the poor people, and we hate nobody. — 10. Do not flee: seat yourself, and fear nothing. — 11. The poor peasants are born and die, and no one pities them. — 12. The prince will not send any ambassadors to the king of Spain. — 13. He seats himself and does not move: will he never

go away? — 14. I serve the king who is conquering Spain. — 15. The middle classes are not worth so much as¹ the peasants: they produce nothing.

¹ See French Text 67.

C. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Lesson 81.

200. Construct the conjugation of 'croire' and 'plaindre.'

French Text.

81. Napoléon III éteignit avec une courte phrase toutes les colères futures de la nation en promettant: «L'Empire, c'est la paix.» L'Empire, c'est la paix! affirmation superbe, mensonge admirable! Après avoir dit cela, il pouvait déclarer la guerre à toute l'Europe sans rien craindre de son peuple. Il avait trouvé une formule simple, nette, saisissante, capable de frapper les esprits, et contre laquelle les faits ne pouvaient plus prévaloir.

Exercise.

1. He believes that empire is peace: do you not pity him? — 2. That is a lie! I have never believed it and I never shall believe it. — 3. He said to me: "Empire is peace!" and I believed him. — 4. I do not pity Napoleon: he has never pitied his people. — 5. If we believed him, we should pity him; but we do not believe him.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. The nation did not pity Napoleon. — 2. He says: "Empire is peace!" but Europe does not believe him. — 3. Do not believe him! he pities nobody. — 4. He had found a splendid formula,

but nobody believed him. — 5. She found a taking phrase, and we believed her. — 6. If you pitied him, you would believe him; but you will never pity him. — 8. They have just found a short formula. — 8. Did Napoleon have war declared? — 9. They have gone to find him. — 10. Can he declare war against all Europe?

CI. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Lesson 82.

201. Construct the conjugation of 'paraître' and 'lire.'

French Text.

82. Il a fait la guerre à la Chine, au Mexique, à la Russie, à l'Autriche, à tout le monde. Qu'importe? Certaines gens parlent encore avec conviction des dix-huit ans de tranquillité qu'il nous donna. «L'Empire, c'est la paix.»

Exercise.

1. Have you read *War and Peace*? — 2. It appears that she was reading *The Empire*. — 3. Has *Mexico* appeared? Yes, everybody is reading it. — 3. If you should speak to me of peace, I should read you *Russia*. — 5. *The Empire* appeared; everybody read it.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. When (*quand*) is *Mexico* going to appear? I should like to read it. — 2. *Russia* and *China* have just appeared: shall we read them? — 3. Didn't he have war made against China? I can't tell you. — 4. Doesn't she know how to speak? Yes, but she isn't willing. — 5. Did they want to give us peace? Yes, but they couldn't. — 6. When *Mexico* appeared, I read it; will you read it? — 7. He went and made war on Austria, but he could

not conquer it. — 8. We have come to speak to you of peace. —
 9. When *The Empire* appeared, it made certain people talk. —
 10. I don't want to speak of *Mexico*; have you been able to
 read it?

CII. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Lesson 88.

202. Construct the conjugation of 'vivre' and
 'suivre.'

French Text.

83. Mais c'est aussi avec des mots, des mots plus mortels que des balles, que M. Rochefort¹ abattit l'empire, le crevant de ses straits, le déchiquetant et l'émiettant.

Le maréchal de Mac-Mahon lui-même nous a laissé un souvenir de son passage au pouvoir: «J'y suis, j'y reste!» Et c'est par un mot de Gambetta² qu'il fut à son tour culbuté: «Se soumettre ou se démettre.»

¹ Henri Rochefort, a prominent journalist and agitator, was born in 1830.

² Léon Gambetta, a famous orator and statesman, was born in 1838 and died in 1882.

Exercise.

1. Follow the marshal! Live, and do not submit! — 2. If he had lived, he would have followed Gambetta. — 3. She did not live, she has left only a memory. — 4. They followed the marshal, and they were riddled with bullets. — 5. Resign! We shall follow you no more!

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Are you going to follow Rochefort? Do not overthrow the empire. — 2. The empire no longer lives: we have had it over-

thrown. — 3. I should leave you, if I could follow Gambetta. — 4. He is giving up; he cannot remain in power. — 5. Don't you know how to submit? The marshal is overthrowing the empire. — 6. If the marshal lives, he will hold the power. — 7. You had just submitted; we were no longer following you. — 8. They have come to follow the marshal; are they going to leave us in power? — 9. Do I want to follow them? I could overthrow them, if I wanted to remain in power. — 10. Please follow me! You shall remain in power with me.

CHIL. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Lesson 84.

203. Construct the conjugation of 'valoir' and 'produire.'

French Text.

84. Avec ces deux verbes, plus puissants qu'une révolution, plus formidables que des barricades, plus invincibles qu'une armée, plus redoutables que tous les votes, le tribun renversa le soldat, écrasa sa gloire, anéantit sa force et son prestige.

Exercise.

1. The revolution produced nothing. — 2. The soldier is not equal to the politician. — 3. Has the army produced soldiers? — 4. The barricades were worth nothing: the soldiers have overthrown them. — 5. The most powerful armies will never be equal to those two verbs.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Do you want to produce a revolution? I want to have the politician overthrown. — 2. If we could crush his glory, he would be worth nothing. — 3. They had the barricades overthrown;

they were going to crush the revolution. — 4. What (*que*) is the revolution good for? It will produce only barricades. — 5. I have just annihilated the politician's reputation. — 6. What are all the votes good for? They produce only politicians, and the politician will never be equal to the soldier. — 7. Have the soldiers gone to crush the revolution? Will they have the barricade overthrown? — 8. I cannot crush the soldier, but I shall know how to annihilate his strength. — 9. They will come and crush us, if we cannot overthrow them. — 10. Does not the politician wish to annihilate the soldier's reputation?

CIV. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Lesson 85.

204. Construct the conjugation of 'offrir' and 'sortir.'

French Text.

85. Quant à ceux qui nous gouvernent aujourd'hui, ils tomberont, car ils n'ont pas d'esprit; ils tomberont, car au jour du danger, au jour de l'émeute, au jour de la bascule inévitable, ils ne sauront pas faire rire la France et la désarmer.

De toutes ces paroles historiques il n'en est pas dix qui soient authentiques. Qu'importe, pourvu qu'on les croie prononcées par ceux à qui on les prête?

Exercise.

1. What is he offering us? I believe that he is going out. —
2. On the day of danger they went out of France; they did not know how to govern. —
3. On the day of uprising he offered them only speeches; he will never know how to govern them. —

4. We are going out; you have offered us nothing to-day. —
5. Are they going out? What shall we offer them?

Supplementary Exercise.

1. What are you going to offer me? I don't want to go out. —
2. They have gone to offer themselves to France on the day of peril. —
3. He has just gone out; he does not know how to disarm those who make us laugh. —
4. Will you hold them on the day of uprising? I cannot believe it. —
5. We have come to disarm him; what has he offered us? —
6. If I could make you laugh, I could disarm you. —
7. Would she like to go out to-day? No, she is not willing. —
8. Please make me laugh! I am willing. —
9. If you went out to-day, you would fall. —
10. If I had any wit, I could make you laugh.

CV. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Lesson 234.

205. Learn the principal parts of: acquérir, apercevoir, atteindre, bouillir, concevoir, conclure, conquérir, construire, coudre, croître, cuire, décrire, étreindre, exclure, faillir, feindre, inscrire, introduire, luire, maudire, médire, nuire, peindre, prévoir, repaître, repentir, résoudre, souscrire, suffire, teindre, tressaillir. See below.

206. Following is an alphabetical list of the irregular verbs, with their principal parts. A few very rare or obsolete words have been omitted. Compounds not mentioned below are conjugated like their simple verbs.

Many verbs have special irregularities in the future and conditional, in the singular and the third person plural of the present subjunctive, and in the third person plural of the present indicative: see notes *a* and *b* below. All forms not otherwise accounted for may be constructed according to the rules in Chapter XLIII.

The forms are given in this order: **infinitive, present participle, past participle**; next, after a semicolon, the **first person singular of the present indicative** and the **first person singular of the narrative past**; then, after a period, the **first person singular of the future** and the **first person singular of the present subjunctive**, *if these forms be peculiar*. When these last forms are given, they should be learned with the principal parts. A dash indicates that a form is lacking.

a. When the **first person singular of the future** is given, we can construct from it the rest of the future and all of the conditional, by dropping the final *ai* and adding the usual endings. 'Apercevrai,' for example, gives us: apercevr**as**, apercevr**a**, apercevr**ons**, apercevr**ez**, apercevr**ont**; apercevr**ais**, apercevr**ais**, apercevr**ait**, apercevr**ions**, apercevr**iez**, apercevr**aient**.

b. When the **first person singular of the present subjunctive** is given, we can (by dropping the final *e* and adding the usual endings) construct from it the *rest of the singular* and the *third person plural* of the present subjunctive, and also the *third person plural of the present indicative*. The first and second persons plural of the present subjunctive are formed regularly from the present participle. 'Apercevoir,' for instance, has a *present subjunctive* 'aperç**oive**,' 'aperç**oives**,' 'aperç**oive**,' 'apercevr**ions**,' 'apercevr**iez**,' 'aperç**oivent**'; and a *third person plural of the present indicative* 'aperç**oivent**.'

c. Ten verbs are so irregular that they have to be conjugated more fully. Their inflections have already been given. They are: aller, avoir, être, faire, falloir, pouvoir, savoir, tenir, venir, vouloir.

Absoudre, absolvant, absous; absous, —. *Absolve.*

The feminine of absous is absoute.

Acquérir, acquérant, acquis; acquiers, acquis. Acquerrai. Acquière.
Acquire.

Aller, *see Chapter XCI. Go.*

Apercevoir, apercevant, aperçu; aperçois, aperçus. Apercevrai
Aperçoive. Perceive.

Assaillir, assaillant, assailli; assaille, assaillis. *Attack.*

Asseoir, asseyant, assis; assieds, assis. Assiérai. *Seat.*

Atteindre, atteignant, atteint; atteins, atteignis. *Attain.*

Avoir, *see Chapter XXX. Have.*

Battre, battant, battu; bats, battis. *Beat.*

Boire, buvant, bu; bois, bus. Boive. *Drink.*

Bouillir, bouillant, bouilli; bous, bouillis. *Boil.*

Ceindre, ceignant, ceint; ceins, ceignis. *Gird.*

Concevoir, concevant, conçu; conçois, conçus. Concevrai. Conçoive.
Conceive.

Conclure, concluant, conclu; conclus, conclus. *Conclude.*

Conduire, conduisant, conduit; conduis, conduisis. *Conduct*

Confire, confisant, confit; confis, confis. *Pickle.*

Connaître, connaissant, connu; connais, connus. *Be acquainted with.*

The third person singular of the present indicative has a circumflex accent on the i.

Conquérir, conquérant, conquis; conquiers, conquis. Conquerrai.
Conquière. Conquer.

Construire, construisant, construit; construis, construisis. *Construct.*

Contredire, contredisant, contredit; contredis, contredis. *Contradict.*

Coudre, cousant, cousu; couds, cousis. *Sew.*

Courir, courant, couru; cours, courus. Courrai. *Run.*

Couvrir, couvrant, couvert; couvre, couvris. *Cover.*

Craindre, craignant, craint; crains, craignis. *Fear.*

Croire, croyant, cru; crois, crus. Croie. *Believe.*

Croître, croissant, crû; crois, crûs. *Grow.*

The feminine of crû is crue.

Cueillir, cueillant, cueilli; cueille, cueillis. Cueillera. *Pluck.*

- Cuire, cuisant, cuit; cuis, cuisis. *Cook.*
 Décevoir, décevant, déçu; déçois, déçus. Décevrai. Déçoive. *Deceive.*
 Décrire, décrivant, décrit; écris, écrivis. *Describe.*
 Dédire, dédisant, dédit; dédis, dédis. *Gainsay.*
 Déduire, déduisant, déduit; déduis, déduisis. *Deduct.*
 Détruire, détruisant, détruit; détruis, détruisis. *Destroy.*
 Devoir, devant, dû; dois, dus. Devrai. Doive. *Owe.*
The feminine of dû is due.
 Dire, disant, dit; dis, dis. *Say.*
The second person plural of the present indicative and imperative is dites.
 Dissoudre, dissolvant, dissous; dissous, —. *Dissolve.*
The feminine of dissous is dissoute.
 Dormir, dormant, dormi; dors, dormis. *Sleep.*
 Écrire, écrivant, écrit; écris, écrivis. *Write.*
 Enquérir, enquérant, enquis; enquiers, enquis. Enquerrai. Enquière.
Inquire.
 Envoyer, envoyant, envoyé; envoie, envoyai. Enverrai. Envoie. *Send.*
 Éteindre, éteignant, éteint; éteins, éteignis. *Extinguish.*
 Être, see Chapter XXX. *Be.*
 Êtreindre, étreignant, étreint; étreins, étreignis. *Clasp.*
 Exclure, excluant, exclu; exclus, exclus. *Exclude.*
 Faillir, faillant, failli; faux, faillis. *Miss.*
 Faire, see Chapter XCII. *Do.*
 Falloir, see Chapter LXXII. *Be necessary (impersonal).*
 Feindre, feignant, feint; feins, feignis. *Feign.*
 Fuir, fuyant, fui; fuis, fuis. Fuie. *Flee.*
 Haïr, haïssant, haï; hais, haïs. *Hate.*
This verb has "aspirate h." Distinguish the forms with ai from those with ai.
 Inscrire, inscrivait, inscrit; inscris, inscrivis. *Inscribe.*
 Instruire, instruisant, instruit; instruis, instruisis. *Instruct.*
 Interdire, interdisant, interdit; interdis, interdis. *Forbid.*
 Introduire, introduisant, introduit; introduis, introduisis. *Introduce.*
 Joindre, joignant, joint; joins, joignis. *Join.*
 Lire, lisant, lu; lis, lus. *Read.*
 Luire, luisant, lui; luis, —. *Shine.*
 Maudire, maudissant, maudit; maudis, maudis. *Curse.*
 Médire, médisant, médit; médis, médis. *Slander.*
 Mentir, mentant, menti; mens, mentis. *Lie.*
 Mettre, mettant, mis; mets, mis. *Put.*
 Moudre, moulant, moulu; mouds, moulus. *Grind.*
 Mourir, mourant, mort; meurs, mourus. Mourrai. Meure. *Die.*

Mouvoir, mouvant, mû; meus, mus. Mouvrai. Meuve. *Moves.*

The feminine of mû is mue.

Naître, naissant, né; nais, naquis. *Be born.*

Nuire, nuisant, nuî; nuis, nuisis. *Harm.*

Offrir, offrant, offert; offre, offris. *Offer.*

Ouvrir, ouvrant, ouvert; ouvre, ouvris. *Open.*

Pâître, paissant, —; pais, —. *Pasture.*

Paraître, paraissant, paru; paraîs, parus. *Appear.*

The third person singular of the present indicative has a circumflex accent on the i.

Partir, partant, parti; pars, partis. *Go away.*

Peindre, peignant, peint; peins, peignis. *Paint.*

Percevoir, percevant, perçu; perçois, perçus. Percevrai. Perçoive.

Collect.

Plaindre, plaignant, plaint; plains, plaignis. *Pity.*

Praire, plaisant, plu; plais, plus. *Please.*

The third person singular of the present indicative has a circumflex accent on the i.

Pleuvoir, pleuvant, plu; pleut, plut. Pleuvra. *Rain (impersonal).*

Pouvoir, *see Chapter XCIII.* *Be able.*

Pourvoir, pourvoyant, pourvu; pourvois, pourvus. Pourvoie. *Provide.*

Prescrire, prescrivant, prescrit; prescris, prescrivis. *Prescribe.*

Prévaloir, prévalant, prévalu; prévaux, prévalus. Prévaudrai. *Prevail*

Prédire, prédisant, prédit; prédis, prédis. *Predict.*

Prendre, prenant, pris; prends, pris. Prenne. *Take.*

Prévoir, prévoyant, prévu; prévois, prévis. Prévoie. *Foresee.*

Produire, produisant, produit; produis, produisis. *Produce.*

Proscrire, proscrivait, proscriit; proscriis, proscrivis. *Proscribe.*

Recevoir, recevant, reçu; reçois, reçus. Recevrai. Reçoive. *Receive.*

Réduire, réduisant, réduit; réduis, réduisis. *Reduce.*

Repaître, repaissant, repu; repais, repus. *Feed.*

Repentir, repentant, repenti; repens, repentis. *Repent (reflexive).*

Requérir, requérant, requis; requiers, requis. Requerrai. Requièrè.

Require.

Résoudre, résolvant, résolu; résous, résolus. *Resolve.*

Also, in the sense of "dissolved," past part. résous, feminine résolue.

Rire, riant, ri; ris, ris. *Laugh.*

Savoir, *see Chapter XCIV.* *Know.*

Séduire, séduisant, séduit; séduis, séduisis. *Mislead.*

Sentir, sentant, senti; sens, sentis. *Feel.*

Servir, servant, servi; sers, servis. *Serve.*

Sortir, sortant, sorti; sors, sortis. *Go out.*

Souffrir, souffrant, souffert; souffre, souffris. *Suffer.*

Souscrire, souscrivant, souscrit; souscris, souscrivis. *Subscribe.*

Suffire, suffisant, suffi; suffis, suffis. *Suffice.*

Suivre, suivant, suivi; suis, suivis. *Follow.*

Taire, taisant, tu; tais, tus. *Be silent (reflexive).*

Teindre, teignant, teint; teins, teignis. *Dye.*

Tenir, tenant, tenu; tiens, tins. Tiendrai. Tienne. *Hold.*

See Chapter XCV.

Traduire, traduisant, traduit; traduis, traduisis. *Translate.*

Traire, trayant, trait; traie, —. Traie. *Milk.*

Transcrire, transcrivant, transcrit; transcris, transcrivis. *Transcribe.*

Tressaillir, tressaillant, tressailli; tressaille, tressaillis. *Start.*

Vaincre, vainquant, vaincu; vaincs, vainquis. *Vanquish.*

Valoir, valant, valu; vaux, valus. Vaudrai. Vaille. *Be worth.*

The third person plural of the present indicative is regular: valent.

Venir, venant, venu; viens, vins. Viendrai. Vienne. *Come.*

See Chapter XCV.

Vêtir, vêtant, vêtu; vêts, vêtis. *Clothe.*

Vivre, vivant, vécu; vis, vécus. *Live.*

Voir, voyant, vu; vois, vis. Verrai. Voie. *See.*

Vouloir, *see Chapter XCVI. Wish.*

Exercise.

Construct the conjugation of: 'acquérir,' 'apercevoir,' 'atteindre.'

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 85, on p. 226.]

1. I do not believe that he will repent on the day of danger. —
2. As for those who govern, there are not ten of them that have harmed us. —
3. He knew how to make us start, provided we did not exclude him on the day of uprising. —
4. What do you conclude from all these historical speeches? Will France ever be conquered? —
5. If I described the uprising to you, you would start. —
6. The danger is growing! Pretend to (*de*) repent. —
7. It is not enough to (*de*) curse you: we have resolved to (*de*)

make you fall. — 8. We were sewing on the day of peril; nobody harmed us. — 9. What are you constructing? I do not believe that you are painting. — 10. They will not harm you, provided you do not exclude them. — 11. I foresee the uprising, and I have resolved to conquer you. — 12. He is feeding himself on (*de*) historical speeches. — 13. It was enough not to exclude them, but we introduced them. — 14. Do you subscribe to all these speeches? I curse you! — 15. The uprising was growing; nobody had foreseen it.

CVI. AUXILIARY VERBS.

Lesson 159.

207. We have already noted the following facts:—

(1) The passive voice, formed in English by means of *to be*, is made in French with the help of 'être': *he is loved by everyone* = *il est aimé de tout le monde*. See Chapter LV.

(2) Compound tenses, constructed in English with the aid of *to have*, are formed in French in some cases with 'avoir,' in others with 'être': *you have been in France* = *vous avez été en France*; *they had gone to Germany* = *ils étaient allés en Allemagne*. See § 96; § 96, *a*; § 135.

(3) The future and the conditional, which in English require the help of *shall* and *will*, *should* and *would*, need no auxiliary in French: *I shall sleep* = *je dormirai*; *she would come* = *elle viendrait*. See § 122, *i*. Observe, however, that in a condition, *should* with the infinitive must be translated by the descriptive past: *if we should write* = *if we wrote* = *si nous écrivions*; *if he should come* = *if he came* = *s'il venait*.

(4) The English "progressive form," consisting of the present participle preceded by some part of the verb *to be*, does not exist in French: *you are eating* = vous mangez; *we were drinking* = nous buvions. See § 93, *a*.

(5) An English infinitive preceded by *used to*, or by *would* meaning *used to*, is generally translated by the descriptive past: *whenever they used to see us, they would call us* = toutes les fois qu'ils nous voyaient, ils nous appelaient. See § 93, *a*.

(6) The French language has nothing corresponding to the English auxiliary *to do*: *why don't you read this book* = pourquoi ne lisez-vous pas ce livre? *I do read it* = je le lis. See § 93, *a*, and § 144.

(7) The English expression *to have* a thing done, meaning *to cause* it to be done, is rendered by 'faire' followed by the active infinitive: *he has had it sent* = il l'a fait envoyer; *we shall have them come* = nous les ferons venir; *she is having it made* = elle le fait faire. See §§ 78, *b*; 85, *c*; 192, *a*.

(8) *To be going* to do anything is expressed in French by 'aller' with an infinitive: *who is going to sing* = qui va chanter? *what was I going to say* = qu'est-ce que j'allais dire? See § 191, *a*.

(9) *To be willing* to do something corresponds to 'vouloir' accompanied, in the affirmative forms, by the adverb 'bien': *he is willing to help us* = il veut bien nous aider. See § 196, *a*.

(10) *To know how* to do anything, or *to be able* meaning *to know how*, is to be translated by 'savoir' with an infinitive: *do you know how to dance* = savez-vous danser?

I can't read = je ne sais pas lire. See § 194, *a*. For 'ne saurais,' etc., see § 159, *a*.

(11) *To have just* done something is rendered by 'venir de' followed by an infinitive: *she had just seen them* = elle venait de les voir. See § 195, *a*.

Exercise.

1. If you should drink, we should eat. — 2. Whenever they used to dance, you would sing. — 3. Why don't you sleep? I do sleep. — 4. He has had me called. — 5. I shall have you read this book. — 6. She was going to send them. — 7. I am willing to come. — 8. They don't know how to sing. — 9. Could he read? — 10. You had just helped me.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. He has just been reading this book. — 2. Can't you read? — 3. She didn't know how to say it. — 4. If you are willing to sing, they will dance. — 5. Who was going to help you? — 6. What have I had done? — 7. I should have this book sent to him, if he should go to Germany. — 8. What shall we have you drink? — 9. Why doesn't he come? He does come. — 10. Whenever I used to call them, they would come and help me.

CVII. AUXILIARY VERBS.

Lesson 160.

208. We have in English the following **modal auxiliaries**: *can, could, may, might, must, shall, should, will, would*. One of these words and an infinitive without *to* constitute a compound form that is often called the

"potential mood." The modal auxiliaries express three sets of ideas: (1) **ability, possibility, or permission**, denoted by *can*,* *could*,* *may*, and *might*; (2) **necessity or obligation**, denoted by *must*, *shall*,** and *should*** ; (3) **desire**, expressed by *will*** and *would***. All these words are really *defective verbs*: they are not conjugated in full, but have only certain tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods; the forms that they lack are supplied by other verbs, such as *be able to*, *be allowed to*, *have to*, *ought to*, *am to*, *want to*, *like to*. *Ought to* and *am to* are themselves defective.

(1) *Can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *be able to* are represented in French by the verb 'pouvoir,' *to be able*: see § 193. But when *may* has the sense of *being allowed*, the idea should be expressed by some form of 'permettre,' *to permit*. Ex.: *may we speak* = *is speaking permitted* = *is it permitted to speak* = *est-il permis de parler?* *may I go there* = *do you allow me to go there* = *me permettez-vous d'y aller?* *you may write to me* = *I permit you to write to me* = *je vous permets de m'écrire*.

(2) *Must*, *shall*, *should*, *have to*, *ought to*, *am to* are expressed by 'devoir,' *to have to*, and by the impersonal verb 'falloir,' *to be necessary*: see § 176 and § 171.

(3) *Will*, *would*, *want to*, *like to* correspond to the verb 'vouloir,' *to want*: see § 196.

a. *To like to* is rendered also by 'aimer à.'

209. 'Pouvoir,' 'devoir,' 'falloir,' and 'vouloir' are not so defective as the corresponding English verbs:

* But *can*, *could* may mean also *know how to*: see § 207 (10).

** *Shall*, *should*, *will*, *would* are used also to form the future and the conditional: see § 207 (3). *Would* sometimes means *used to*: see § 207 (5).

hence the mood and tense of the compound are expressed in these auxiliaries, and not in the dependent infinitive. In the following chapters will be found a synopsis of the indicative and conditional of 'pouvoir voir,' *to be able to see*, 'devoir parler,' *to have to speak*, and 'vouloir chanter,' *to want to sing*; the first will be conjugated affirmatively, the second interrogatively, the third negatively. Notice that no preposition intervenes between these auxiliaries and the dependent infinitive.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 81, on p. 222.]

1. Napoleon wanted to declare war against all Europe. —
2. If I believed you, I might promise you peace. — 3. That may be a lie. — 4. May I say it? — 5. They ought to find a striking formula. — 6. You may strike me. — 7. The facts must prevail. —
8. I can't find the phrase. — 9. You are to fear nothing. — 10. We should like to declare war.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. He will never be able to quench the nation's wrath. —
2. You shall promise me peace. — 3. I would promise nothing. —
4. That must be a lie. — 5. I will not declare war. — 6. He had to find some short phrases. — 7. You should not strike them. —
8. If we wanted to promise peace, we could quench all the nation's wrath. — 9. May I declare that empire is peace? —
10. They were to find the facts.

CVIII. AUXILIARY VERBS.

Lesson 161.

210. To be able to: *can, could, may, might*.IND. PRES.: *I can see or I am able to see**

je peux voir

IND. PRES. PERF.: *I could see or I was able to see***

j'ai pu voir

DESCR. PAST: *I could see or I was able to see†*

je pouvais voir

IND. PAST PERF.: *I had been able to see‡*

j'avais pu voir

NAR. PAST: *I was able to see or I succeeded in seeing*

je pus voir

FUTURE: *I shall be able to see or I can see*

je pourrai voir

FUTURE PERF.: *I shall have been able to see*

j'aurai pu voir

CONDITIONAL: *I could see or I might see*

je pourrais voir

COND. PERF.: *I could have seen or I might have seen*

j'aurais pu voir

* Also *I may see*.** Also *I have been able to see* and, in dependent clauses, *I can have seen* or *I may have seen*.† Also *I might see* and *I used to be able to see*.‡ Also, in dependent clauses, *I could have seen* or *I might have seen*.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 82, on p. 223.]

1. Can he make war on China? — 2. I believe that certain people may have seen eighteen years of tranquillity. — 3. We couldn't speak earnestly of the tranquillity of the empire. — 4. She could never have seen Russia and China. — 5. I succeeded in making war on Austria. — 6. You were saying that he might have given you peace. — 7. In (*dans*) eighteen years everybody will have been able to see China. — 8. They might make war against everybody. — 9. In eighteen years you can speak of peace. — 10. If everybody were still speaking of peace, we could make war.

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 83, on p. 224.]

1. You might have overthrown the empire. — 2. Can't you (*tu*) stay there? — 3. They might leave us a reminder. — 4. He says that we may have seen Gambetta. — 5. I shall not have been able to submit. — 6. She used to be able to stay with us. — 7. You will not be able to riddle them with bullets. — 8. I believed that you (*tu*) might have overthrown Gambetta. — 9. He succeeded in bursting the empire. — 10. If we had left them in power, they could have resigned.

CIX. AUXILIARY VERBS.**Lesson 162.****211. To have to: *am to, must, ought to, shall, should.***IND. PRES.: *must I speak or am I to speak or shall I speak?****dois-je parler**IND. PRES. PERF.: *did I have to speak or have I had to speak?****ai-je dû parler*** Also, in colloquial English, *have I got to speak?*** 'J'ai dû parler' means also *I must have spoken.*

DESCR. PAST: *did I have to speak?****devais-je parler**IND. PAST PERF.: *had I had to speak?*****avais-je dû parler**NAR. PAST: *did I have to speak?***dus-je parler**FUTURE: *shall I have to speak or must I speak or am I to speak?***devrai-je parler**FUTURE PERF.: *shall I have had to speak?***aurai-je dû parler**CONDITIONAL: *ought I to speak or should I speak?***devrais-je parler**COND. PERF.: *ought I to have spoken or should I have spoken?***aurais-je dû parler****Exercise.**

[NOTE. — See French Text 84, on p. 225.]

1. He had to overthrow some formidable barricades. — 2. You had had to crush the soldier's glory. — 3. Is he to annihilate his reputation? — 4. We used to have to crush fearful revolutions. — 5. You will have had to annihilate the politician's strength. — 6. These votes must have overthrown the army. — 7. The army ought not to crush the politician. — 8. Must you annihilate the glory of the army? — 9. The soldiers should not have overthrown the barricade. — 10. Shall she speak of the revolution?

* 'Je devais parler' means also *I used to have to speak.*** 'J'avais dû parler' means also *I must have spoken.*

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 85, on p. 226.]

1. Are they to fall to-day? — 2. Ought we not to have disarmed them on the day of the uprising? — 3. I mustn't make you laugh. — 4. You should govern France. — 5. They must have fallen on the day of peril. — 6. I shall have had to attribute them to those who govern France. — 7. She used to have to make us laugh. — 8. Will you have to believe us? — 9. We had had to pronounce these speeches. — 10. They had to disarm France.

CX. AUXILIARY VERBS.**Lesson 163.****212. To want to: *like to, will, would.****IND. PRES.: *I will not sing or I won't sing or I don't want to sing***je ne'veux pas chanter**IND. PRES. PERF.: *I wouldn't sing or didn't want to sing*****je n'ai pas voulu chanter**DESCR. PAST: *I wouldn't sing or I didn't want to sing***je ne voulais pas chanter**IND. PAST PERF.: *I hadn't wanted to sing***je n'avais pas voulu chanter**NAR. PAST: *I wouldn't sing or I didn't want to sing†***je ne voulus pas chanter*** 'Vouloir' means also *to be willing*: see § 196, a.** Also *I haven't wanted to sing.*† 'Je voulus chanter' means also *I tried to sing.*

FUTURE: I shall not want to sing

je ne voudrai pas chanter

FUTURE PERF.: I shall not have wanted to sing

je n'aurai pas voulu chanter

CONDITIONAL: I shouldn't like to sing or I wouldn't sing

je ne voudrais pas chanter

*COND. PERF.: I wouldn't have sung**

je n'aurais pas voulu chanter

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 79, on p. 215.]

1. She tried to say a few words. — 2. They will not want to wait. — 3. Had the two peoples wanted to make an alliance? — 4. You will not have wanted to give me the formula. — 5. We wouldn't give you the measure. — 6. You would like to make them sing. — 7. Has he wanted to give us an example of royal pride? — 8. We should have liked to make an alliance between the two kings. — 9. He doesn't want to have a sad reign. — 10. Won't you sing?

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 80, on p. 218.]

1. We will not save the monarchy. — 2. They want to avoid the guillotine. — 3. You would have liked to make a sally. — 4. Hasn't she wanted to sing? — 5. He would like to have some wit. — 6. Wouldn't I throw them by handfuls? — 7. She will not have wanted to save me. — 8. Napoleon had not wanted to save soldiers. — 9. We shall want to avoid the flood. — 10. Louis would avoid the guillotine.

'n'aurais voulu chanter' means also I should have liked to sing or, in colloquial: I should like to have sung or I should have liked to have sung.

CXI. AUXILIARY VERBS.

Lesson 164.

213. When the subject of English *must* or *have to* is a noun or a personal or possessive or demonstrative pronoun, 'falloir' may be used in French. This verb is always in the third person singular, and its subject is invariably 'il,' *it*. 'Falloir' may be followed either (1) by an infinitive or (2) by 'que' with the subjunctive: *I must go* = (1) *it is necessary for me to go* = *il me faut aller*, or (2) *it is necessary that I go* = *il faut que j'aille*. If the subject of the English *must* or *have to* is a personal pronoun, either of these two constructions may be used in French; but the infinitive is generally preferred. If, on the other hand, the subject of the English auxiliary is a noun or a possessive or demonstrative pronoun, 'falloir' must be followed by the subjunctive.

(1) When a dependent infinitive is employed, 'falloir' is usually preceded by an indirect object-pronoun, which is of the same person and number as the subject of the English *must* or *have to*: *we must speak* = *it is necessary for us to speak* = *il nous faut parler*; *he must write* = *it is necessary for him to write* = *il lui faut écrire*. This object is, however, omitted in the following three cases: when the statement is general; when 'falloir' is accompanied by a negative; and commonly when the infinitive is itself preceded by a pronoun. Ex.: *we* or *you* or *they* (that is, *people in general*) *must have patience* = *il faut avoir de la patience*; *you mustn't do that* = *il ne faut pas faire cela*; *we must explain our*

selves = il faut nous expliquer. If this omission would cause any ambiguity, the subjunctive construction must be used.

(2) When 'falloir' is followed by the subjunctive, the subject of the English *must* or *have to* becomes, in French, the subject of the dependent verb: *John must see them* = *it is necessary that John see them* = il faut que Jean les voie. If 'falloir' is in the present, the present perfect, the future, or the future perfect, the dependent subjunctive must be in the *present* tense; but if 'falloir' is in the past, the past perfect, or the conditional, the past tense of the subjunctive must be used: *she has to come* = il faut qu'elle vienne; *she had to come* = il fallut qu'elle vînt. See § 89.

a. 'Falloir' has been conjugated in Chapter LXXII.

b. When, in English, *mustn't* is used, the negative, in French, is combined with 'falloir,' although it seems to belong logically to the dependent verb: *you mustn't laugh* = il ne faut pas rire; *she mustn't know of it* = il ne faut pas qu'elle le sache. Compare § 158, a.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 69, on p. 197.]

1. You must forgive those who make you laugh. — 2. Good humor had to take the place of genius. — 3. We shall have to cast a glance over our country's past. — 4. You mustn't love those who amuse you. — 5. The princes must not become popular. — 6. We must amuse ourselves. — 7. The people would have to cast a glance over the past. — 8. One must have a little wit. — 9. Our great men would have had to repeat agreeable jests. — 10. She has had to understand.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Must we not love our country? — 2. They had had to govern the people. — 3. The princes will have to repeat agreeable

jests. — 4. The jest had to be popular. — 5. The great man would have to understand the people. — 6. You mustn't make us laugh. — 7. I should have had to amuse the prince. — 8. You must amuse yourselves. — 9. Have I had to forgive those who have made me laugh? — 10. One must love the people.

CXII. AUXILIARY VERBS.

Lesson 165.

214. Examples of the use of 'falloir,' both with the infinitive and with the subjunctive, are given below:—

IND. PRES.: *I mustn't do it*

il ne faut pas le faire

il ne faut pas que je le fasse

IND. PRES. PERF.: *you have had to go away*

il t'a fallu partir

il a fallu que tu partes

DESCR. PAST: *he used to have to work*

il lui fallait travailler

il fallait qu'il travaillât

IND. PAST PERF.: *she had had to remain*

il lui avait fallu rester

il avait fallu qu'elle restât

NAR. PAST: *we had to go out*

il nous fallut sortir

il fallut que nous sortissions

FUTURE: *what will you have to say?*

que vous faudra-t-il dire

que faudra-t-il que vous disiez

CONDITIONAL: *they (masc.) would have to run*

il leur faudrait courir

il faudrait qu'ils courussent

COND. PERF.: *would they (fem.) have had to come?*

leur aurait-il fallu venir

aurait-il fallu qu'elles vissent

a. 'Falloir' is used also to translate the English verb *to need*, followed by a direct object.* In this case the subject of *need* becomes, in French, the indirect object of 'falloir'; if it is anything but a personal pronoun, it must be preceded by the preposition 'à.' Ex.: *what does this gentleman need* = *que faut-il à ce monsieur?* *do you need a book* = *vous faut-il un livre?* *he needed three francs* = *il lui fallait trois francs;* *I shall not need anything* = *il ne me faudra rien.*

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 70, on p. 199.]

1. What did the prince need? He needed a collection of puns. — 2. The king will have to read our history. — 3. You mustn't commit all conceivable crimes. — 4. Have you had to read a collection of puns? — 5. This pious monarch had to massacre his allies. — 6. I used to have to commit crimes. — 7. Had he had to reign alone? — 8. Should we have to be there? — 9. Clovis would have had to hear them read. — 10. I need only words.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. We need a civilizing monarch. — 2. The Franks would have had to go out. — 3. Would you have to come with me? — 4. Had they had to work? — 5. She used to have to run. — 6. The princes had to go away. — 7. Have I had to stay there? — 8. We mustn't say it. — 9. The monarch will have to do it. — 10. What would the king need? He would need allies.

* 'To need' is expressed also by 'avoir besoin de,' *to have need of.*

CXIII. AUXILIARY VERBS.

Lesson 166.

215. In English, in answering a question, we often repeat the auxiliary of the verb that has just been used; in French, on the other hand, we must repeat either the entire verb or no part of it at all.

Ex.: "*Is he coming?*" "*No, he isn't*" = «Vient-il?» «Non, il ne vient pas» [*or simply* «Non»]; "*Do you smoke?*" "*Yes, I do*" = «Fumez-vous?» «Oui, je fume» [*or simply* «Oui»]; "*Will she give it to me?*" "*Yes, she will*" = «Me le donnera-t-elle?» «Oui, elle vous le donnera» [*or simply* «Oui»]; "*Have I seen him?*" "*No, you haven't*" = «Est-ce que je l'ai vu?» «Non, vous ne l'avez pas vu» [*or simply* «Non»].

a. The modal auxiliaries, however, can be repeated without the dependent infinitive; in this case they are generally preceded by the object-pronoun 'le,' *it*. Ex.: *yes, I must* = oui, il le faut; *no, you mustn't* = non, il ne le faut pas; *yes, he can* = oui, il le peut; *no, we won't* = non, nous ne le voulons pas. But *I won't* is usually 'je ne veux pas.'

Exercise.

[NOTE.—See French Text 71, on p. 200.]

1. Do you know the song of king Dagobert? No, I don't. —
2. Hadn't he learned anything? No, he hadn't. —
3. Have I reigned? Yes, you have. —
4. Was Pepin fulfilling the duties of a king? Yes, he was. —
5. Must I bear this title? Yes, you must. —
6. Did Childeric know how to govern? No, he didn't. —
7. Can we deprive him of the throne? No, we can't. —
8. Am I

reigning? Yes, you are. — 9. Must we learn the song? No, you mustn't. — 10. Will you tell us some details? No, I won't.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Does he see us? No, he doesn't. — 2. Are you giving it to me? No, I'm not. — 3. Will they smoke? Yes, they will. — 4. Are you coming? Yes, I am. — 5. Must you deprive him of the throne? Yes, I must. — 6. May¹ I ask a question? No, you mustn't. — 7. Can you reign without having the title of king? Yes, I can. — 8. Could Pepin bear that title? Yes, he could. — 9. Would you like to learn the song? Yes, we should. — 10. Will you fulfil the duties of a king? No, I won't.

¹ See § 208, (1).

CXIV. AUXILIARY VERBS.

Lesson 167.

216. Review Chapters CVII–CX.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 72, on p. 201.]

1. Could you have put your hand on him? — 2. Ought I to have taken the king? — 3. Can you reply to the Englishman? No, I can't. — 4. Would he like to take the Frenchman? — 5. May I put my hand on the king? No, you mustn't. — 6. Shall we have to remember the saying of Louis VI? — 7. Did the French princes want to reply to the Englishmen? — 8. She is to exclaim "Never!" — 9. I couldn't have taken anything. — 10. We should have liked to leave a word for you.

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 73, on p. 202.]

1. They ought to have knocked at the door. — 2. Philip did not succeed in opening the door. — 3. Could she have given me

some supper? — 4. I had to sup with the Prince of Wales. — 5. You ought to be more chivalrous. — 6. They tried to beat the prisoner. — 7. I should have liked to sup with him. — 8. Please knock at the door! No, I won't. — 9. Are they to give some supper to the prisoners? — 10. I must have wounded him.

CXV. AUXILIARY VERBS.

Lesson 168.

217. Review Chapters CXI–CXII.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 74, on p. 203.]

1. Must he write to his mother? — 2. You mustn't forget honor. — 3. We have had to lose everything. — 4. The princes used to have to write the names of great battles. — 5. Did Francis have to lose everything? — 6. I had had to save them. — 7. Will you have to forget the conquest? — 8. You would have had to surround them. — 9. That great blockhead would have to write us a few words. — 10. One must forget everything.

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 75, on p. 206.]

1. One must be ready. — 2. The general and his master would have to conquer without me. — 3. We should have had to hang ourselves. — 4. Will you have to kill the king? — 5. Henry had had to have them hanged. — 6. Did I have to play with them? — 7. The honest general used to have to conquer without his master. — 8. Have you had to have the rogues killed? — 9. We mustn't believe it. — 10. A king must know how to play with human stupidity.

CXVI. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Lesson 86.

Lesson 169.

218. We have in modern colloquial English the following personal pronouns:—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
First Person:	<i>I, me</i>	<i>we, us</i>
Second Person:	<i>you</i>	<i>you</i>
Third Person:	<i>he, him; she, her; it</i>	<i>they, them</i>

It is to be noted that the pronouns of the first and third persons, except *it*, have separate forms for the nominative and the objective case; in the second person the cases are not distinguished.

We shall see presently that in French the distinctions are not quite the same: (1) there are separate forms for the two cases *everywhere except in the first and second persons plural*; (2) in the third person the direct object has not the same form as the indirect; (3) there is no word precisely corresponding to *it*; (4) in the third person plural the masculine pronoun is often different from the feminine; (5) many of the pronouns have, in the objective, different forms, according as they are emphatic or unemphatic.

219. The preposition that stands before an indirect object is in English *to*, in French 'à': *I have lent it to his brother* = *je l'ai prêté à son frère*.

If the indirect object is a noun, this preposition, which is sometimes suppressed in English, is never omitted in

French: *I shall tell my father everything* = *I shall tell everything to my father* = je dirai tout à mon père.

If, on the other hand, the indirect object is a personal pronoun, the preposition is left out far oftener in French than in English: *you give the books to them* or *you give them the books* = vous leur donnez les livres; *I speak to him* = je lui parle. In fact, 'à' is regularly omitted in French before an object-pronoun, except in the following cases: —

(1) With verbs of motion; with 'penser' and 'songer,' *to think* (see § 222); with 'être' meaning *to belong*; and with a few other verbs. Ex.: *he comes to me* = il vient à moi; *I think of him* = je pense à lui; *they belong to us* = ils sont à nous.

(2) With a verb that has for its *direct object* 'se' or a pronoun of the first or second person: *he gives himself to me* = il se donne à moi; *introduce me to them* = présentez-moi à eux; *she sent you to him* = elle vous envoya à lui.

(3) With a verb that has two or more indirect objects: *we have written to him and to her* = nous avons écrit à lui et à elle; *I am speaking to you and your friends* = je parle à vous et à vos amis.

(4) When the indirect object is to be made emphatic: *this book isn't yours* — *I gave it to him* = ce livre n'est pas à vous — je l'ai donné à lui.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 76, on p. 209.]

1. Have I not sent the king some troops? — 2. They gave him the beautiful city. — 3. The people are coming to us. —

4. Will you give the children a white plume? — 5. We have never written to them.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. The children have introduced themselves to us. — 2. The coat isn't his: he sent it to *me*. — 3. Hadn't you spoken to her? — 4. Introduce yourself to her. — 5. The white plume gave the king's troops the victory. — 6. We have spoken to him and his captains. — 7. Haven't I written to you? — 8. You are thinking of her: write to her! — 9. He tells me everything. — 10. I have told it to him and to you.

CXVII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Lesson 170.

220. Review Chapter CXVI, § 218.

a. When the same personal pronoun is the subject of several verbs, it is often left out before all the verbs except the first; this omission is rarer in French than in English. Ex.: *I shall observe, listen, and tell you everything* = j'observerai, j'écouterai et je vous dirai tout.

b. If any part of the subject or object represented by *they* or *them* is masculine, the pronoun must be rendered in French by the masculine form: *I have seen his father, his mother, and his sisters — they are all here* = j'ai vu son père, sa mère et ses sœurs, *ils* sont tous ici.

c. An English pronoun of the third person, used, in a general statement, as the antecedent of a relative clause, must be translated by a demonstrative and not by a personal pronoun: *he who does not work has no right to eat* = celui qui ne travaille pas n'a pas le droit de manger.

221. Review Chapter CXVI, § 219 with (1), (2), (3), (4).

a. When verbs of motion are not used in their literal sense, the 'à' is dropped: *an idea occurs to me* = il me vient une idée; *this gown is becoming to her* = cette robe lui va bien.

b. No 'à' is required between 'envoyer,' *to send*, and an object-pronoun; verbs of *sending* form an exception to the rule about verbs of motion: *he sends me a letter* = il m'envoie une lettre.

222. Sometimes a word that is a direct object in one language becomes an indirect object in the other: *to allow, to answer, to obey, to please* are, in French, 'permettre à,' *to allow to*, 'répondre à,' *to answer to*, 'obéir à,' *to obey to*, 'plaire à,' *to please to*; while *to ask for, to listen to, to wait for* are simply 'demander,' 'écouter,' 'attendre.'

Even when both languages use prepositions, they often require different ones; for instance, *of* after verbs meaning *to think*, and *from* after verbs meaning *to take away* are translated by 'à,' *to*. Ex.: *I think of my brother* = je pense à mon frère; *he has stolen a dollar from this gentleman* = il a volé un dollar à ce monsieur.

The expression 'être à' means *to belong to*.

a. When 'penser' means *to have an opinion*, it is followed by 'de': *what do you think of that* = que pensez-vous de cela?

b. When several nouns or pronouns follow a preposition, this preposition is generally expressed, in French, before every one of

the objects: *I give it to you and your brother* = je le donne à vous et à votre frère.

c. The use of the French prepositions must be learned by careful observation.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 77, on p. 211.]

1. The king has just given the ambassador a horse. — 2. The prince did not reply to him. — 3. The horse doesn't belong to the dauphin: the king has given it to *you*. — 4. I reply to you and your father. — 5. They give themselves to us: introduce yourself to them. — 6. Have you never thought of me? — 7. The prince gave the poor peasant a chicken. — 8. Come to me, and do not answer me. — 9. What do you think of the dauphin? He has stolen a hen from a poor peasant. — 10. He doesn't want to listen to me: he is waiting for the ambassador.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. I shall listen to the king and obey him. — 2. Wait for the prince and his sisters: they are coming to us. — 3. The king's saying will please the people. — 4. He who does not please the fathers of families will never win the hearts of the middle classes. — 5. An idea occurred to him, but it didn't please him. — 6. Do not send me the horse: I have not asked for it. — 7. What do you think of the coat? It isn't becoming to you. — 8. Have you allowed him to steal a horse from this peasant? — 9. The horse did not belong to him: the Spaniard had just given it to *me*. — 10. Listen to the peasant and his mother: they are answering us.

CXVIII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Lesson 87.

Lesson 285.

223. French personal pronouns may be divided into two classes, *conjunctive* and *disjunctive*. The **conjunctive** forms are closely connected with the verb, which they generally precede; they are always unemphatic. The **disjunctive** pronouns usually follow the verb, and do not necessarily stand near it; they are always more or less emphatic.

224. In general, the **conjunctive** pronouns are used (1) as subject of a verb, (2) as direct object, and (3) as indirect object without a preposition: (1) *I walk* = je marche; (2) *he sees me* = il me voit; (3) *she speaks to me* = elle me parle.

The **disjunctive** forms are employed (1) after prepositions, (2) as predicate nominative after the verb *to be*, and (3) when the pronoun stands without a verb: (1) *he thinks of me* = il pense à moi; (2) *it is I* = c'est moi; (3) "*Who will come?*" "*I*" = « Qui viendra? » « Moi. »

a. For some cases in which the disjunctive pronoun takes the place of the conjunctive form see § 241, (1), (2).

225. The *conjunctive* forms are given on the next page: —

SINGULAR.

	SUBJECT.	DIRECT OBJECT.	INDIRECT OBJECT.
<i>First Person:</i>	je	me	me
<i>Second Person:</i>	tu	te	te
<i>Third Person</i> {	<i>Masculine:</i> il	le	lui
	<i>Feminine:</i> elle	la	lui

PLURAL.

	SUBJECT.	DIRECT OBJECT.	INDIRECT OBJECT.
<i>First Person:</i>	nous	nous	nous
<i>Second Person:</i>	vous	vous	vous
<i>Third Person</i> {	<i>Masculine:</i> ils	les	leur
	<i>Feminine:</i> elles	les	leur

The conjunctive personal pronouns 'on,' 'en,' 'y' will be discussed in §§ 227, a; 228; 229; 230. For the conjunctive reflexive pronoun 'se' see Chapter LXVIII. For the difference between 'tu' and 'vous' see § 99.

226. Great care must be taken to distinguish the direct from the indirect object in the third person. Whenever English *him, her, it, them* can be replaced by *to him, to her, to it, to them*, these words are **indirect objects**.

Ex.: *offer him a cigar* = *offer a cigar to him* = offrez-lui un cigare; *I give her a flower* = *I give a flower to her* = je lui donne une fleur; *he told them a story* = *he told a story to them* = il leur raconta une histoire.

a. When the verb 'faire,' *to make*, is followed by a dependent infinitive, and this infinitive has a direct object, any object governed by the main verb is treated as an indirect object: *I make them read* = je les fais lire, *I make them read this book* = je leur fais lire ce livre; *he made her drink* = il la fit boire, *he made her drink it* = il le lui fit boire.

Exercise.

[NOTE.—See French Text 78, on p. 213.]

1. Who will rule the crowds? He! — 2. Who is governing us? It is he! — 3. Think of them! Have you given them a chicken? — 4. I shall make her read a story. — 5. We have offered him a flower.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. I have made them drink it. — 2. Have you offered Henry a cigar? — 3. We have told them a story. — 4. You cannot pronounce his name without thinking of him. — 5. Who is thinking of you? I! — 6. Do not offer them to *her*! — 7. I have told it to Henry and you. — 8. They offer themselves to us: we must give them this book. — 9. You ought to tell him a story. — 10. I don't want to give him a cigar.

CXIX. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.**Lesson 88.****Lesson 236.**

227. All French nouns are either masculine or feminine; hence no pronoun is needed exactly corresponding to English *it*. Personal pronouns take the gender and number of the nouns they represent. For instance, in speaking of 'un arbre,' *a tree*, which is masculine, we must say 'il est grand,' *it is tall*, 'je le vois,' *I see it*; but referring to 'la maison,' *the house*, a feminine noun, we say 'elle est grande,' *it is tall*, 'je la vois,' *I see it*. Similarly, in the plural, if we mean 'les arbres,' *the trees*, we say 'ils sont grands,' *they are tall*, 'je les vois,' *I see them*; and if we refer to 'les maisons,' *the houses*, we must say 'elles sont grandes,' *they are tall*, 'je les vois,' *I see them*.

a. *To it, to them*, referring to things, are generally translated by 'y': *I don't pay any attention to it* = je n'y fais pas attention; *she will conform to them* = elle s'y conformera.

228. Sometimes, however, *it* does not represent any particular noun, but something indefinite, or else a whole phrase, sentence, or idea. In this case it is translated as follows:—

SUBJECT: **ce** or **il**.—DIRECT OBJECT: **le**.—INDIRECT OBJECT: **y**.

Ex.: "*It rains*" "*It's true*" = «Il pleut» «C'est vrai»; "*What do you think of what he told us?*" "*I don't believe it*" = «Que pensez-vous de ce qu'il nous a dit?» «Je ne le crois pas»; "*Will you grant me what I have asked of you?*" "*No, I shall never consent to it*" = «M'accorderez-vous ce que je vous ai demandé?» «Non, je n'y consentirai jamais.»

a. Observe that 'ce' is used only in the nominative case.

A.—The verb 'être,' when preceded by 'ce' and followed by a *plural noun* or a pronoun of the *third person plural*, must itself be in the plural number: *it is your friends* = ce sont vos amis; *it was they* = c'étaient eux. But *it is we*, *it was you* = c'est nous, c'était vous.

B.—'Ce' and 'il' are not interchangeable. In general, 'ce' is used with 'être,' and 'il' with all other verbs: *it's the fifth of April* = c'est le cinq avril; *it appears* = il paraît; *it seems to me* = il me semble. In the following cases, however, 'il' takes the place of 'ce':—

(1) In telling the time of day: *it's two o'clock* = il est deux heures.

(2) When 'être,' used impersonally, is followed by a predicate adjective on which an infinitive or a clause depends: *it is good* = c'est bon, *it is good to work* = il est bon de travailler; *it is certain* = c'est certain, *it is certain that they will come* = il est certain qu'elles viendront.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 79, on p. 215.]

1. He gave us some formulas; it is they that make alliances between two peoples. — 2. Do you know what he has asked of me? I have not consented to it. — 3. It was two o'clock; I was waiting; it was raining. — 4. It was a sad reign. — 5. It is certain that the king will not wait.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. It is we that are giving him an example. — 2. Go to the kings: it is they who make alliances. — 3. What does he think of Lewis's political speeches? He doesn't pay any attention to them. — 4. I have given him the formula: will he conform to it? — 5. It was the fifth of April, don't you believe it? It's true. — 6. It isn't two o'clock, and we shall have to wait. It's sad! — 7. It would be sad to wait! I don't believe it. — 8. It seems to him that we ought to consent to it. — 9. It is I who ask it of you; will you consent to it? Never! — 10. We have told Lewis the formula, but he does not conform to it.

CXX. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Lesson 89.

Lesson 237.

229. In English we sometimes use *we*, *you*, or *they* in an indefinite way, meaning *someone*, or *people in general*; the word *people* itself frequently has the same sense. In French this idea is generally expressed by the pronoun 'on,' which is used only in the nominative case, and always requires the verb in the *third person singular*.

Ex.: *people say* = on dit; *they spoke of you* = on a parlé de vous; *you can't go in there* = on n'y entre pas; *we don't always say what we think* = on ne dit pas toujours ce qu'on pense; *folks get up early in the country* = on se lève de bonne heure à la campagne.

a. This same construction is very often employed to translate the English passive voice. Ex.: *they are not heard* = on ne les entend pas; *it will be given to you* = on vous le donnera; *it has been taken from me* = on me l'a pris; *we had been invited* = on nous avait invités; *has he been allowed to come* = lui a-t-on permis de venir?

b. 'L'on' is often used for 'on' after 'et,' and, 'si,' if, 'ou,' or, 'où,' where, and occasionally after 'que,' that. Ex.: *I spoke and was understood* = j'ai parlé et l'on m'a compris.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 80, on p. 218.]

1. They no longer think of us. — 2. It had been given to me.
- 3. After the flood we shall make no more sallies. — 4. You

mustn't speak of the king's indifference. — 5. The monarchy will not be saved.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. If people could save the monarchy, they would avoid the flood. — 2. They would have been thrown by handfuls. — 3. We shall not get up early; it is two o'clock. — 4. We have been told that she is coming: it's charming! — 5. It is charming to be able to make an elegant sally. — 6. You ought not to save a corrupt monarchy. — 7. Who has allowed him to come to us? I! — 8. It is they who have escaped the guillotine. — 9. It is we who have spoken to him. — 10. It ought to be given to *me*.

CXXI. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Lesson 90.

Lesson 238.

230. When the words *some* and *any* are unemphatic object-pronouns,* they are usually rendered in French by the pronoun 'en': *I give him some* = je lui en donne; *they haven't any* = ils n'en ont pas; *do you want some* = en voulez-vous? **

Moreover, the English phrases *of it* and *of them*, when they are unemphatic, are generally to be translated by 'en': *you speak of it* = vous en parlez; *I have four of them* = j'en ai quatre.

* When these words are used to modify a following noun or pronoun, they are adjectives; when they are used independently, they are pronouns: in *I have some money*, the *some* is an adjective; but in *give me some*, the *some* is a pronoun.

** It must be remembered that *none* is equivalent to *not any*, and *no more* to *not any more*. Ex.: *she had none* = elle n'en avait pas; *you shall have no more* = vous n'en aurez plus.

(1) When, in French, the direct object of a verb is used to specify a part of some thing or things previously mentioned, the word 'en' must be used with this verb, even though *of it* or *of them* is not expressed in English. Ex.: "*Did you drink all that wine?*" "*No, I drank about half*" = «Avez-vous bu tout ce vin?» «Non, j'en ai bu à peu près la moitié»; "*Hasn't he any faults?*" "*He has a few*" = «N'a-t-il pas de défauts?» «Il en a quelques-uns.»

a. It is especially to be noted that 'en' is required with a verb whose direct object is a word of number or quantity referring to things or persons just mentioned. Ex.: "*How many brothers have you?*" "*I have two*" = «Combien de frères avez-vous?» «J'en ai deux»; "*Has he any money?*" "*He has a great deal*" = «A-t-il de l'argent?» «Il en a beaucoup.»

b. The *adverbs* 'en,' *away*, and 'y,' *there*, occupy the same place as the conjunctive personal pronouns.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 81, on p. 222.]

1. Do you know any facts? I know a few. — 2. Who has told lies? Napoleon has told some. — 3. How many wars did he declare? He declared two. — 4. Has she drunk all that wine? She has drunk a great deal. — 5. Have they found no phrases? No, they have found none.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Do you promise me any facts? No, I don't promise any. — 2. Did he want any formulas? No, he didn't want any more. — 3. Some wine has been given you: have you drunk half? — 4. People ought not to give him any money; he has received a great deal. — 5. It is they who quench the nation's wrath. — 6. It is you who promise peace. — 7. It is splendid to know how

to quench all future wrath with a short sentence. — 8. Do you know what he has found? It is splendid! — 9. I have made him declare war. — 10. Is it two o'clock?

CXXII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Lesson 91.

Lesson 239.

231. In French, as in English, unless the sentence is arranged in interrogative order, a *subject-pronoun* regularly precedes its verb. Nothing can stand between a French subject-pronoun and its verb, except 'ne,' 'en,' 'y,' or a conjunctive object-pronoun. Notice that 'ne' follows the subject and precedes the object.

Ex.: *we sometimes speak* = nous parlons quelquefois; *they often come* = ils viennent souvent; *I have put it there* = je l'y ai mis; *he doesn't give it to me* = il ne me le donne pas.

232. Conjunctive *object-pronouns* stand immediately before their verb—in compound tenses, before the auxiliary—no matter whether the sentence be affirmative or interrogative. Nothing can stand between the pronoun and the verb, except 'en,' 'y,' or another conjunctive object-pronoun.

Ex.: *it is hard to please him* = il est difficile de lui plaire; *can you see us* = pouvez-vous nous voir? *she didn't want to buy them* = elle ne voulait pas les acheter; *you must sell it to me* = il faut me le vendre; *you offer them to her* = tu les lui offres; *he has not told it to you* = il ne vous l'a pas dit;

don't give it to them = ne le leur donne pas; *has she brought it to us* = nous l'a-t-elle apporté?

a. The object of an infinitive dependent on 'pouvoir' or 'vouloir' is occasionally placed before this auxiliary: *I cannot understand it* = je ne le puis comprendre.

b. When 'faire,' 'laisser,' 'entendre,' or 'voir' is used with a dependent infinitive, an object-pronoun belonging logically to the infinitive is joined to the main verb: *I have him read it* = je le lui fais lire; *he has let me see them* = il me les a laissé voir; *we have heard it said* = nous l'avons entendu dire; *you have seen her killed* = vous l'avez vu tuer. But if the infinitive is reflexive, it keeps its pronoun: *you have seen her kill herself* = vous l'avez vue se tuer.

A.—But in the positive imperative the pronoun stands after the verb, and is joined to it with a hyphen. In this case 'me' and 'te' are replaced by 'moi' and 'toi.'

Ex.: *hide yourself* = cache-toi or cachez-vous; *send her to me* = envoyez-la-moi; *tell it to him* = dis-le-lui; *let's go away* = allons-nous-en; *do it* = faites-le.

a. In the positive imperative 'm'en' and 't'en' are always used instead of 'moi-en' and 'toi-en': *give me some* = donnez m'en; *go away* = va-t'en.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 82, on p. 223.]

1. It is hard to speak of it. — 2. Have you never done it? —
3. I sometimes give him some. — 4. Hide me! Do not let me see them! — 5. You have a great deal of it: give me some.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. It will be hard not to speak of it. — 2. Speak to me of it! It will not be hard. — 3. Speak to me of peace! — 4. Hide (*tu*)

yourself and go away.— 5. Don't speak to him of war.— 6. It is not they who speak of it.— 7. It is you who are making them read it.— 8. What difference does it make! Have you not seen them hide themselves?— 9. Had they heard it said? Yes, but they did not believe it.— 10. Has it been brought? I cannot see it.

CXXIII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Lesson 92.

Lesson 240.

233. When a verb has two object-pronouns of different persons, the third person always stands nearest to the verb.

Ex.: *he doesn't send it to you* = il ne te l'envoie pas; *give them to me* = donne-les-moi; *I have brought them to you* = je vous les ai apportés; *tell it to us* = dites-le-nous; *do not relate it to me* = ne me le racontez pas; *has she offered it to you* = vous l'a-t-elle offert?

A.— If both object-pronouns are of the third person, the direct object precedes the indirect: *I give them to her* = je les lui donne. The reflexive 'se,' however, precedes all other object-pronouns: *she was saying it to herself* = elle se le disait. 'En' and 'y' follow all other forms: *go away* = allez-vous-en.

Ex.: *tell it to him* = dis-le-lui; *don't offer it to them* = ne leur offrez pas; *has he sent her to them* = la leur a-t-il envoyée? *he can't afford it* = il ne peut pas se le payer; *she places herself there* = elle s'y met; *put yourself there* = mettez-vous-y; *I give him some* = je lui en donne; *lend them some* = prêtez-leur-en.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 10, on p. 32.]

1. Name him to me. — 2. I propose it to her. — 3. He is going there. — 4. Let's give them some. — 5. She proposed it to you. — 6. It is embarrassing. — 7. Name them to her. — 8. You have given them to me. — 9. It is embarrassing to commute penalties. — 10. Don't name her to me.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. We were giving them to him. — 2. They are going to do it. — 3. Let's not give them any. — 4. You had proposed it to them. — 5. Let's go there. — 6. Don't name him to her. — 7. They will propose it to us. — 8. He is the first president. — 9. People would have given them to you. — 10. I was going to propose it to him.

CXXIV. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.**Lesson 241.**

234. The adverbs 'en' and 'y' occupy the same places as conjunctive pronouns, and are occasionally used where we should employ in English a pronoun with a preposition: *I come from it* = j'en viens; *you are in it* = vous y êtes. 'En' means *away, thence, from there*; 'y' means *there or thither*.

a. *There* is to be rendered by 'y' when it refers to a place already mentioned, has no emphasis, and cannot be accompanied by the act of pointing: *I have never been in Italy, but I intend to go there* = je n'ai jamais été en Italie, mais j'ai l'intention d'y aller. Otherwise *there* is 'là.' Compounds of 'là' are 'là-haut,' *up there*, 'là-bas,' *down there or over there*, 'là-dedans,' *in there*.

b. When, in French, a question contains an adverb or adverbial phrase denoting place, the verb used in the answer is regularly accompanied by 'en' or 'y.' Ex.: "*Does he come from Paris?*" "*Yes, he does*" = «Vient-il de Paris?» «Oui, il en vient»; "*Is she in France?*" "*No, she isn't*" = «Est-elle en France?» «Non, elle n'y est pas»; "*Are they going to Rome?*" "*Yes, they are*" = «Vont-ils à Rome?» «Oui, ils y vont.»

c. French adverbs other than those already discussed usually occupy the same position as the second part of a negation; that is, unless they begin the sentence, they stand just after the verb: *fortunately we saw her* = heureusement nous l'avons vue; *I often go* = je vais souvent; *people always say* = on dit toujours. An infinitive, however, nearly always precedes all adverbs except 'bien,' *well*, 'mal,' *ill*, and 'trop,' *too much*, which often stand before it: *I advise you to speak softly* = je vous conseille de parler bas; *he asks me to listen well* = il me prie de bien écouter. In compound tenses, short and common adverbs are generally put between the auxiliary and the participle, while long and unusual ones ordinarily follow the participle; but this rule has many exceptions: *she sang well* = elle a bien chanté; *she sang magnificently* = elle a chanté magnifiquement; *they went away yesterday* = ils sont partis hier. The words 'beaucoup,' *much*, 'tant,' *so much*, 'tout,' *all*, 'trop,' *too much*, whether used as adverbs or as pronouns, generally precede the past participle: *I have seen all* = j'ai tout vu.

Exercise.

1. Answer in French the following questions:—

1. Venez-vous de Paris?— 2. Vont-elles en France?— 3. Avons-nous été en Italie?— 4. Vient-il de Rome?— 5. Allez-vous à Monaco?

2. Translate into French:—

1. Do you intend to go to Paris? No, I shall never go there.
— 2. Who is in there? It is I.— 3. Has she been up there? No,

but she intends to go there. — 4. I always tell him not to talk too much. — 5. Fortunately he has not talked much.

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE. — For the vocabulary of these sentences, see French Texts 12, 13, 14, 15, 16.]

1. His guardian had just been taken from him. — 2. These vegetables belong to the prisoner; he is raising them for himself. — 3. Is she in France? Yes, she is. — 4. I saw him and his family; they had stayed at Monaco. — 5. He is always thinking of them; will they come back to him? — 6. Here are some vegetables: do you want any? The prisoners haven't had any, but I'll offer them some. — 7. He who risks nothing, wins nothing. — 8. The criminal will belong to us: he is going to offer himself to me. — 9. They told me they hadn't any food, but it appears they have a great deal; who has been giving them some? — 10. People say he hasn't given the prince anything.

CXXV. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Lesson 242.

235. Review Chapter CXIX, § 228, with A, B, (1), (2).

a. 'Ce,' and not 'il,' is employed before 'devoir' and 'pouvoir' used as auxiliaries of 'être,' unless a dependent clause follows: *it must be true* = *ce doit être vrai*; *it might be he* = *ce pourrait être lui*. 'Ce' occurs also in the parenthetical clause 'ce me semble.' In the case described under B, (2), 'ce' very often replaces 'il' in colloquial usage: *c'est bon de travailler*.

b. 'Il,' and not 'ce,' is used before 'être' in the expressions 'il en est ainsi,' *so it is*, 'il en est autrement,' *it is different*, 'il en est de même,' *it is the same*, and in the parenthetical clause 'il est vrai,' *it is true*.

c. 'Il' corresponds also to the English expletive *there*, used to take the place of the subject at the beginning of a sentence: *there was once a king* = il était une fois un roi; *there were three sisters* = il était trois sœurs; *there occurs to me an idea* = il me vient une idée.

d. The object-pronoun *it* is sometimes understood in English but in French it is nearly always expressed: *don't tell* = ne le dites pas; *I'll find out* = je le saurai.

e. Whenever *so* means *it*, we must translate it by 'le': *he thinks so* = il le croit; *you say so* = vous le dites; *do so* = faites-le. This *so* is often omitted in English, but it must be expressed in French: "*Are you satisfied?*" "*We are*" = Êtes-vous contents? » « Nous le sommes »; "*Are they French?*" "*They are*" = « Sont-ils français? » « Ils le sont »; "*Are you a soldier?*" "*I am*" = « Êtes-vous soldat? » « Je le suis. »

236. English *he, she, it, they*, used with the verb *to be* followed by a predicate noun, are frequently rendered by 'ce'; they are always so translated, in such cases, unless the noun they represent has just been mentioned. Ex.: *he is my best friend* = c'est mon meilleur ami; *they are socialists* = ce sont des socialistes; *she is my sister* = c'est ma sœur.

a. 'C'est' and 'ce sont' are sometimes used to translate *this is* or *that is, these are* or *those are*, followed by a noun or a pronoun: *this is he* = c'est lui; *those are my brothers* = ce sont mes frères. But when the predicate nominative is a noun or a possessive pronoun, these phrases are oftener rendered by the demonstrative adverbs 'voici,' *here is, here are*, and 'voilà,' *there is, there are*. Ex.: *these are my horses* = voici mes chevaux; *that is his carriage* = voilà sa voiture. *Here I am, there I am; here you are, there you are*; etc. = me voici, me voilà; te voici, te voilà; le or la voici, le or la voilà; nous voici, nous voilà; vous

voici, vous voilà; les voici, les voilà. *Here is some, here are some* = en voici; *there is some, there are some* = en voilà.

b. 'C'est' before an adjective is often equivalent to *that is*.
Ex.: *that's good* = c'est bon; *that's so* = c'est vrai.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — For vocabulary, see French Texts 12, 13, 14, 15, 16.]

1. There was once, it seems to me, a little prince who had no court. — 2. It must be the Prince of Monaco; tell me, is it he? — 3. You shall not know; it might well be he, it is true, but I shall not tell you. — 4. If it is so, I am not satisfied, and I shall never be. — 5. That is terrible! There are some prisoners: are they French? — 6. They are not. Here we are at Monaco! — 7. That is the minister. There is the king's palace. — 8. He is a terrible criminal; he might be a socialist. — 9. They are the servants. Here is the kitchen. — 10. That's good! Is it dinner time?

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Can't you introduce me to her? It's five o'clock. — 2. Give it to me: I want to have her see it. She would never have treated herself to it. — 3. Who wrote to him and his friends? Not I! — 4. Give me some! You have let me see them, but you haven't given them to me. — 5. I shall invite them to come here, and shall offer them a good dinner. — 6. Isn't she happy? No, she isn't. — 7. Place yourself there. I heard them say, "Let's run away!" Here is the jailer; speak of it to him. — 8. The convicts shall eat no more vegetables; that is an expense that must be suppressed. — 9. It was not you; it was they. — 10. Has she given them to you? The prince will not take them; don't offer them to him.

CXXVI. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Lesson 98.

Lesson 248.

237. The *disjunctive* forms are given below:—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>First Person:</i>	moi	nous
<i>Second Person:</i>	toi	vous
<i>Third Person</i> {	<i>Masculine:</i> lui	eux
	<i>Feminine:</i> elle	elles

For the difference between 'toi' and 'vous' see § 99.

238. The disjunctive *reflexive* pronouns are identical with the forms given above: *I am thinking of myself* = je pense à moi; *he is working for himself* = il travaille pour lui.

But in general statements, when the subject is indefinite, 'lui' is replaced by 'soi': *each one for himself* = chacun pour soi; *we mustn't talk of ourselves* = on ne doit pas parler de soi.

239. The disjunctive forms occupy, in general, the same positions as English personal pronouns.

240. In speaking of things without life, the French avoid, as far as possible, the use of disjunctive personal pronouns; hence a phrase that consists of a preposition of place followed by a personal pronoun denoting an inanimate object is generally replaced by an adverb. For 'en' and 'y' see § 234 and § 234, b.

Ex.: *this is the table*—*there is nothing under it*=voici la table—il n'y a rien dessous; *there's a vase on it*=il y a un vase dessus; *what is there in it*=qu'est-ce qu'il y a dedans?

Exercise.

1. We mustn't think of ourselves.— 2. Is she working for me? No, she is working for herself: each one for himself!— 3. I have never worked for myself: I have thought only of him.— 4. Here is a vase: what is there under it? I see nothing in it.— 5. What was there in it? I have seen nothing in it.

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE.—For vocabulary, see French Texts 2, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9, 10.]

1. It's good.— 2. You are thinking of it.— 3. It is good to think of one's self.— 4. He is the brother of the minister of foreign affairs.— 5. It is necessary to think of him.— 6. Give me some.— 7. It isn't they: it's I.— 8. I shall give you some.— 9. Let's not go there.— 10. I am showing them to him.— 11. He was showing them the sabre.— 12. Here is the Casino; there is nobody in it.— 13. They were going there.— 14. Give it to him.— 15. We are sending her to you.— 16. Send her two francs.— 17. People consult the minister.— 18. I haven't given him any.— 19. I address myself to you.— 20. Give them to me.

CXXVII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Lesson 94.

Lesson 244.

241. We have seen that the disjunctive pronouns are used (A) after prepositions, (B) as predicate nominative, and (C) without a verb: *he is with me*=il est avec moi, *I am working for you*=je travaille pour toi; *it*

was he = c'était lui, *it will be you* = ce sera vous, *it is they* = ce sont eux *or* ce sont elles; *neither he nor she* = ni lui ni elle, *you and I* = vous et moi. They are used also, instead of the conjunctive forms, in the following cases:—

(1) In stating separately the different parts of a compound subject or object: *he and his brother have arrived* = lui et son frère sont arrivés; *I know you and her* = je connais vous et elle. Often the compound subject or object, especially if it is of more than one person, is summed up by a conjunctive pronoun: *you and I know them* = vous et moi, nous les connaissons (*or* nous les connaissons, vous et moi); *you and they will not come* = vous ne viendrez pas, vous et eux (*or* vous et eux, vous ne viendrez pas); *she and I are here* = elle et moi, nous sommes ici (*or* nous sommes ici, elle et moi); *do you see him and his friend* = les voyez-vous, lui et son ami (*or* voyez-vous lui et son ami)?

(2) When the subject or object is at all emphatic. In this case the conjunctive form must be used also, except in the third person masculine, where it is sometimes omitted. Ex.: *you know me* = vous me connaissez, moi; *you are good* = tu es bon, toi (*or* toi, tu es bon); *he hasn't come* = il n'est pas venu, lui (*or* lui, n'est pas venu).

Exercise.

[NOTE.—For vocabulary, see French Texts 8, 9, 10.]

1. Think of me.—2. It isn't you.—3. He goes to it.—4. He and I have done it.—5. It was they.—6. Don't think of it.—7. The king had addressed himself to you and to me.—8. I shall go to him.—9. It will be you.—10. *He* doesn't do it.

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE. — For vocabulary, see French Texts 2, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9, 10.]

1. You have been spoken of. — 2. Don't give it to her! You and he have given me some. — 3. Show him to me. — 4. She sends him sixteen thousand francs. — 5. I should have spoken of it to you and to him. — 6. We should have given it to them. — 7. He has shown them to us. — 8. She sends him there. — 9. They have addressed themselves to us. — 10. Show her the two francs: they belong to me.

CXXVIII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Lesson 245.

242. Review Chapters CXXVI and CXXVII.

a. Stress is often supplemented, in English, by the use of a compound with the ending *self* or *selves*, which corresponds to French '—même' or '—mêmes': *she told me so herself* = elle me l'a dit elle-même; *we did it ourselves* = nous l'avons fait nous-mêmes; *we mustn't always be thinking of ourselves* = il ne faut pas toujours penser à soi-même. Great care must be taken to distinguish the ordinary English reflexive pronoun in *-self*, *-selves* from this emphatic compound: if the word is accented, it must be rendered in French by the form with '—même' or '—mêmes'; if it is unaccented, it must be translated by the simple reflexive pronoun. Ex.: *I wash myself* = je me lave moi-même, *I wash myself* = je me lave; *they killed themselves* = ils se sont tués eux-mêmes, *they killed themselves* = ils se sont tués. Notice that when the English compound in *-self* or *-selves* is the direct object of a reflexive verb, the reflexive pronoun must be used in French, whether the form with '—même' or '—mêmes' be required or not.

b. In French a subject or object is often made prominent by the use of a construction like *it is I that . . .*, *it is you that . . .*,

etc. Ex.: *he will never tell* = *it is not he that will tell* = *ce n'est pas lui qui le dira*; *you saw her* = *it is she that you saw* = *c'est elle que vous avez vue*; *I gave it to them* = *it is to them that I gave it* = *c'est à eux que je l'ai donné*. Notice that the relative is 'qui' when the English pronoun is subject, and 'que' when the English pronoun is object.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — For vocabulary, see French Texts 12, 13, 14, 15, 16.]

1. It was he! *I* had not stayed: I was treating myself to a good dinner at the Casino. — 2. It is we; *he* hasn't come here. — 3. Tell him so! No, what am I saying? Don't tell him! Don't do it! — 4. They are the prince's servants; they told me so themselves. — 5. *He* didn't give it to you: don't offer it to me! — 6. Do you see this prison? You may go into it. It appears there is nobody in it; the convicts have just gone out of it. — 7. Have you seen them executed? Who (*qui*) has not seen them? — 8. This office isn't theirs¹; I have given it to you and him. — 9. I have offered them to you. Here is the prince! Ought I to offer them to him? — 10. I was not thinking of him nor of her; I was thinking of myself.

¹ See § 219, (1).

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Has she heard it said? To whom (*qui*) has she spoken of it? — 2. I condemn myself; *you* don't condemn me. — 3. I shall have them read it. Don't they know how to read? — 4. Don't think of it any more: *he* will not run away; it would be too difficult. — 5. There are some prisoners in this prison; nobody shall go into it to-day. — 6. He and she would have run away, if they had not been watched. — 7. She has arrived at Monaco to-day, but she will stay here only five days. — 8. They are carrying some food for me and my friends. — 9. *You* had not come back, it was *he*! You had stayed there. — 10. They never could have run away.

CXXIX. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Lesson 95.

243. Review Chapters CXVI, CXVIII, CXXVI, CXXVII.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — For vocabulary, see French Texts 8, 9, 10.]

1. The general consulted him and her. — 2. Let's think of them. — 3. It wasn't I. — 4. Who has deliberated — he? — 5. I was thinking of it. — 6. Address yourself to me. — 7. *I* haven't consulted them. — 8. You and he will do it. — 9. Who is thinking of her? — 10. They are men.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. He showed me to them. — 2. Do it for me. — 3. She has addressed herself to us. — 4. Who will do it, you or I? — 5. They will not think of us. — 6. I shall show you to him. — 7. They have proposed it to you and to us. — 8. *They* don't think of it. — 9. She would do it for you. — 10. The operation would cost the king and me very dear.

CXXX. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Lesson 96.

244. Review Chapters CXIX–CXXIII.

Exercise.

Answer the following questions in French, constructing a complete sentence for each reply, and using, whenever it

is possible, pronouns and adverbs instead of nouns and phrases:—

1. Ai-je été condamné à la prison perpétuelle? — 2. A-t-on voulu me chasser du pays? — 3. Est-il resté à Monaco? — 4. M'avez-vous enlevé mon gardien? — 5. Combien de prisonniers ont-ils? — 6. Voulait-on condamner le prisonnier à mort? — 7. Auriez-vous voulu chasser le geôlier du pays? — 8. Les condamna-t-on? — 9. Vous chasseront-ils? — 10. Ai-je signifié cet arrêt au prisonnier? — 11. A-t-on enlevé au prisonnier ses gardiens? — 12. S'est-il dit qu'il restera? — 13. M'avez-vous trouvé des gardiens? — 14. La prison est-elle à Monaco? — 15. Combien de prisonniers reste-t-il?

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE. — For vocabulary, see French Texts 12, 13, 14, 15, 16.]

1. Are you and he going to the Casino? That's good! There he is; he is your best friend. — 2. Here is the hotel; there's nobody in it; let's go into it. — 3. What (*que*) are they going to do? Tell me! What has been ordered? — 4. Did you see the prisoner? He is the Prince of Monaco. He and I are going to run away. — 5. Here are the convicts; does he want to see them? — 6. Don't you see that it's raining? It would be difficult to run away to-day. Let's not think of it. — 7. It is difficult to fasten the door on the inside; you will never be able to do it. — 8. We have seen her at the hotel, and have told her everything. — 9. He has ordered me to give them to him. — 10. Offer it to me! I shall never accept it.

CXXXI. POSSESSIVES.

Lesson 97.

Lesson 246.

245. We have in modern colloquial English the following possessive pronouns and adjectives:—

	ADJECTIVES.		PRONOUNS.	
First Person:	<i>my</i>	<i>our</i>	<i>mine</i>	<i>ours</i>
Second Person:	<i>your</i>	<i>your</i>	<i>yours</i>	<i>yours</i>
Third Person	Masculine:	<i>his</i> <i>their</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>theirs</i>
	Feminine:	<i>her</i> <i>their</i>	<i>hers</i>	<i>theirs</i>
	Neuter:	<i>its</i> <i>their</i>	<i>its</i>	<i>theirs</i>

The *adjectives* must be carefully distinguished from the *pronouns*. It will be seen that *his* and *its* may be either pronouns or adjectives: they are adjectives when they modify a noun, as in *you have his pencil*; they are pronouns when they are used independently, as in *I have his but not hers*.

246. French possessives agree in gender and number with the thing possessed: *my brother* = *mon frère*, *my sister* = *ma sœur*, *my friends* = *mes amis*. They do not agree in gender with the possessor; so *his*, *her*, and *its* are all to be translated by the same word: *his age*, *her age*, *its age* = *son âge*; *his youth*, *her youth*, *its youth* = *sa jeunesse*; *his merits*, *her merits*, *its merits* = *ses qualités*.

247. The French possessive *adjectives* are given on next page:—

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	BOTH GENDERS.
<i>my:</i>	mon	ma	mes
<i>your:</i>	ton	ta	tes
<i>his, her, its:</i>	son	sa	ses
<i>our:</i>	notre	notre	nos
<i>your:</i>	votre	votre	vos
<i>their:</i>	leur	leur	leurs

a. 'Ton,' 'ta,' 'tes' are the forms corresponding to 'tu'; 'votre' and 'vos' correspond to 'vous.' Ex.: *have you your hat* = as-tu ton chapeau *or* avez-vous votre chapeau?

Exercise.

Use the possessive adjectives of all the different persons with every noun in French Text 14, p. 41, except 'fois,' 'renom,' 'soin,' and proper names.

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 14.]

1. Her breakfast was not good. — 2. After dinner they will come back to their prison. — 3. My situation had become awkward. — 4. Go out of our states. — 5. I should not like to risk my five francs. — 6. Treat yourself to a good breakfast in her hotel. — 7. The criminal has never returned to his prison. — 8. Fasten (*tu*) your door carefully on the inside. — 9. The court has met again; your situation is growing awkward. — 10. Offer your judges a good dinner. — 11. He had offered a good breakfast to his court. — 12. The convict has gone out of my states. — 13. You (*tu*) have treated yourself to a good dinner in your hotel. — 14. Our door is not fastened on the inside. — 15. I sometimes go into their hotels.

CXXXII. POSSESSIVES.

Lesson 98.

Lesson 247.

248. The masculine forms of the possessive adjective are used before a noun in the masculine singular, the feminine forms before a noun in the feminine singular, and the plural forms before any plural noun. There are no neuter nouns in French. Ex.: *your arm* = ton bras; *your hand* = ta main; *your fingers* = tes doigts.

Before a word beginning with a vowel sound the feminine forms 'ma,' 'ta,' 'sa,' are changed to 'mon,' 'ton,' 'son': *my Alice* = mon Alice; *your amiable aunt* = ton aimable tante; *his excellent wife* = son excellente femme.

249. When the thing possessed forms a part of the possessor, and is used as the direct object of a verb, the possessive adjective is generally replaced, in French, by an indirect object-pronoun and a definite article.

Ex.: *he took my hand* = il m'a pris la main; *they will cut your throat* = ils te couperont la gorge; *she has broken her arm* = elle s'est cassé le bras; *the dog was biting his leg* = le chien lui mordait la jambe; *we have cut our fingers* = nous nous sommes coupé les doigts; *he will pull out your teeth* = il vous arrachera les dents; *the carriage has run over their feet* = la voiture leur a écrasé les pieds.

Exercise.

1. Use the possessive adjectives of all the different persons with every noun in French Text 8, p. 25. 'Assassin,'

'déplacement,' 'doute,' 'lieu,' 'Paris,' 'prix' are masculine; 'opération' is feminine.

2. Give six answers, containing six different conjunctive object-pronouns, to this question: *à qui coupera-t-on le cou?* Translate the answers.

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 8.]

1. A carriage ran over his leg. — 2. The operator has pulled my teeth. — 3. Has she cut her throat? — 4. Has His Majesty's dog bitten your feet? — 5. The scoundrels had not cut their fingers. — 6. I should have taken his hand. — 7. Have you broken your arm? — 8. The murderer cut off their hands. — 9. We had broken our arms. — 10. Pull her teeth. — 11. Don't run over our feet. — 12. My brother would have broken his neck. — 13. His wife took his hand. — 14. Her excellent aunt has not broken her leg. — 15. My operation has cost me very dear; I have had my arm cut off.

CXXXIII. POSSESSIVES.

Lesson 248.

250. Review Chapter CXXXI.

a. When a possessive adjective modifies several nouns, it is generally expressed before every one of them; it must always be repeated if the nouns require different forms of the possessive: *my father and mother* = *mon père et ma mère*.

b. When addressing any one by a noun expressing relationship, the French use the possessive adjective: *good morning, father* = *bon jour, mon père*.

c. *Own* between a possessive adjective and a noun may be translated either by using the adjective 'propre,' which occupies

the same place as *own*, or by placing after the noun 'à' followed by a disjunctive personal pronoun corresponding in gender, number, and person with the possessor: *your own hands* = vos propres mains; *his own son* = son fils à lui.

251. Review Chapter CXXXII.

a. The construction described in § 249 is sometimes used when the thing possessed is not the direct object of a verb: *he stepped on my foot* = il m'a marché sur le pied.

b. A similar construction often serves to translate the English *one of my . . . , one of your . . .*, etc., used as direct object of a verb: *the dentist extracted one of his teeth* = le dentiste lui arracha une dent.

c. When the possessor is the subject of the sentence, and no ambiguity is possible, the object-pronoun is regularly omitted: *I have lost my memory* = j'ai perdu la mémoire; *he put his hand into his pocket* = il mit la main dans sa poche.

d. When the possessor is a thing, the object-pronoun is 'en': *I like this country, but I don't like its inhabitants* = j'aime ce pays, mais je n'en aime pas les habitants.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — For vocabulary, see French Texts 8, 9, 10.]

1. Good morning, brother! — 2. I like my prison and jailer. —
3. The general decapitated the rascal with (*de*) his own hands. —
4. The scoundrel stepped on her foot. — 5. The first dentist in (*de*) Paris has just pulled one of my teeth. — 6. The prisoners had lost their memory. — 7. The soldier would have placed his hand on his sabre. — 8. Must I decapitate my own son? — 9. I have a sabre, but I haven't practice enough with it to cut off his head. —
10. We like the republic, but we don't like its president.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Yes, brother, you (*tu*) ought to love your republic and president. — 2. The jailer took her hand. — 3. The general hasn't any

'men. — 4. I have shown him the Supreme Court, but I haven't shown him its president. — 5. The soldiers had cut off her head. — 6. They would have broken your neck. — 7. Has the general lost his head? — 8. The soldier has broken one of my teeth. — 9. I should have thrown (*jeter*) it at his head. — 10. Has she broken her neck?

CXXXIV. POSSESSIVES.

Lesson 99.

Lesson 249.

252. The French possessive *pronouns* will be found below:—

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
<i>mine:</i>	le mien	la mienne	les miens	les miennes
<i>yours:</i>	le tien	la tienne	les tiens	les tiennes
<i>his, hers, its:</i>	le sien	la sienne	les siens	les siennes
<i>ours:</i>	le nôtre	la nôtre	les nôtres	les nôtres
<i>yours:</i>	le vôtre	la vôtre	les vôtres	les vôtres
<i>theirs:</i>	le leur	la leur	les leurs	les leurs

The first part of the pronoun is simply the definite article, 'le,' 'la,' 'les.' When the preposition 'de,' *of* or *from*, or the preposition 'à,' *to* or *at*, immediately precedes 'le' or 'les,' the preposition and the article are contracted into one word: de + le = **du**, de + les = **des**, à + le = **au**, à + les = **aux**. 'La' remains unchanged.

Ex.: *of mine* (masc. sing.) = du mien, *of yours* (fem. sing.) = de la tienne, *of his* (fem. pl.) = des siennes; *to ours* (masc. sing.) = au nôtre, *to yours* (fem. sing.) = à la vôtre, *to theirs* (masc. pl.) = aux leurs.

a. 'Le tien,' 'la tienne,' 'les tiens,' 'les tiennes,' are the forms corresponding to 'tu'; 'le vôtre,' 'la vôtre,' 'les vôtres' correspond

to 'vous.' Ex.: *you have yours* (masc. sing.) = tu as le tien *or* vous avez le vôtre.

253. These pronouns are masculine or feminine, singular or plural, according to the gender and number of the nouns they represent.

Ex.: *where are your brothers? here is mine* = où sont vos frères? voici le mien; *there are ours* = voilà les nôtres; *have you seen my sister? I have seen yours* = as-tu vu ma sœur? j'ai vu la tienne; *where are his* = où sont les siennes?

Exercise.

Substitute for every noun in French Text 8, p. 25, all the different possessive pronouns that might represent it. 'Bois,' 'frais,' 'francs' are masculine; 'délibérations' is feminine.

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Texts 8, 9, 10.]

1. Have you seen my list? I have seen yours. — 2. We have addressed a request to our Supreme Court; have they addressed themselves to theirs? — 3. The king has commuted your penalty, but he has not commuted ours. — 4. Your prince will not reply: address yourself to mine. — 5. I have spoken to you (*le*), brother, of my general; speak to me of yours. — 6. Where are your men? Address yourself to ours. — 7. There is the list of my expenses; show me the list of yours. — 8. There are my two francs; where are hers? — 9. He has spoken to us of the general's operations, but he has not spoken of his. — 10. They have shown me your men and theirs.

CXXXV. POSSESSIVES.**Lesson 100.****254.** Review Chapters CXXXI, CXXXII, CXXXIV.

255. When the English verb *to be* with a possessive pronoun is equivalent to the verb *to belong to* with a personal pronoun, the French use 'être à' followed by a disjunctive object-pronoun.

Ex.: *it is mine* = *it belongs to me* = *c'est à moi*; *the book is his* = *le livre est à lui*; *this hat was hers* = *ce chapeau était à elle*; *they will be ours* = *ils seront à nous*.

a. The same construction is used with nouns and interrogative pronouns: *whose is this house* = *à qui est cette maison?* *it is my uncle's* = *elle est à mon oncle*; *those horses are Paul's* = *ces chevaux-là sont à Paul*.

Exercise.

1. Give eight answers, containing eight different disjunctive personal pronouns, to the question: *à qui est la maison?* Translate the answers.

2. Translate into French:

1. It is my book, it is not hers. — 2. The horse has bitten my arm. — 3. Has he broken our carriage or his? — 4. Are you (*tu*) speaking of my brothers or of yours? — 5. They are not your horses, they are ours. — 6. I was not speaking to his amiable aunt, I was speaking to mine.

Supplementary Exercise.

Supply the French possessives in the following sentences: —

1. *My* opération m'a coûté plus cher que *his*. — 2. *Her* frères lui sont plus chers que *mine*. — 3. *His* excellente femme est moins exigeante que *yours*. — 4. Elle pense à *your* parents et *hers*. — 5. Parle-t-il de *my* sœurs ou *his*? — 6. Ces chapeaux-là sont *ours*, ils ne sont pas *yours*. — 7. Cette maison est-elle *his* ou *hers*? — 8. Elle n'est pas *theirs*, elle est *mine*. — 9. Les chevaux sont *thine* et *thy sister's*. — 10. *Whose* est ce livre? Est-il *yours* ou *your uncle's*? — 11. Ne coupez pas *my* gorge! — 12. La voiture écrasa *his* jambe. — 13. Le chien a mordu *her* bras. — 14. Vous coupez *your* doigts. — 15. Je n'ai pas pris *your* main.

CXXXVI. RELATIVES.**Lesson 101.****Lesson 250.**

256. English relative pronouns often have different forms, according as they stand for persons or for things.

	PERSONS.	THINGS.
Nominative:	<i>who</i> or <i>that</i>	<i>which</i> or <i>that</i>
Possessive:	<i>whose</i>	<i>whose</i>
Objective:	<i>whom</i> or <i>that</i>	<i>which</i> or <i>that</i>

The relative *that* is always equivalent to *who*, *whom*, or *which*; so it need not be separately mentioned in the following paragraphs.

a. The relative *that* must not be confounded with the demonstrative pronoun, — as in *don't do that*, — the demonstrative adjective, — as in *give me that stick*, — nor the conjunction, — as in *he assured me that he would do it*.

b. The relative pronouns *who*, *whose*, *whom*, *which* must be distinguished from the interrogative words of like form. The relative pronouns refer to an antecedent, and are used to begin a relative clause, as in *the man whom you see*; the interrogative words serve to introduce either a direct or an indirect question,* as in *whom do you see?* or *tell me whom you see.*

257. The French relative pronouns are: **qui**, **que**, **quoi**, **dont**, **lequel**. Their use will be explained below. Before a vowel sound the *e* of 'que' is always replaced by an apostrophe. The *i* of 'qui' is never lost.

Ex.: *the ticket that has been given me* = le billet qu'on m'a donné; *the play that he is speaking of* = la pièce dont il parle; *he who loves* = celui qui aime.

(1) 'Lequel' changes its form according to the gender and number of the word it represents: —

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Masculine:</i>	lequel	lesquels
<i>Feminine:</i>	laquelle	lesquelles

The first part of the word is always the definite article, 'le,' 'la,' 'les.' When 'lequel,' 'lesquels,' or 'lesquelles' is preceded by 'de,' *of* or *from*, or by 'à,' *to* or *at*, the preposition and the pronoun are combined: —

de + lequel = duquel	à + lequel = auquel
de + lesquels = desquels	à + lesquels = auxquels
de + lesquelles = desquelles	à + lesquelles = auxquelles

'Laquelle' remains unchanged.

(2) The other relative pronouns do not change for gender and number.

* An *indirect question* is a subordinate clause introduced by an interrogative word and dependent on a verb of asking, telling, perceiving, or learning. The French adverbs 'voici' and 'voilà' (see § 236, a) are often equivalent to a verb of telling.

Exercise.

Pick out all the relative pronouns in French Texts 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10, 12, 13.

Supplementary Exercise.

In the following sentences, supply, in the place of the English relative, the proper form of 'lequel':—

1. La sœur de notre ami, *whom* je n'ai pas vue depuis deux ans, arrivera demain. — 2. Je viens de voir les enfants du président, *whom* vous n'avez jamais vus. — 3. Le chien de ma tante, *which* mordait tout le monde, a été tué. — 4. J'ai trouvé les clefs de la prison, *which* vous avez perdues hier. — 5. Que disent les juges *to whom* nous nous adressons? — 6. Je connais les jeunes filles *to whom* vous envoyez des fleurs. — 7. Qui est le pauvre paysan *to whom* il a donné un franc? — 8. Voilà les chevaux du roi, *of which* je vous ai parlé. — 9. Voici les sœurs de notre ami, *of whom* il nous a parlé hier. — 10. Qui est le président de la république, *of whom* vous m'avez parlé? — 11. Où est la nièce du ministre, *of whom* he speaks so often? — 12. Que fait la pauvre femme *to whom* vous avez donné deux francs? — 13. Voilà les juges *to whom* il a soumis ce cas embarrassant. — 14. Quel est le gouvernement *to which* on a envoyé un mémoire? — 15. Qui sont les jeunes filles *to whom* elle a écrit?

CXXXVII. RELATIVES.**Lesson 102.****Lesson 251.**

258. In most cases the French relative pronouns do not distinguish persons from things. On the other hand, a French relative pronoun that is the object of a verb generally has a different form from one that is the object of a preposition.

		PERSONS.	THINGS.
NOMINATIVE:		<i>who</i> = qui	<i>which</i> = qui
POSSESSIVE:		<i>whose</i> = dont	<i>whose</i> = dont
OBJECT	OF VERB:	<i>whom</i> = que	<i>which</i> = que
	OF PREPOSITION:	<i>whom</i> = qui	<i>which</i> = le quel

Relative pronouns have the gender and number of the words they represent: *the men who have come* = les hommes qui sont venus; *the woman who has come* = la femme qui est venue; *the cows that I have bought* = les vaches que j'ai achetées. The nominative 'qui' is of the same person as its antecedent: *you who speak* = vous qui parlez; *it is I that did it* = c'est moi qui l'ai fait.

(1) 'Dont' is generally used to translate not only *whose* but also *of whom* and *of which*. Ex.: *the ball you were speaking of* = *the ball of which you were speaking* = le bal dont vous parliez. After prepositions, however, 'dont' is always replaced by 'de' with 'lequel': *the children to whose father I have written* = *the children to the father of whom I have written* = les enfants au père desquels j'ai écrit.

(2) Since 'lequel' has special forms for the different numbers and genders, it is occasionally used, to avoid ambiguity, instead of the nominative 'qui' and the objective 'que': *the doctor's wife, whom you know, is here* = la femme du médecin, laquelle vous connaissez, est ici. Moreover, 'lequel' often takes the place of 'qui' after prepositions: *the children for whom he is working* = les enfants pour lesquels il travaille.

a. French 'dont,' like English *whose*, stands at the beginning of the relative clause. But *whose* must be immediately followed by the name of the thing possessed, without any article; whereas

after 'dont' the name of the thing possessed requires the definite article or some other modifier, and occupies the position it would have if no relative pronoun were used. Ex.: *a little boy whose father I know* = un petit garçon dont je connais le père.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — For vocabulary, see French Texts 11, 12, 13.]

1. This is the problem that we must solve. — 2. He is a guardian whose least faults we know. — 3. That is an expenditure of which you will render me an account. — 4. Watch the travellers who are coming. — 5. I have a friend on whom I can count (*compter*). — 6. That is the door before which they will pass. — 7. There are some servants in the palace. — 8. These are the travellers whom I was watching. — 9. It is the king to whose minister I shall render an account. — 10. You must suppress the expenditures of which I have made you a list.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. It is the prince who is sleeping. — 2. The travellers to whom you used to bring victuals are before the door. — 3. These are expenses which you don't think of. — 4. It is you who carry the culprit's food. — 5. There is the palace I was speaking of. — 6. Do you know the prisoner to whose guardian you were speaking? — 7. There was, in the prison, a captive whom they had asked to run away. — 8. There is the prisoner whose food she has brought. — 9. I have consulted the minister who has come to the palace. — 10. The sovereign, to whom you must render an account of it, has come to consult me.

CXXXVIII. RELATIVES.

Lesson 108.

Lesson 252.

259. The English relative pronoun *what* really combines a demonstrative pronoun with a relative, and stands for *that which*. Each part may be either nominative or objective. When the *which* is

subject of a verb,	<i>what</i> = ce qui
object of a verb,	<i>what</i> = ce que
object of a preposition,	<i>what</i> = ce . . . quoi

When, however, the *which* is the object of the preposition *of*, we must nearly always translate *what* by 'ce dont.'

Ex.: *what isn't clear isn't French* = *that which isn't clear isn't French* = ce qui n'est pas clair n'est pas français; *what you say isn't clear* = *that which you say isn't clear* = ce que vous dites n'est pas clair; *I do what suits me* = *I do that which suits me* = je fais ce qui me plaît; *he does what I tell him* = *he does that which I tell him* = il fait ce que je lui dis; *you will not find what you are looking forward to* = *you will not find that to which you are looking forward* = vous ne trouverez pas ce à quoi vous vous attendez; *we haven't what you speak of* = *we haven't that of which you speak* = nous n'avons pas ce dont vous parlez.

a. 'Quoi' is used also, after prepositions, to translate English *which* or *that* referring to an indefinite antecedent, see § 262, b.

260. For *what* in indirect questions see Interrogatives.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — For vocabulary, see French Texts 11, 12, 13.]

1. Eat what you have. — 2. You don't know what will please me. — 3. They will suppress the expenses of which you are thinking. — 4. Think of the jailer whose office you have suppressed. — 5. I was eating what you had carried to the palace. — 6. Have you what I am speaking of? — 7. We never find what we look forward to. — 8. She carried him what had remained. — 9. I give her what she demands. — 10. He watches what we are doing.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Do what I tell you. — 2. I know what you are thinking of. — 3. They have restored to her what I have spoken of. — 4. The prisoner did what suited him. — 5. Do you know what he has become? — 6. What we are doing may last forever. — 7. I eat what has remained. — 8. Bring me what I demand. — 9. He doesn't know what the prince will ask him to do. — 10. What remains is the office of jailer.

CXXXIX. RELATIVES.

Lesson 253.

261. Review Chapters CXXXVI and CXXXVII.

a. In English the relative pronoun is sometimes left out; in French it is never omitted: *there is the gentleman (whom) we saw yesterday* = voilà le monsieur que nous avons vu hier; *it's the man (that) we were speaking of* = c'est l'homme dont nous par-

lions; *is it the friend (that) you were going to write to* = est-ce l'ami à qui vous alliez écrire?

b. An English relative clause sometimes ends with a preposition; in French the preposition must precede the pronoun it governs: *here is the lady (that) she dined with* = voici la dame avec qui elle a dîné; *where is the table (that) he put it on* = où est la table sur laquelle il l'a posé?

262. Review Chapter CXXXVIII.

a. *Which* representing a whole sentence or idea, when used as subject or as direct object of a verb, is translated by 'ce qui' or 'ce que': *he spoke very loud, which made us smile* = il parla très haut, ce qui nous fit sourire. *Everything that or all that* (singular) is 'tout ce qui' or 'tout ce que,' according as *that* is nominative or objective: *everything that is here* = tout ce qui est ici; *all that exists* = tout ce qui existe; *everything (that) you see* = tout ce que vous voyez; *all (that) I have* = tout ce que j'ai. In the parenthetical clause 'qui plus est,' *what's more*, 'qui' takes the place of 'ce qui.'

b. English *which* or *that*, governed by a preposition, and referring to an indefinite antecedent, such as *nothing*, *something*, *everything*, or a whole sentence or idea, is translated by 'quoi': *I have nothing that I can count upon* = je n'ai rien sur quoi je puisse compter; *I gave him a dollar, whereupon (or upon which) he left me* = je lui donnai un dollar, sur quoi il me quitta. 'De quoi' generally means *wherewith*: *he has nothing to live on* = he has nothing *wherewith* to live = il n'a pas de quoi vivre.

c. English *at which*, *in which*, *into which* are often rendered by French 'où,' *where*: *the village I live in* = *the village in which I live* = le village où je demeure. So *from which* or *out of which* frequently corresponds to 'd'où,' *whence*: *the house he came out of* = *the house out of which he came* = la maison d'où il est sorti.

d. 'Qui' is sometimes used for 'celui qui,' meaning *he who* or *him who*. Ex.: *silence means consent* = *he who says nothing consents* = *qui ne dit rien consent*.

e. English *which*, used as a relative *adjective*, corresponds to 'lequel': *I owe you fifty francs, which sum I shall send you tomorrow* = *je vous dois cinquante francs, laquelle somme je vous enverrai demain*.

Exercise.

1. Here is the lady he has spoken of. — 2. Where is the gentleman I was going to dine with? — 3. I have just written to the lady you saw yesterday. — 4. I know the gentleman she is writing to. — 5. Here are the tables we put them on. — 6. I shall have nothing to live on. — 7. He had nothing he could count on. — 8. Here is the house she lives in. — 9. I wrote to him yesterday, which didn't please him. — 10. He gave me a dollar, which sum I had sent him yesterday.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. He who has nothing owes nothing. — 2. He did everything that might make you smile. — 3. I know everything you do. — 4. Where is the house she came out of? — 5. I have left my village to come here, which village no longer exists. — 6. We owe them all that we have and, what is more, all that we have ever had. — 7. He said that I spoke very loud, which I never do. — 8. He consented, whereupon I left him. — 9. Have you seen the house I was speaking of? — 10. Do not smile! It is the gentleman we dined with yesterday.

CXL. RELATIVES.

Lesson 104.

263. Review Chapters CXXXVI–CXXXVIII.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Texts 8, 9.]

Supply the French relative pronouns in the following sentences:—

1. Envoyez-moi *what* vous avez. — 2. C'est un mémoire *that* j'ai envoyé. — 3. Il faut prélever un impôt *which* monte à douze mille francs. — 4. Il faudrait le faire décapiter, *which*¹ amènerait des troubles inconnus dans l'État. — 5. J'ai *what* me suffit. — 6. Ce sont les troubles à *which* nous songeons. — 7. Songez à *what* vous faites. — 8. Est-ce le gueux *who* sera décapité? — 9. C'est un soldat *that* on a décapité. — 10. Envoyez-moi le soldat *whom* vous avez consulté.

¹ See the last clause of French Text 12, on p. 39.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Est-ce le général à *whom* vous songez? — 2. *What* il répond suffirait pour amener des troubles. — 3. Il s'acquitte de *what* ne demande pas une grande expérience. — 4. Est-ce une tâche *of which* ils s'acquitteront? — 5. Elle me demande *what* vous m'avez envoyé. — 6. Ce sont de tâches à *which* vous ne songez guère. — 7. C'est une tâche pour *which* ils n'avaient pas une pratique suffisante. — 8. Est-ce le prince *who* convoque la Cour suprême? — 9. Le prince convoqua la Cour, à *which* il soumit ce cas embarrassant. — 10. Ce fut la Cour suprême *that* délibéra. — 11. C'est un moyen à *which* on ne songe plus. — 12. Le prince, à *whom* on avait proposé ce moyen, n'hésita plus. — 13. Est-ce le prisonnier *whose* on a commué la peine? — 14. C'est la Cour *of which* j'ai été nommé président. — 15. C'était le prisonnier *of whom* il avait pris livraison.

CXLI. INTERROGATIVES.

Lesson 105.

Lesson 254.

264. The English interrogative pronouns and adjectives are *who*, *whose*, *whom*, *what*, *which*. They must be carefully distinguished from the relative pronouns. *What* and *which* are adjectives when they modify a noun, as in *what book are you reading?* or *which color do you prefer?* They are pronouns when they are used independently, as in *what are you reading?* or *which do you prefer?*

a. English questions often end with a preposition; in French the preposition must precede the word or phrase it modifies: *whom are you speaking to* = à qui parlez-vous? *what is he complaining of* = de quoi se plaint-il? *which rooms do they sleep in* = dans quelles chambres couchent-ils?

265. The French interrogative pronouns and adjectives are: *qui*, *que*, *quel*, *qu'est-ce qui*, *qu'est-ce que*, *qui est-ce qui*, *qui est-ce que*, *lequel*, *quel*.

Before a word beginning with a vowel sound the *e* of 'que' and of all forms ending in 'que' is replaced by an apostrophe: *what has she seen* = qu'est-ce qu'elle a vu? The *i* of 'qui' is never dropped.

(1) 'Lequel' has the same forms as the relative 'lequel,' and is combined with 'de' and 'à' in the same way. See § 257, (1).

(2) The adjective 'quel' changes its form according to the gender and number of the noun it modifies:—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Masculine:</i>	quel	quels
<i>Feminine:</i>	quelle	quelles

Exercise.

In the following sentences, substitute for *what* the proper form of the adjective 'quel,' for *which* the proper form of the pronoun 'lequel.' See French Texts 1, 2, 3.

1. Voilà une famille! *Which?*—2. De *what* palais parlez-vous?—3. J'ai dîné avec un souverain absolu. *Which?*—4. *What* sont les vices¹ de l'humanité?—5. Appelez les matelots! *Which?*—6. De *what* maison parle-t-on?—7. Ce sont des armées² magnifiques! *Which?*—8. *What* sont les deux sociétés de Monaco?—9. Parlez-moi de cet État surprenant! *Which?*—10. *What* souvenirs peut-on effacer?

¹ Masculine.

² Feminine.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. I have left the harbor. What harbor?—2. Do you love your friend? Which?—3. What breeze is carrying us?—4. What cape is he speaking of?—5. What telegrams have they received?—6. What hour¹ is it?—7. What principalities have you seen?—8. I should like to speak to you of the new society. Which?—9. Are the drawing-rooms open? Which?—10. The state supports the two neighboring houses. Which?

¹ 'Heure' is feminine.

CXLII. INTERROGATIVES.

Lesson 106.

Lesson 255.

Interrogative Adjectives.

266. The interrogative adjectives *which* and *what* are both translated 'quel.' See § 265, (2).

Ex.: *what time is it* = quelle heure est-il? *what is your opinion* = quel est votre avis? *which books is he speaking of* = de quels livres parle-t-il? *I know which windows she has shut* = je sais quelles fenêtres elle a fermées.

a. English *what* and *what a*, used in exclamations, are rendered by 'quel' without any article: *what fine dogs* = quels beaux chiens! *what a pity* = quel dommage!

b. 'Quel' with 'que,' followed by a verb in the subjunctive, corresponds to the English adjective *whatever*. Ex.: *whatever my future may be* = quel que soit mon avenir. *Whatever* is, however, translated in other ways, which must be learned by observation.

Interrogative Pronouns.

267. *Which one* or *which*, used as a pronoun, is 'lequel,' which changes its form according to the gender and number of the noun it represents. See § 265, (1).

Ex.: *here are two wrestlers — which is the stronger* = voici deux lutteurs — lequel est le plus fort? *three of his sisters have come — do you know which ones* = trois de ses sœurs sont venues — savez-vous lesquelles?

268. *Whose* is 'à qui': *whose is it* = à qui est-ce? If the thing possessed is represented in the sentence only by a personal pronoun, the construction is the same in French and in English: *I know whose they were* = je sais à qui ils étaient. But if the thing possessed is represented by anything but a personal pronoun, the sentence must be arranged in this order: (1) 'à qui'; (2) some part of 'être'; (3) the thing possessed, used as subject of 'être' or of its auxiliary.

Ex.: *do you know whose that is* = *do you know whose is that* = savez-vous à qui est cela? *whose ring is this* = *whose is this ring* = à qui est cette bague? *tell him whose money it was* = *tell him whose was the money* = dites-lui à qui était l'argent; *whose pencils have you taken* = *whose are the pencils that you have taken* = à qui sont les crayons que vous avez pris?

Exercise.

1. What a fine¹ book!—2. Here are two windows: which have you shut?—3. Here is a fine dog: do you know whose he is?—4. Tell me whose pencils they were.—5. Whose money have you taken?

¹ The singular of 'beaux' is 'beau.'

Supplementary Exercise.

1. I shall tell him what my opinion is.—2. Whose windows have I shut?—3. What ring¹ are you speaking of?—4. Here are some pencils²: which ones will you take?—5. Will you tell her whose dog it was?—6. I have taken some money: whose is it?—7. You have some fine dogs: which one is his?—8. Whatever his opinion may be, the future is mine.—9. Which window has been shut?—10. He has three sisters: which one has come?

¹ 'Bague' is feminine.

² 'Crayon' is masculine.

CXLIII. INTERROGATIVES.

Lesson 107.

Lesson 256.

269. The other interrogative pronouns used of persons are:—

- (1) SUBJECT OF VERB: *who* = qui *or* qui est-ce qui
- (2) PREDICATE NOMINATIVE: *who* = qui *or* qui est-ce que
- (3) OBJECT OF VERB: *whom* = qui *or* qui est-ce que
- (4) OBJECT OF PREPOSITION: *whom* = qui

'Qui' is used both in direct and in indirect discourse; 'qui est-ce qui' and 'qui est-ce que' occur only in *direct* questions. After 'qui est-ce que' there is no inversion of subject and verb.

Ex. (1): *who is coming* = qui vient *or* qui est-ce qui vient?
I'll tell you who did it = je vous dirai qui l'a fait.

Ex. (2): *who is it* = qui est-ce *or* qui est-ce que c'est? *he asked me who it was* = il m'a demandé qui c'était.

Ex. (3): *whom are they conducting* = qui conduisent-ils *or* qui est-ce qu'ils conduisent? *you know whom I have seen* = vous savez qui j'ai vu.

Ex. (4): *whom are these flowers for* = pour qui sont ces fleurs? *tell us whom you are speaking to* = dites-nous à qui vous parlez.

a. Notice that the *interrogative* pronoun *whom*, used as object of a verb, is 'qui,' while the *relative* is 'que.'

b. *Who* used without any grammatical construction is 'qui.'
 Ex.: *who* = qui? *you know who* = vous savez qui.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — For vocabulary, see French Texts 14, 15.]

1. Who¹ is it? — 2. Which doors have you shut? — 3. Whose are the States of Monaco? — 4. Whom¹ have you condemned? — 5. She doesn't know which hotel is the best. — 6. By whom was he judged? — 7. Who¹ is going away? — 8. What a country! — 9. The five francs are mine. — 10. Do you know who has shut the window?

¹ Give two translations.**Supplementary Exercise.**

1. Whom¹ did you see? — 2. Which is the hotel in which he treats himself to a dinner? — 3. I shall tell you whose door you have shut. — 4. Who¹ will answer us? — 5. These are the judges to whom you have replied. — 6. We knew who had found it. — 7. For whom was the situation growing awkward? — 8. Who¹ has gone away? — 9. Is this the prison to which she had returned? — 10. What a situation!

¹ Give two translations.**CXLIV. INTERROGATIVES.****Lesson 108.****Lesson 257.**

270. The other interrogative pronouns used of **things** are: —

- (1) SUBJECT OF VERB: *what* = qu'est-ce qui *or* ce qui
- (2) PREDICATE NOMINATIVE: *what* = que *or* qu'est-ce que *or* ce que
- (3) OBJECT OF VERB: *what* = que *or* qu'est-ce que *or* ce que
- (4) OBJECT OF PREPOSITION: *what* = quoi

'Quoi' occurs both in direct and in indirect discourse; 'qu'est-ce qui,' 'que,' and 'qu'est-ce que' are used only

in *direct*, and 'ce qui,' 'ce que' only in *indirect* questions. After 'qu'est-ce que' there is no inversion of subject and verb.

Ex. (1): *what is happening* = qu'est-ce qui arrive? *ask him what is going on* = demandez-lui ce qui se fait.

Ex. (2): *what is it* = qu'est-ce or qu'est-ce que c'est? *what would life be* = que serait la vie? *she told him what it was* = elle lui dit ce que c'était.

Ex. (3): *what do you want* = que voulez-vous or qu'est-ce que vous voulez? *what to do* = que faire? *I wonder what they have found* = je voudrais bien savoir ce qu'ils ont trouvé.

Ex. (4): *what are you thinking of* = à quoi pensez-vous? *people know what I am working on* = on sait de quoi je m'occupe.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — For vocabulary, see French Texts 14, 15.]

1. What is it? — 2. What is the hotel worth? — 3. What does my guardian see? — 4. What are you fastening the door with? — 5. I should like to know what he will answer. — 6. What does he shut the door off? — 7. They will tell me what has been decided. — 8. Do you know what he said to me? — 9. I don't know what the convict risked his five francs on. — 10. What has been decided?

Supplementary Exercise.

1. By whom have the prisoners been judged? — 2. What states do they want to drive him from? — 3. I don't know what will become of him. — 4. What are the States of Monaco? — 5. They will tell us whom you have condemned. — 6. He replied to what I had said to him. — 7. Which are the states we must go out of?

— 8. What will become of them? — 9. Would he tell me what had been decided? — 10. These are the hands into which you have given her.

CXLV. INTERROGATIVES.

Lesson 258.

271. Review Chapters CXLIII and CXLIV.

a. When *what* is the object of an infinitive, '**que**' and not '**ce que**,' must be used in indirect questions: *I didn't know what to say* = *je ne savais que dire*.

b. After '**voilà**,' *that is*, '**qui**' often takes the place of '**ce qui**' in indirect questions: *that's hard* or *that's what's hard* = *voilà qui est difficile*.

c. In colloquial French '**qu'est-ce que**' is sometimes lengthened to '**qu'est-ce que c'est que**': *what are you doing there* = *qu'est-ce que c'est que vous faites là?*

d. In *direct* questions the pronoun *what* with *is* or *are*, followed by a noun or a possessive or demonstrative pronoun, is generally translated by '**qu'est-ce que**' or '**qu'est-ce que c'est que**': *what's that* = *qu'est-ce que c'est que cela?* *what are the three unities* = *qu'est-ce que les trois unités?* *what is death* = *qu'est-ce que la mort* or *qu'est-ce que c'est que la mort?* We find also '**qu'est-ce que c'était que**' for *what was* or *what were*.

e. In *indirect* questions the pronoun *what* with *is* or *are*, followed by a noun or a possessive or demonstrative pronoun, is generally translated by '**ce que c'est que**': *tell me what electricity is* = *dites-moi ce que c'est que l'électricité*; *do you know what crocodiles are* = *savez-vous ce que c'est que les crocodiles?* We find also '**ce que c'était que**' for *what was* or *what were*.

f. '**Qui**' or '**quoi**' with '**que**,' followed by a verb in the subjunctive, corresponds to *whoever* or the pronoun *whatever*. Ex.:

whatever you do = *quoi que vous fassiez*; *whoever it may be or anyone at all* = *qui que ce soit*. *Whoever* and *whatever* are translated in other ways, which must be learned by observation.

g. What used without any grammatical construction is '*quoi*.'
Ex.: *what* = *quoi*! *what (is) more beautiful than that* = *quoi de plus beau que cela*; *I don't know what* = *je ne sais quoi*.

h. 'Que de,' followed by a noun, is used in exclamations with the meaning *how much*. Ex.: *how much noise* = *que de bruit*!

Exercise.

[NOTE. — For vocabulary, see French Texts 14, 15.]

1. What is the Casino? — 2. I hardly know what to reply. —
3. He didn't know what the Casino was. — 4. The judges don't know what to do. — 5. Do you know whom you have been condemned by? — 6. What more awkward than the judges' situation! — 7. What are the States of Monaco? — 8. Doesn't she know what Monte Carlo is? — 9. Don't condemn anybody at all. — 10. That's awkward! How much noise for nothing!

Supplementary Exercise.

1. How much noise! What are they doing here? — 2. That's good! Whatever he does, his guardian doesn't say anything. — 3. Do you know what you are risking? — 4. What is the green cloth? — 5. I don't know what imprisonment for life is. — 6. He doesn't know what to do. What a situation! — 7. She never knows what to answer. — 8. I know what you have said. — 9. The prisoners didn't know what to say. — 10. Tell me who has asked me to go out.

CXLVI. INTERROGATIVES.

Lesson 109.

272. Review Chapters CXLI-CXLIV.

Exercise.

Supply the lacking French words in the following sentences. See French Texts 11, 12, 13.

1. *What* alla bien? — 2. *Who* dormait? — 3. Sur *what* dormait-il? — 4. Voici deux paillasses — sur *which* dormait-il? — 5. *What* faisait le gardien? — 6. *Whose* était la chaise? — 7. *Whom* regardait-il? — 8. *Who* est-ce? — 9. *Who* passe? — 10. Voilà beaucoup de voyageurs — *which ones* passeront devant la porte?

Supplementary Exercise.

1. *Who* est économe? — 2. *What* est son moindre défaut? — 3. Il y avait trop de dépenses — *of which ones* se faisait-il rendre compte? — 4. De *what* se fait-il rendre compte? — 5. À *whom* fait-il rendre compte des dépenses? — 6. De *what* dépenses se fait-il rendre compte? — 7. *Whose* est l'État? — 8. Je me fais rendre compte de *what* s'accomplit dans mon État. — 9. Vous vous rendez compte de *what* vous avez fait. — 10. Il y a trois gardiens — *to which one* remettra-t-on la note? — 11. *What* on lui remit? — 12. *What* c'était? — 13. *What* note lui remit-on? — 14. *What* étaient les frais? — 15. *What* grevait lourdement le budget du souverain?

CXLVII. DEMONSTRATIVES.

Lesson 110.

Lesson 259.

273. Our English demonstratives are *this, that, these, those, this one, that one, the one, the ones, the former, the latter, the same*. To these may be added *he, him, she, her, they, them*, used as the antecedent of a relative clause.

a. *This, that, these, those, former, latter, and same* may be either adjectives or pronouns: they are adjectives when they modify a noun, as in *see this boat, it's the same yacht*; they are pronouns when they are used independently, as in *look at this, is it the same?*

Demonstrative Adjectives.

274. *This* and *that* are both 'ce,' which changes its form according to the gender of the noun it modifies. *These* and *those* are 'ces.'

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Masculine:</i>	ce, before a vowel sound cet	ces
<i>Feminine:</i>	cette	ces

Ex.: *this wine* = ce vin; *this excellent wine* = cet excellent vin; *that man* = cet homme; *that owl* = ce hibou.

N. B. — The *h* of 'hibou' is "aspirate"; that of 'homme' is not.

A. — If the demonstrative adjective is emphatic, or if *this* is contrasted with *that*, an adverbial suffix is

added to the noun; the suffixes are '-ci,' *here*, and '-là,' *there*: —

this = $\begin{cases} \text{MASC. ce . . . -ci or cet . . . -ci} \\ \text{FEM. cette . . . -ci} \end{cases}$ *these* = ces . . . -ci

that = $\begin{cases} \text{MASC. ce . . . -là or cet . . . -là} \\ \text{FEM. cette . . . -là} \end{cases}$ *those* = ces . . . -là

Ex.: *this street is the longest, but those two avenues are wider* = cette rue-ci est la plus longue, mais ces deux avenues-là sont plus larges.

Exercise.

Use the demonstrative adjective, both with and without the suffixes '-ci' and '-là,' with every noun in French Text 11, on p. 35. 'Compte,' 'entretien,' and 'état' are masculine.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Prefix the proper form of 'ce' to every noun in French Text 13, on p. 40. 'Matin' and 'soir' are masculine; 'cuisine' and 'tentative' are feminine.

2. Use the demonstrative adjective and the suffixes '-ci' and '-là' with every noun in French Text 12, on p. 38.

CXLVIII. DEMONSTRATIVES.

Lesson 111.

Lesson 260.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

275. *This* and *that* may be either **definite** or **indefinite**: they are *definite* when they refer to some particular noun that is expressed or implied in a previous

part of the discourse; they are *indefinite* when they represent something that has not yet been named, or a whole sentence or idea. In the example *which of the pictures do you like better, this or that?* the words *this* and *that* are definite; in *this is my house* and *that's very true* the words *this* and *that* are indefinite.

a. *These, those, this one, that one, the one, the ones, the former, the latter, the same* are nearly always definite.

b. *These* and *those*, used with the verb *to be*, often serve merely to anticipate the subject or to call attention to it, as in *these are my jewels* or *those are the men we are looking for*; they are then translated like indefinite *this* and *that*. See § 281, (2), (3).

c. *Those*, meaning *those persons*, followed by a relative clause, is equivalent to *they* or *them*, and is translated by 'ceux' or 'celles.' Ex.: *those who eat must work* = *they who eat must work*. See § 277.

276. The definite pronouns *the one, the ones* are translated by 'celui,' which changes its form according to the number and gender of the noun it represents:—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Masculine:	celui	ceux
Feminine:	celle	celles

Ex.: *this little boy is the one that you wanted to see* = *ce petit garçon-ci est celui que vous avez voulu voir*; *those little girls are the ones that we met yesterday* = *ces petites filles-là sont celles que nous avons rencontrées hier*; *which gown do you prefer, the woollen or the silk one* (= *the one of wool or the one of silk*) = *quelle robe préférez-vous, celle de laine ou celle de soie*? *which horses are finer, my father's or my uncle's* (= *the ones of my father or the ones of my uncle*)

= quels chevaux sont les plus beaux, ceux de mon père ou ceux de mon oncle ?

a. 'Celui' in this sense is used only before a relative clause or a limiting prepositional phrase.

b. *Those* before a relative clause or a limiting prepositional phrase is generally equivalent to *the ones*, and is then translated by the proper form of 'celui': *I have those that you gave me* = j'ai ceux (or celles) que vous m'avez donnés (or données).

Exercise.

Supply the lacking French words in the following sentences. See French Text 11. Translate the sentences.

1. Il dort sur une paille, *the one* de son gardien. — 2. Connaissiez vous le prince, *the one* de Monaco? — 3. *These* dépenses (*the ones* qui ont été accomplies dans mon État) ne sont pas petites. — 4. Quels frais sont les plus petits, *those* du souverain ou *those* du prisonnier? — 5. *Those* qui dorment ne regardent pas. — 6. Elle m'a donné deux robes, *the one* de soie et *the one* de laine. — 7. Voilà le captif, *the one* qui dort tout le jour. — 8. Voici la chaise, *the one* du prince. — 9. Je regarde les portes de la prison et *those* du palais. — 10. Voilà les prisonniers, *the ones* que nous avons vus hier.

Supplementary Exercise.

Supply the lacking French words in the following sentences. See French Text 12. Translate the sentences.

1. Consultez le président, *the one* du tribunal. — 2. Il faut supprimer *these* dépenses, je veux dire *those* du géôlier. — 3. Le ministre (*the one* de la justice) invita le prisonnier à s'évader. — 4. Voici la question, *the one* qu'il faut résoudre. — 5. Les mesures dont je vous ai parlé sont *the ones* qu'il faut prendre. — 6. Voilà les condamnés, *those* qui se sont évadés. — 7. *What* dépenses sont les plus grandes, *yours*, *mine* ou *those* du tribunal? — 8. —

primez *this* charge, non pas *the one* de président mais *the one* de geôlier. — 9. Est-ce la robe de *his* sœur ou *the one* de *his* fille? — 10. Ce ne sont pas les chevaux de *her* père, ce sont *those* de *her* oncle.

CXLIX. DEMONSTRATIVES.

Lesson 112.

Lesson 261.

277. *He, him, she, her, they, them*, — and *those* meaning *they* or *them*, — followed by a relative clause, are nearly always translated by this same pronoun 'celui.'

Ex.: *he who is contented is happy* = celui qui est content est heureux; *I speak of her whose death we mourn* = je parle de celle dont nous pleurons la mort; *they who live shall see* = ceux qui vivront verront; *we love those who love us* = nous aimons ceux qui nous aiment.

278. The definite pronouns *this, these, this one*, and *the latter* are translated by 'celui-ci'; the definite pronouns *that, those, that one* and *the former*, by 'celui-là.'

Ex.: *here are ten bracelets — these are (of) gold, and those are (of) silver* = voici dix bracelets — ceux-ci sont en or, et ceux-là sont en argent; *she has two watches — this one is prettier than that one* = elle a deux montres — celle-ci est plus jolie que celle-là; *I am speaking of John and not of Paul — I don't know the latter, but the former is my friend* = je parle de Jean et non pas de Paul — je ne connais pas Paul, mais celui-là est mon ami.

Indefinite *this* and *that* generally correspond respectively to 'ceci' and 'cela.'

Ex.: *I like this better than that* = j'aime mieux ceci que cela; *this is true* = ceci est vrai; *don't do that* = ne faites pas cela; *what's that* = qu'est-ce que c'est que cela?

a. In colloquial French 'cela' is shortened to 'ça': *that will be all right* = ça ira.

Exercise.

Supply the lacking French words in the following sentences. See French Text 14. Translate the sentences.

1. *This* est bon, mais *that* est trop difficile. — 2. Voici le condamné et les juges: la situation est plus difficile pour *the latter* que pour *the former*. — 3. *He who* gagne s'offre un bon dîner. — 4. Il entra au Casino, *the one* de Monte Carlo. — 5. *Those who* ont risqué cinq francs n'ont pas gagné. — 6. C'est une cour, *the one* de la prison. — 7. Voici la porte, *the one that* j'ai fermée. — 8. *What* portes ferment-ils, *those* du Casino ou *those* de la prison? — 9. Il y a beaucoup de juges, *the ones* de Monaco et *the ones* de la Cour suprême: *these* sont meilleurs que *those*. — 10. Les deux prisons, *the ones that* vous voyez, sont à Monaco.

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 13, on p. 40.]

1. He who makes no attempt, will never regain his liberty. — 2. You restore me to those whose friend I have become. — 3. They who come at meal-times eat at the palace. — 4. Which watch will you take, the gold one or the silver one? — 5. I shall take that one; it is prettier than this one. — 6. The cook and the jailer have become friends; the latter saves the former a journey. — 7. That is worth nothing: do this! — 8. He who neglects that, will never be my friend. — 9. Those who do this, morning and evening, fall into the habit of it. — 10. Here is the jailer's food and the culprit's: this is better than that.

CL. DEMONSTRATIVES.

Lesson 262.

280. Review Chapter CXLIX.

281. When indefinite *this* and *that* are used with the verb *to be*, they are often to be translated by 'ce' or by the demonstrative adverbs 'voici' and 'voilà':—

(1) Unemphatic *that*, used with the verb *to be* followed by an adjective, is usually 'ce': *that's so* = c'est vrai; *that will be fine* = ce sera beau.

(2) Unemphatic *this* and *that*, used with the verb *to be* followed by a noun or a pronoun, correspond to 'ce': *that was he* = c'était lui; *that's his father* = c'est son père; *is this his sister* = est-ce sa sœur? Similarly: *these are my children* = ce sont mes enfants; *are those your cousins* = sont-ce vos cousins?

(3) But *this is*, *these are*, and *that is*, *those are*, followed by a noun or a possessive or demonstrative pronoun, and used in introducing or pointing out persons or things, are nearly always translated respectively by 'voici' and 'voilà': *this is her aunt* = voici sa tante; *these are my relatives* = voici mes parents; *that's ours* = voilà le nôtre; *those are the ones you have bought* = voilà ceux que vous avez achetés.

a. 'Ce' is often used in French to repeat the subject before the verb 'être' followed by a predicate nominative in the form of a noun, a pronoun, or a clause. *time is money* = le temps, c'est

de l'argent; *I am the state* = l'état, c'est moi. This repetition is particularly common when the subject is long: *what is of consequence to man is to fulfil his duties* = ce qui importe à l'homme c'est de remplir ses devoirs.

b. Indefinite *the one . . . the other* is 'ceci' . . . 'cela.'

c. Indefinite *the former . . . the latter* is 'cela' . . . 'ceci.'

d. Indefinite *the same* is 'la même chose.' *All the same*, meaning *nevertheless*, is 'tout de même.'

Exercise.

1. Is that the hotel? No, that is the Casino. — 2. Don't do that; *I am going to do this*. — 3. That will be hard! — 4. This is Monte Carlo, and that is the Casino. — 5. Is this the criminal? — 6. This is the situation. — 7. Is that good? — 8. *This* is good, but *that* is too hard. — 9. Was that the convict? — 10. Those children whom you have seen at the Casino, are my cousins. — 11. He does the same, morning and evening. — 12. *I* do the one, and *he* does the other. — 13. What I have bought at Monte Carlo is a watch. — 14. *We* think the latter, *you* think the former. — 15. These are some bracelets that he has bought for me.

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE. — For vocabulary, see French Texts 11, 12, 13.]

1. This is the straw mattress on which I sleep. — 2. Do you sleep on this one or on that one? — 3. Look at that convict: that's the prisoner who ran away. — 4. These are the problems that we must solve. — 5. Must we solve these or those? — 6. This is the office of jailer, the one that has been suppressed. — 7. That is a prisoner whom you will have to watch. — 8. Shall I have to watch this one or that one? — 9. Let's look at this note: this is the one that he handed to the prince. — 10. Those are some friends whom he has invited.

CLI. DEMONSTRATIVES.

Lesson 263.

282. Review Chapter CXLVII.

a. The adjectives *former* and *latter*, when they are contrasted, sometimes correspond respectively to *ce . . . -là* and *'ce . . . -ci'*; but they are oftener translated by *'premier,' first*, and *'second,' second*, feminine *'première'* and *'seconde.'*

b. The adjective corresponding to *same* is *'même,' plural 'mêmes'*: *at the same moment* = *au même moment*; *the same kings* = *les mêmes rois*. The adverb *'même'* means *even*; but when it stands immediately after a noun or pronoun, it is generally to be translated either by *very* or by a compound of *self*. Ex.: *even the king* = *même le roi*; *at the very moment* = *au moment même*; *the king himself* = *le roi même*.

283. Review Chapter CXLVIII.

a. Definite *the one, the ones*, when contrasted with *the other, the others*, are translated by *'l'un,' 'les uns,'* feminine *'l'une,' 'les unes.'* *Other* is *'autre.'*

b. *The same*, meaning *the same one*, is *'le même,'* which changes its form according to the number and gender of the noun it represents: singular, *masc. le même, fem. la même*; plural, *masc. and fem. les mêmes*.

c. *One* or *ones* after an adjective is not to be translated, unless the adjective is one that must be rendered in French by a prepositional phrase and is immediately preceded by the definite article: *the good one and the bad ones* = *le bon et les mauvais*;

the little one (fem.) = la petite; *I have a wooden one* = j'en ai un en bois; *the two silver ones* = les deux en argent; but *I like the cotton one* (fem.) = j'aime celle de coton.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — For vocabulary, see French Texts 11, 12, 13.]

1. The former expenses were smaller than the latter expenditure. — 2. The same tribunal has condemned the one and the other. — 3. The latter list is even longer than the former. — 4. The minister himself asked the culprit to run away. — 5. Even the servants made up a face. — 6. This family is the same that we saw at Monte Carlo. — 7. They have condemned all the prisoners, even the young ones. — 8. You must suppress these expenditures, even the smallest ones. — 9. Here are some chairs: take the wooden one. — 10. This is a bracelet and a watch: this is of gold and that is of silver.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. He has invited some friends: has he invited these or those? — 2. These servants (those of the palace and those of the prison) bring me food. — 3. Here I am! This is I. — 4. We ought to have suppressed this expenditure, the one you have just rendered me an account of. — 5. Do this; don't do that! — 6. Those offices have been suppressed. — 7. This note is mine: it's the one you gave me. — 8. This cannot last; that may last forever. — 9. He had to eat with a friend, the one who had remained in the palace. — 10. He who watches himself all alone can hardly fail to escape.

CLIL DEMONSTRATIVES.

Lesson 113.

284. Review Chapters CXLVII–CXLIX.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — For vocabulary, see French Texts 11, 12.]

1. This state is smaller than that one. — 2. That list is longer than this one. — 3. These prisoners are the ones that I wanted to see. — 4. Those expenditures are the ones that had been made in our state. — 5. This convict is more economical than those who watch him. — 6. He who is watched¹ does not run away. — 7. They who sleep all day see nothing. — 8. *I* am thinking of *this*, and *he* is thinking of *that*. — 9. Do you see these two lists? This is longer than that. — 10. There are the expenses of the watchman, and here are the expenditures of the prince: the latter are smaller than the former.

¹ Use active construction with 'on.'

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Do you know the prison and the prisoner? I know the former, but I have never seen the latter. — 2. Here are some bracelets and some watches: do you prefer these? No, I like those better. — 3. This is a smaller fault than that. — 4. Those who want to run away must not sleep. — 5. He who sleeps all day cannot watch a prisoner. — 6. This prince is younger than those whom we saw at Monte Carlo. — 7. Those woolen gowns were the ones that I had given to the little girls. — 8. These horses are the ones that you prefer. — 9. That gown is prettier than this one. — 10. I like this wine better than that.

CLIII. ARTICLES.

Lesson 114.

Lesson 171.

285. In English we have a definite article, *the*, and an indefinite article, *a* or *an*; in French the definite article is 'le,' and the indefinite is 'un.' The definite article occurs much oftener in French than in English, but the use of the indefinite article is nearly the same in the two languages.

Definite Article.

286. 'Le' changes its form according to the gender and number of the noun it modifies:—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Masculine:</i>	le	les
<i>Feminine:</i>	la	les

Before a word beginning with a vowel or semivowel sound the *e* of 'le' and the *a* of 'la' are replaced by an apostrophe.

Ex.: *the son* = le fils, *the excellent father* = l'excellent père, *the man* = l'homme, *the hero* = le héros; *the daughter* = la fille, *the wife* = l'épouse, *the happy mother* = l'heureuse mère, *the hedge* = la haie; *the little children* = les petits enfants, *the children* = les enfants.

a. In English, when a definite article modifies several consecutive nouns, it is often expressed before the first and omitted

Central Park = le parc Central; but *in Spain* = en Espagne, *to Switzerland* = en Suisse. In certain cases the article is omitted after 'de': *the King of Prussia* = le roi de Prusse; *the History of France* = l'Histoire de France.

(3) Before a title followed by a proper noun; unless the title is *Mr.* = 'Monsieur' *Mrs.* = 'Madame,' *Miss* = 'Mademoiselle,' or *Master* = 'Maître.' Ex.: *Count Kostia* = le comte Kostia, *Prince Zilah* = le prince Zilah, *King Humbert* = le roi Humbert, *General Boulanger* = le général Boulanger; but *Mr. Carnot* = Monsieur Carnot, *Mrs. Adam* = Madame Adam. In direct address 'monsieur,' 'madame,' or 'mademoiselle' is prefixed to a title: *good morning, Duke* = bon jour, monsieur le duc.

(4) Before a proper noun modified by an adjective: *little Fadette* = la petite Fadette, *old Corneille* = le vieux Corneille.

(5) Before an adjective of nationality used as the name of a language; except after the preposition 'en,' *in*, *into*, or the verb 'parler,' *to speak*. Ex.: *I know English* = je sais l'anglais, *he is studying German* = il étudie l'allemand; but *she wrote in Italian* = elle écrivit en italien, *speak French* = parlez français. The article is, however, sometimes used after 'parler.'

(6) Before the names of the days of the week; unless *next* or *last* is expressed or understood: *he comes Fridays* = il vient les vendredis, *people don't work on Sunday* = on ne travaille pas le dimanche, *Monday talks* = causeries du *lundi; but *I'll see you (next) Saturday* = je vous verrai samedi, *it rained (last) Wednesday and Thursday* = il a plu mercredi et jeudi.

Exercise.

1. Man loves vice. — 2. Dogs do not like cats. — 3. Massachusetts is smaller than Spain. — 4. General Bazaine did not love France. — 5. Mr. Henry has seen President Carnot. — 6. Little Bernard likes coffee. — 7. Good little Lewis has studied English, but he writes to us in French. — 8. We speak German on Friday and Italian on Saturday. — 9. She will come Sunday. — 10. I saw him Wednesday.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Come and see me Thursday. — 2. Cats are odious. — 3. I don't like to play on Sunday. — 4. Is Switzerland larger than France? — 5. Mr. Mac-Mahon used to come to see us on Mondays. — 6. King Lewis spoke French. — 7. Little Henry will write to you in English, but he likes Italian better. — 8. Good morning, Count; do you know German? — 9. Does the king of Prussia speak English? — 10. Prince Henry does not like children.

CLV. ARTICLES.**Lesson 116.****Lesson 173.****289. Review Chapter CLIV.**

a. In the six cases described in § 288 the article — unless required in English — is not employed in French when the noun in question is used for direct address or is modified by a possessive, interrogative, or demonstrative adjective or an adjective of number or quantity: *this vice* = *ce vice*; *O France* = *ô France*! *yes, captain* = *oui, mon capitaine*; *his little Paul* = *son petit Paul*; *she doesn't know much English* = *elle ne sait pas beaucoup*

d'anglais; *it has rained five successive Thursdays* = il a plu cinq jeudis de suite.

b. In a list or rapid enumeration, where several nouns are used in succession, the article is sometimes omitted in French as in English: *liberty, equality, fraternity* = liberté, égalité, fraternité.

c. The article is used in French in a number of current phrases where it is idiomatically omitted in English. Ex.: *at school* = à l'école; *in church* = à l'église; *last year* = l'an dernier or l'an passé; *I haven't time* = je n'ai pas le temps; *towards evening* = vers le soir.

Exercise.

1. I don't like this coffee. — 2. There are two Americas. — 3. That General Ollendorff is odious. — 4. Come and see me, my little Lewis. — 5. Do you know much Italian? — 6. What Fridays does she come? — 7. Dogs, cats, children — I don't like them! — 8. Do you study German at school? — 9. Little Lewis ought not to play in church. — 10. We used to speak French on Saturdays, towards evening.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. I saw our General Boum last year. — 3. What vice is not odious! — 3. He will not have time to (*de*) come Thursday. — 4. America, I love thee! — 5. We have seen two little Henrys. — 6. He doesn't know any English. — 7. She couldn't come *that* Friday. — 8. French, German, Italian — he knows all (*toutes*) the languages (*langues*)! — 9. The King of Prussia loves the Emperor (*empereur*) of Germany (*Allemagne*). — 10. I don't like kings.

CLVI. ARTICLES.

Lesson 174.

290. In general, whenever *the* occurs in English, the definite article must be used in French.

a. In English we often insert *the* between *Book*, *Chapter*, or the name of a ruler, and a following numeral, which is then always an ordinal; in such cases the French omit the article and almost invariably use the cardinal numeral; *Book the Third* = Livre trois; *Henry the Fourth* = Henry quatre. But *the First* after the name of a ruler is 'premier,' feminine 'première': *Napoleon the First* = Napoléon premier.

b. Before a noun placed in apposition to a preceding noun or pronoun, about which it tells something that the reader or hearer is supposed not to know, we often use the definite article in English; but the French regularly leave it out: *they invited Mr. H., the author of several novels* = on invita Monsieur H., auteur de plusieurs romans; *we are reading the story of Ajax, the son of Telamon* = nous lisons l'histoire d'Ajax, fils de Télamon; *I saw Albert, the king of Saxony* = j'ai vu Albert, roi de Saxe.

c. *The more . . . the more . . .* is 'plus' . . . 'plus' . . .; *the less . . . the less . . .* is 'moins' . . . 'moins' . . .: *the more I see you, the more I love you* = plus je vous vois, plus je vous aime. Frequently 'et,' *and*, is inserted between the two clauses.

Exercise.

1. Open the book: Chapter (*Chapitre*) the Fourth, *Story of Henry the Second*! — 2. Have you seen William (*Guillaume*), the King of Prussia? — 3. The more I read this book, the less I

like it. — 4. They were speaking of Mr. Richardson, the author of a little novel. — 5. The more we study history, the less we admire (*admirer*) Napoleon the First. — 6. The more I give, the more I receive. — 7. You will find that in the *History of France*, Book the Second. — 8. Have you read the story of Napoleon the Third, the Emperor of France? — 9. I have just seen Albert, the son of my friend, Mr. Samary. — 10. The less you know, the more you talk.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Do you like novels? — 2. I never study history. — 3. Spain is smaller than Germany. — 4. Did Napoleon the First love France? — 5. Mr. Boucher has never seen President McKinley. — 6. Little Lewis loves books. — 7. Good little Albert used to study French at school, but he spoke English¹ better. — 8. We study history Thursdays. — 9. Will he have time to come Saturday? — 10. We saw them Sunday, at church.

¹ Use the article.

CLVII. ARTICLES.

Lesson 117.

Lesson 175.

291. Study §§ 292; 294; 295; 295, (1), (2) in Chapters CLVIII, CLIX, CLX.

Exercise.

1. Give me some coppers. — 2. We have some coffee. — 3. They have had luck. — 4. Let's eat strawberries. — 5. He has courage. — 6. Have you good bread? — 7. There are some fine strawberries. — 8. I haven't any meat. — 9. We don't give them any more water. — 10. She had hardly any change.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. I have never drunk water. — 2. Make a noise! — 3. I don't
: any strawberries at all. — 4. You have done me harm. —

5. Are there any pretty little girls at school? — 6. They will have no money. — 7. Those were awkward situations. — 8. Eat some good bread. — 9. I should like to have some good friends. — 10. Have you other friends? — 11. I have seen some things that I should like to relate to you. — 12. They have drunk scarcely any coffee. — 13. Who has luck? — 14. You will eat no more meat. — 15. She has intentions which she does not want to tell.

CLVIII. ARTICLES.

Lesson 176.

292. *Some* and *any*, used to modify a noun, are generally translated by a definite article preceded by 'de.'

Ex.: *we have some bread* = nous avons **du** pain; *give me some meat* = donnez-moi **de la** viande; *they have drunk some water* = ils ont bu **de** l'eau; *have you eaten any strawberries* = avez-vous mangé **des** fraises?

a. When *some* and *any* are nearly equivalent to an indefinite article, they are translated either by 'quelque,' *some*, or by 'un,' *a*, feminine 'une': *some thief has stolen it* = quelque voleur l'a pris; *have they any father* = ont-ils un père? But after the negative words 'guère,' 'jamais,' 'pas,' 'plus,' 'point,' *any* meaning *a* or *an* corresponds to 'de'; and after 'sans,' *without*, it is not translated at all: *she hasn't any mother* = elle n'a pas de mère; *without any teacher* = sans maître.

b. The adjective *some* meaning *a few* is 'quelques': *some friends were waiting for us* = quelques amis nous attendaient.

c. *Any* meaning *no matter what* is 'quelconque' or 'n'importe quel.' 'Quelconque' follows its noun, and is seldom used in the plural. For the forms of 'quel' see § 265, (2). Ex.: *ask me any question* = faites-moi une question quelconque; *give them any sum* = donnez-leur n'importe quelle somme.

d. Any meaning every is 'chaque' or 'tout.' The feminine of 'tout' is 'toute.' Ex.: *any child will tell you* = *chaque enfant vous le dira.*

Exercise.

1. They have asked me some awkward questions. — 2. Has she any children? — 3. Some child has eaten the strawberries. — 4. Have these little children any mother? — 5. Yes, but they haven't any father. — 6. This thief is without any friends. — 7. Any mother knows how to love her child. — 8. At school there are only some children without any teacher. — 9. They would like to have any teacher. — 10. We must give him any sum.

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text II, on p. 35.]

1. Do you know any economical travellers? — 2. They have created some new offices. — 3. Some watchman will hand it to him. — 4. Had the captive any guardian? — 5. No, he no longer had any watchman. — 6. He was without any guardian. — 7. Any sovereign will have an account of expenses rendered to him. — 8. At church I saw only some prisoners without any watchman. — 9. I like to (*à*) watch any traveller. — 10. We have to render an account to him of any expenditure.

CLIX. ARTICLES.

Lesson 177.

293. See Chapter CLVIII.

294 but th g	and <i>any</i> are often omitted in English, are nearly always expressed. Hence <i>de'</i> and the definite article must, in all cases where the adjective <i>some</i>
-----------------------	---

or *any* would not be out of place in English. See, however, § 292, *a, b, c, d.*

Ex.: *they have (some) courage* = ils ont du courage; *she has (some) money* = elle a de l'argent; *have you (any) change* = avez-vous de la monnaie? *nothing but some coppers* = rien que des sous.

a. 'Du,' 'de la,' etc., are omitted after 'de,' 'sans,' 'ni,' and often after 'soit' . . . 'soit' . . . , *either. . . or. . .* Ex.: *are you in need of (any) help* = avez-vous besoin de secours? *we have neither (any) relatives nor (any) friends* = nous n'avons ni parents ni amis; *he is without (any) money* = il est sans argent. They are omitted also in many idiomatic expressions that must be learned by observation; *does she pay (any) attention* = fait-elle attention?

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 12, on p. 38.]

1. They are making up faces. — 2. We must suppress offices. — 3. You have had to solve problems. — 4. The prisoners would watch themselves without jailers. — 5. They will have need of offices. — 6. The prince had neither money nor ministers. — 7. You mustn't pay attention to that expense. — 8. We can do nothing without help. — 9. The prisoner had some coppers, but the jailer was without change. — 10. Has he any office?

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 13, on p. 40.]

1. You must bring us victuals. — 2. Are there servants at the palace? — 3. Carry food to the kitchen. — 4. We cannot live without food. — 5. The servants are in need of victuals. — 6. The jailer has neither family nor friends. — 7. I don't pay attention to the cook. — 8. What can we do without victuals? — 9. The jailer had relatives, but he was without cooks. — 10. I ought to have some office.

CLX. ARTICLES.

Lesson 178.

295. In the two cases described below in (1) and (2) the article is left out, and the idea of *some* or *any* is expressed by 'de' alone.

(1) When the French noun is *immediately preceded* by an adjective: *have you any good coffee* = avez-vous **de** bon café? *he told me some fine things* = il m'a raconté **de** belles choses; (*any*) *such friends are rare* = **de** tels amis sont rares; *she has (some) other intentions* = elle a d'autres intentions.

a. This rule is often disregarded in familiar speech, and sometimes in literary French.

b. If the adjective and the noun form a compound with a special signification, the article is regularly used: *common sense* = du bon sens; *kindling wood* = du petit bois; *honesty* = de la bonne foi; *young men* = des jeunes gens; *green peas* = des petits pois; *grand-sons* = des petits-fils; *fathers-in-law* = des beaux-pères.

c. An adjective used substantively is treated as a noun: *there are (some) rich and (some) poor* = il y a des riches et des pauvres. But if the adjective is governed by a verb accompanied by the pronoun 'en,' only 'de' is used before it: *there are some flowers* — *I see (some) white, (some) yellow, and (some) red ones* = voilà des fleurs — j'en vois de blanches, de jaunes, et de rouges. The pronoun *others* is 'd'autres': *others will see it* = d'autres le verront.

(2) When the French noun is the direct object of a verb modified by 'ne . . . guère,' 'ne . . . jamais,' 'ne . . . pas,' 'ne . . . plus,' or 'ne . . . point': *he asked me not to make*

any noise = il me pria de ne pas faire **de** bruit; *they haven't any friends* = ils n'ont point **d'**amis; *you will not have any more luck* = vous n'aurez plus **de** chance; *we have never done any harm* = nous n'avons jamais fait **de** mal; *she has hardly any courage* = elle n'a guère **de** courage.

a. If the verb is omitted, the construction is the same: *no more inequality* = plus d'inégalité!

b. If the noun is modified by a following phrase or clause, the article is generally kept: *he hasn't any such base sentiments* = il n'a pas des sentiments si bas; *never give any advice that it is dangerous to follow* = ne donnez jamais des conseils qu'il soit dangereux de suivre.

c. In a negative question, if an affirmative answer is confidently expected, the article is used: *haven't you money and friends* = n'avez-vous pas de l'argent et des amis?

Exercise.

[NOTE.—See French Text 14, on p. 41.]

1. They are little states. — 2. Give me some fine flowers. — 3. I have no money. — 4. We have never had any judges. — 5. That criminal had common sense. — 6. There is some good in what he says. — 7. No more courts, no more judges! — 8. He has money and friends: hasn't he had luck! — 9. You must have courage and honesty. — 10. At the Casino I saw some young men who were risking money on the green cloth; others had won.

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE.—See French Texts 15, 16, on pp. 43, 47.]

1. I have known some princes: I have known some rich and some poor ones. — 2. He raises good vegetables.¹ — 3. They had no means of subsistence at all. — 4. Does he raise green peas? — 5. Others have grandsons and fathers-in-law: I have

neither relatives nor friends. — 6. No sovereigns, no potentates. — 7. We shall have no more land. — 8. You ought not to go and live abroad: haven't you six hundred francs and land? — 9. We mustn't take measures that it is dangerous to execute. — 10. People despise a potentate without land.

¹ 'Légume' is masculine.

CLXI. ARTICLES.

Lesson 118.

Lesson 179.

Indefinite Article.

296. The French indefinite article is 'un,' feminine 'une.' Ex.: *a horse* = un cheval, *a woman* = une femme; *a man* = un homme; *a hero* = un héros.

297. The indefinite article, though expressed in English, is regularly omitted in French in the four cases mentioned below: —

(1) Before a predicate noun used to denote the nationality, standing, profession, party, religion, or character of the subject or the direct object of a verb: *I am an American* = je suis Américain; *I thought him an Englishman* = je le croyais Anglais; *she was a marchioness* = elle était marquise; *she became a queen* = elle devint reine; *he was made a minister* = il fut fait ministre; *they will make him a general* = on le fera général; *you are a republican* = vous êtes républicain; *I have become a Protestant* = je suis devenu protestant; *he died a Christian* = il mourut chrétien; *I considered him a man of honor* = je le réputais homme d'honneur.

(2) Before a noun used in apposition to a preceding noun or pronoun: *the Mississippi, a great river in North America* = le Mississippi, grand fleuve de l'Amérique du nord; *the latter, a member of the City Council* = celui-ci, membre du conseil municipal.

(3) Before 'cent,' *a hundred*, and 'mille,' *a thousand*.
Ex.: *a hundred times* = cent fois; *a thousand years* = mille ans.

(4) After 'quel,' *what*, in exclamations: *what a bore* = quel supplice!

Exercise.

1. I have just seen a great river. — 2. There is a woman who doesn't want to be queen. — 3. The council has a hundred members. — 4. There are a thousand republicans in that state. — 5. Are you an Englishman? — 6. What a river! — 7. I shall speak to you of Lazare Hoche, a great republican general. — 8. She will become a marchioness. — 9. The Americans have made him a minister. — 10. She has never been a queen.

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE. — For vocabulary, see French Texts 12, 13, 14.]

1. Are you a judge? — 2. No, I'm a cook. — 3. You are a prisoner. — 4. They have made him a jailer. — 5. Has he been a minister? — 6. The president consulted one of his friends, a member of the tribunal. — 7. What a question? — 8. He will die a Protestant. — 9. Am I not an American? — 10. You would have to solve a hundred problems. — 11. Are you going to risk a thousand francs? — 12. We have done it a hundred times. — 13. What a situation! — 14. I am a man of honor. — 15. Is the prisoner a Christian?

CLXII. ARTICLES.

Lesson 180.

298. Review § 296 in Chapter CLXI.

a. After 'sans' the indefinite article is generally omitted in French; before the direct object of a negative verb it is replaced by 'de': *a little boy without a hat* = un petit garçon sans chapeau; *they have never had a child* = ils n'ont jamais eu d'enfant. But if English *a* or *an*, in such cases, is equivalent to *even one*, it must be translated by the French 'un' or 'une': *without a mistake* = sans une faute; *I'll not give a cent* = je ne donnerai pas un sou. *A single* is 'un seul,' feminine 'une seule.'

b. When *a* or *an* is equivalent to *per*, it is translated either by the definite article or by the preposition 'par': *one franc a quart* = un franc le litre; *ten cents a pound* = dix sous la livre; *twice a day* = deux fois par jour. The French generally use the definite article in stating prices, and 'par' in other cases.

c. In a descriptive sentence where the thing described is the subject of the verb *to have*, while the object is a noun representing some part of the thing described, modified, in English, by an indefinite article and an adjective, the *a* or *an* is usually translated, in French, by the definite article, and the adjective follows the noun: *she has a very small mouth* = elle a la bouche très petite; *he has a long, hooked nose* = il a le nez long et crochu; *this animal has a long tail* = cet animal a la queue longue. The definite article is used also before a plural noun similarly situated: *he had blue eyes* = il avait les yeux bleus.

d. *Such a* before a noun is 'un tel,' feminine 'une telle: *such a grief* = une telle douleur; *such an event* = un tel événement. But if the noun is modified by an adjective, *such a* is *a so*, 'un si,'

feminine 'une si': *such a terrible grief* = une si affreuse douleur; *such an unexpected event* = un événement si imprévu. The 'si' must immediately precede the adjective it modifies.

e. When an indefinite article modifies several nouns, it must be expressed, in French, before every one: *an old man and woman* = un vieux et une vieille.

299. Review § 297 with (1), (2), (3), (4) in Chapter CLXI.

a. In the case described in § 297, (1), the article is generally used if the noun is modified by an adjective, a phrase, or a relative clause: *Mrs. B. is a great actress* = Madame B. est une grande actrice; *Mr. D. is a Frenchman from the south* = Mr. D. est un Français du midi; *that gentleman is a merchant who is starting for Africa* = ce monsieur-là est un négociant qui part pour l'Afrique.

b. Before the verb *to be* followed by a predicate noun, *he* and *she* are commonly translated by 'ce.' In this case the article is used: *he is an Italian* = c'est un Italien; *she is a princess* = c'est une princesse. 'Ce' is often inserted even when the logical subject has already been expressed in the form of a noun or a demonstrative or possessive pronoun: *that man there is a painter* = cet homme-là, c'est un peintre.

c. The article is omitted in a number of idioms that must be learned by observation: *I have a pain in my eyes* = j'ai mal aux yeux.

Exercise.

1. Our friend is an American from Boston. — 2. She is a marchioness. — 3. I am an Italian from the south. — 4. That Englishman is a great painter. — 5. That woman whom you have just seen is an actress. — 6. Is it a river? — 7. He is a Frenchman. — 8. She has a little boy and girl. — 9. Have they a pain in their eyes? — 10. I haven't a hat.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. This animal hasn't a tail. — 2. There is an old woman without a child. — 3. I shall not risk a franc. — 4. He has not made a single mistake. — 5. You must pay (*payer*) a hundred cents a pound. — 6. He does it a thousand times a day. — 7. Have you paid **two** francs a quart? — 8. The child has small eyes. — 9. The Englishman had a red (*rouge*) nose. — 10. It is such an awkward situation! — 11. There is an animal without a tail. — 12. The actress has a very large mouth. — 13. Such a situation is very awkward. — 14. That gentleman is an American who has come to see France. — 15. She is a queen.

CLXIII. ARTICLES.**Lesson 119.****300. Review Chapters CLIV, CLV, CLVII, CLXI.****Exercise.**

[NOTE. — For vocabulary, see French Texts 13, 14, 15.]

Supply the lacking French words in the following sentences: —

1. Êtes-vous *a* cuisinier? — 2. Il dîne *at the* hôtel. — 3. On n'a pas *any* prison. — 4. Je suis *a* juge. — 5. Il a eu . . . bons juges. — 6. Je n'ai pas *any* famille. — 7. Avez-vous . . . mains? — 8. Il s'offre . . . bons dîners. — 9. Lui porte-t-on *any* nourriture? — 10. Il n'a guère *any* aliments. — 11. Ont-ils *any* gardiens? — 12. Ce sont . . . bons prisonniers. — 13. Ils n'ont pas *any* amis. — 14. . . criminels n'entrent pas *into the* Casino. — 15. Nous n'avons plus . . . gardiens.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Voit-on . . . criminels à Monte Carlo? — 2. *The* geôlier n'a point *any* prisonniers. — 3. Ce sont . . . situations difficiles. —

4. Nous n'avons pas *any* nourriture. — 5. A-t-on condamné *any* criminels? — 6. Il est chargé de porter *them to him*. — 7. *The* famille *of the* geôlier resta dans *the* cuisine. — 8. *The* aide de cuisine portait *some* nourriture *to the* coupable. — 9. Ils ont fait . . . tentatives pour reconquérir . . . liberté. — 10. *A* ami *of the* aide de cuisine arriva *at the* palais. — 11. *The* gens de service portent . . . aliments *to the* famille *of the* geôlier. — 12. On a fourni . . . aliments *to the* ami *of the* cuisinier. — 13. C'est pour éviter *a* course *to the* gens de service. — 14. *The* cuisinier a *the* habitude de venir *to the* palais porter . . . nourriture *to the* amis *of the* coupables. — 15. *The* ami *of the* prisonnier a pris *the* habitude de venir *manger at the* palais, pour éviter *a* course *to the* aide de cuisine.

CLXIV. ADJECTIVES.

Lesson 120.

Lesson 181.

301. French adjectives change their form according as the noun or pronoun they modify is masculine or feminine, singular or plural: *this bad weather* = ce mauvais temps; *some bad news* = de mauvaises nouvelles. The form of the adjective that is found in dictionaries is that of the masculine singular.

a. Nearly all the cardinal numerals are invariable. See Numerals.

b. French nouns used as adjectives are regularly invariable. They follow the word they modify. Ex.: *Empire furniture* = des meubles Empire; *orange ribbons* = des rubans orange.

c. In English, the substance of which anything is made is usually designated by a noun used adjectively, or by an adjective in *-en*, standing before the noun it modifies; in French, material is denoted by placing after the modified word the preposition 'de' or 'en' followed by a noun. Ex.: *a marble palace* = un

palais de marbre; *some wooden chairs* = des chaises de bois; *a gold watch* = une montre d'or; *some little porcelain flowers* = de petites fleurs en porcelaine. Of the two prepositions, 'de' is the one generally used in ordinary combinations; 'en' calls attention more particularly to the material, and corresponds more nearly to English *made of*.

Formation of Feminine.

302. French adjectives form their feminine by adding silent *e* to the masculine singular: *pretty* = *m.* joli, *f.* jolie; *bare* = *m.* nu, *f.* nue; *busy* = *m.* occupé, *f.* occupée.

If the masculine singular ends in a silent consonant letter, that consonant is sounded in the feminine: *all* = *m.* tout, *f.* toute; *tall* = *m.* grand, *f.* grande. *S* is then pronounced *z*: *bad* = *m.* mauvais, *f.* mauvaise.

If the masculine singular ends in silent *n*, the preceding vowel is not nasal in the feminine: *ugly* = *m.* vilain, *f.* vilaine; *full* = *m.* plein, *f.* pleine; *fine* = *m.* fin, *f.* fine; *no* = *m.* aucun, *f.* aucune.

Exercise.

Use with every noun in French Texts 11 and 12, pp. 35, 38, the proper form of 'grand,' 'joli,' 'mauvais,' 'petit,' or 'vilain.' 'Frais' is masculine, 'mesures' is feminine.

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE. — For vocabulary, see French Texts 11, 12, 13.]

1. The little kitchen-hand was sleeping on an ugly wooden chair. — 2. The prison is pretty, but the jailers are ugly. — 3. He has given the tall cook a silver watch. — 4. What a pretty chair!

Is it an Empire chair? — 5. The prince is going to give the little culprit's family some pretty gold flowers. — 6. The prisoners' food is bad. — 7. The minister has solved some great problems. — 8. There is a pretty palace! It is a great porcelain palace! — 9. The prince has some Lewis XIV furniture. — 10. I have never seen a marble prison.

CLXV. ADJECTIVES.

Lesson 121.

Lesson 182.

Peculiarities in Singular.

303. The following particular cases are to be noted:—

(1) If the masculine singular ends in silent *e*, the masculine and the feminine are exactly alike: *every* = *m. chaque*, *f. chaque*; *easy* = *m. facile*, *f. facile*.

(2) Adjectives ending in *as*, *c*, *el*, *er*, *et*, *eur*, *f*, *gu*, *ien* or *yen*, or *x* have special variations in the feminine*: —

MASC.	FEMININE.	EXAMPLES.
as	asse	<i>low</i> = bas, basse
c	que	<i>public</i> = public, publique
el	elle	<i>cruel</i> = cruel, cruelle
er	ère	<i>light</i> = léger, légère; <i>dear</i> = cher, chère
et	ette	<i>younger</i> = cadet, cadette

But 'complet,' 'concret,' 'discret,' 'inquiet,' 'replet,' 'secret' form their feminine in *-ète*. Ex.: *complete* = *m. complet*, *f. complète*.

eur **euse** *flattering* = flatteur, flatteuse

But 'majeur,' 'meilleur,' 'mineur,' and all adjectives in *-rieur* form their feminine regularly in *-eure*. Ex.: *better* = *m. meilleur*, *f. meilleure*. 'Plusieurs' and the possessive 'leur' make no change for the feminine.

* First year pupils should read the following list carefully and use it for reference. Second year pupils should commit the feminine forms to memory.

MASC.	FEMININE.	EXAMPLES.
f	ve	<i>new</i> = neuf, neuve
gu	guë	<i>sharp</i> = aigu, aiguë
ien, yen	ienne, yenne	<i>ancient</i> = ancien, ancienne
x	se	<i>happy</i> = heureux, heureuse

(3) Some of the following adjectives have an irregular feminine, and all of them have double forms in the masculine singular:—

	MASCULINE.		FEMININE.
<i>beautiful:</i>	beau	bel	belle
<i>new:</i>	nouveau	nouvel	nouvelle
<i>old:</i>	vieux	vieil	vieille
<i>crazy:</i>	fou	fol	folle
<i>soft:</i>	mou	mol	molle

Of the masculine forms, those in the second column are used before a noun beginning with a vowel or semivowel sound, those in the first column under all other circumstances. Ex.: *he is handsome* = il est beau, *a fine gentleman* = un beau monsieur, *a fine-looking man* = un bel homme, *a fine woman* = une belle femme; *it's old* = c'est vieux, *an old hat* = un vieux chapeau, *an old coat* = un vieil habit, *an old boot* = une vieille botte. For the demonstrative adjective 'ce' see § 274.

(4) Some other adjectives form their feminine irregularly; the commonest ones—aside from possessives—are given below*:

	MASC.	FEM.		MASC.	FEM.
<i>white</i>	blanc	blanche	<i>sweet</i>	doux	douce
<i>good</i>	bon	bonne	<i>thick</i>	épais	épaisse
<i>short</i>	bref	brève	<i>false</i>	faux	fausse

* First year pupils should read the following list carefully and use it for reference. Second year pupils should commit the feminine forms to memory.

	MASC.	FEM.		MASC.	FEM.
<i>favorite</i>	<i>favori</i>	<i>favorite</i>	<i>smart</i>	<i>malin</i>	<i>maligne</i>
<i>fresh</i>	<i>frais</i>	<i>fraîche</i>	<i>no</i>	<i>nul</i>	<i>nulle</i>
<i>frank</i>	<i>franc</i>	<i>franche</i>	<i>like</i>	<i>pareil</i>	<i>pareille</i>
<i>nice</i>	<i>gentil</i>	<i>gentille</i>	<i>red</i>	<i>roux</i>	<i>rousse</i>
<i>Greek</i>	<i>grec</i>	<i>grecque</i>	<i>dry</i>	<i>sec</i>	<i>sèche</i>
<i>big</i>	<i>gros</i>	<i>grosse</i>	<i>silly</i>	<i>sot</i>	<i>sotte</i>
<i>twin</i>	<i>jumeau</i>	<i>jumelle</i>	<i>treacherous</i>	<i>traître</i>	<i>traîtresse</i>
<i>long</i>	<i>long</i>	<i>longue</i>	<i>avenging</i>	<i>vengeur</i>	<i>vengeresse</i>

a. When present participles are used adjectively, they form their feminine in the same way as adjectives: *running* = *m. courant, f. courante*.

b. Past participles make their feminine in the same way as adjectives: *loved* = *m. aimé, f. aimée*; *taken* = *m. pris, f. prise*. For a few irregular forms see Chapter CV.

Exercise.

1. Give the feminine form of all masculine adjectives, except numerals, in the first ten French Texts.

2. Use the definite article and the proper form of 'beau,' 'nouveau,' and 'vieux' before each one of the following nouns: *état, prince, prison*.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Give, whenever you know it, the masculine form of the feminine adjectives in French Texts 1-10.

2. Translate into French (see French Texts 11, 12, 13): —

1. It is a crazy expenditure. — 2. Who is that old kitchen-hand? — 3. The prisoner was crazy. — 4. The old jailer was not handsome. — 5. It is a crazy hope.¹ — 6. What a fine state! —

7. Who is your new friend? — 8. It is an old habit. — 9. Here is a new list. — 10. Those are fine problems.

¹ 'Espoir,' m.

CLXVI. ADJECTIVES.

Lesson 122.

Lesson 183.

Formation of Plural.

304. French adjectives form their plural by adding *s* to the singular: *pretty* = *m. sing.* joli, *m. pl.* jolis, *f. sing.* jolie, *f. pl.* jolies; *tall* = *m. sing.* grand, *m. pl.* grands, *f. sing.* grande, *f. pl.* grandes.

The *s* is generally pronounced *z* before a word beginning with a vowel sound; under all other circumstances it is silent: *they are small* = ils sont petits *or* elles sont petites, *two little boys* = deux petits garçons, *three little girls* = trois petites filles, *these little heroes* = ces petits héros; *two little children* = deux petits enfants, *three little stars* = trois petites étoiles.

The formation of the feminine plural presents no new irregularities. We have already seen that 'cette,' 'ma,' 'ta,' 'sa' have in the plural 'ces,' 'mes,' 'tes,' 'ses.' For the masculine plural the following special cases are to be noted:—

(1) If the singular ends in *s* or *x*, the singular and the plural are exactly alike: *fat* = *sing.* gras, *pl.* gras; *old* = *sing.* vieux, *pl.* vieux.

(2) Adjectives in *-al* form their plural in *-aux*: *moral* = *sing.* moral, *pl.* moraux.

But 'fatal,' 'final,' 'frugal,' 'glacial,' 'naval,' 'pénal,' simply add *s*. These plurals in *-als* are seldom used. 'Astral,' 'automnal,' 'colossal,' 'matinal,' 'natal,' 'pascal' have no masculine plural.

(3) The adjectives 'beau,' *beautiful*, 'nouveau,' *new*, and 'hébreu,' *Hebrew*, add *x* instead of *s*.

(4) The six adjectives with double forms in the masculine singular make their masculine plural from the first form: —

ce,	<i>pl. ces</i>	vieux,	<i>pl. vieux</i>
beau,	<i>pl. beaux</i>	fou,	<i>pl. fous</i>
nouveau,	<i>pl. nouveaux</i>	mou,	<i>pl. mous</i>

The final *s* or *x* is pronounced **z** before a vowel sound, and is silent under all other circumstances.

(5) The adjective 'tout,' *all*, has for its masculine plural 'tous': *all men* = tous les hommes.

a. In the *pronoun* 'tous,' *all*, the *s* is sounded: *I see all of them* = je les vois tous.

b. For the plural of possessive adjectives see § 247.

Exercise.

1. They have all come. — 2. Are these beautiful old books moral? — 3. The new cooks are not fat. — 4. All heroes are crazy. — 5. These are Hebrew books.¹ — 6. All the prisons were old. — 7. These new expenditures are never small. — 8. Are little girls beautiful? — 9. Those old women must be crazy. — 10. They are pretty little boys.

¹ Put the adjective after the noun.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Use the indefinite article and the proper form of the adjectives 'bas,' 'blanc,' 'bon,' 'épais,' 'gros,' 'long,'

'pareil' with 'mur,' m., *wall*, and 'muraille,' f., *wall*. 'Bas,' 'blanc,' 'épais,' and 'pareil' follow their noun.

2. Use the French word for *some*, and the proper form of the same adjectives, with 'murs' and 'murailles.'

3. Use the word for *some*, and the proper form of 'beau,' 'nouveau,' and 'vieux,' with 'états,' 'fonctions,' and 'ministres.'

CLXVII. ADJECTIVES.

Lesson 123.

Lesson 184.

Agreement.

305. French adjectives have either the masculine or the feminine and either the singular or the plural form, according to the gender and number of the noun or pronoun they modify.

Ex.: *a pretty little boy* = un 'joli petit garçon; *a pretty little girl* = une jolie petite fille; *little birds are pretty* = les petits oiseaux sont jolis; *these little flowers are pretty* = ces petites fleurs sont jolies; *he is small* = il est petit; *she is pretty* = elle est jolie; *are they (masc.) small* = sont-ils petits? *how pretty they (fem.) are* = qu'elles sont jolies!

306. A predicate adjective modifying several nouns or pronouns must be in the *masculine plural*, unless all the nouns or pronouns are feminine, in which case it is in the *feminine plural*.

" 'he brother and sister are good' = le frère et la sœur
my daughter and my niece are small = ma fille et
 nt petites.

307. Often the noun modified by an adjective is omitted, and the adjective is used substantively: *white bread and brown; the grave and the gay*. This construction is commoner in French than in English. The adjective takes the gender and number of the noun it represents.

Ex.: *the little girl* = la petite; *the rich man and the poor man* = le riche et le pauvre; *three hours and a half* = trois heures et demie; *the wise and the foolish* = les sages et les imprudents.

a. If the adjective is used substantively as the name of a color, or as an abstract noun, it is in the masculine singular: *the red, the white, and the blue* = le rouge, le blanc, et le bleu; *the good and the bad* (= *the goodness and the badness*) = le bon et le mauvais.

b. *One* or *ones* after an adjective is not to be translated: *a big one* = un grand or une grande; *the little one* = le petit or la petite; *some old ones* = des vieux or des vieilles. If, however, the adjective must be rendered in French by a prepositional phrase, *the one* or *the ones* is to be translated by the proper form of the pronoun 'celui': *the Paris style and the London one* = la mode de Paris et celle de Londres; *the silk gowns and the satin ones* = les robes de soie et celles de satin.

Exercise.

1. France is beautiful. — 2. The people and the court will be happy. — 3. I have seen the Nice Casino and the Monaco one. — 4. I like red better than blue. — 5. Men are not equal (*égal*): the rich one is happier than the poor one. — 6. They are all foolish, the great and the small. — 7. The prince has a state and a half. — 8. The chair and the straw mattress were small. — 9. Travellers are not always economical. — 10. How old she is!

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Use the French word for *some* and the proper form of 'doux' and 'frais' with: *vin*, m., *wine*; *eau*, f., *water*; *melons*, m., *melons*; *poires*, f., *pears*. Put 'doux' and 'frais' after their nouns.

2. Translate into French: —

1. My little boy and your little girls have come here. — 2. His nieces are foolish. — 3. They have given me some beautiful flowers. — 4. I like the satin gown better than the silk one. — 5. The old are wiser than the young. — 6. Aren't you a Frenchman? — 7. This great man and his ministers are very young. — 8. Look at him in the white of the eyes. — 9. They all go to Monte Carlo, the good and the bad. — 10. That is a bad habit.

CLXVIII. ADJECTIVES.**Lesson 185.****308. Review Chapter CLXVII.**

a. For present participles see § 83.

b. For the agreement of past participles see §§ 84, 85.

c. There are no neuter nouns in French. An adjective modifying a neuter pronoun or a whole clause or idea has the form of the masculine singular: *how beautiful it is* = *que c'est beau!* *it is good to know how to hold your tongue* = *il est bon de savoir se taire.*

something, anything, nothing, followed by an adjective, are by 'quelque chose de' and 'rien de,' with the adjective masculine singular: *I have something beautiful* = *j'ai quelque chose de beau*; *is there anything new* = *y a-t-il quelque*

chose de nouveau? *there isn't anything pretty* = il n'y a rien de joli; *he has done nothing very good* = il n'a rien fait de très bon. In exclamations 'quoi de' is similarly used: *what (is there) more interesting than these birds* = quoi de plus intéressant que ces oiseaux!

e. If the adverb 'tout,' *entirely*, modifies a feminine adjective or past participle that immediately follows it, and this adjective or participle begins with a consonant sound or "aspirate *h*," the adverb becomes 'toute' or 'toutes' according as the adjective or participle is singular or plural: *they are all ready* = elles sont toutes prêtes; *she was quite surprised* = elle fut toute surprise (*but elle fut tout étonnée*).

309. In English an adjective modifying several nouns is often expressed before the first and omitted before the others: *a fine horse and carriage*. In French such cases are differently treated according to the nature of the adjective. Some French adjectives precede and others follow the nouns they modify: see § 310-311.

(1) An adjective that precedes its noun is generally expressed before every noun it modifies: *a pretty little boy and girl* = un joli petit garçon et une jolie petite fille.

(2) An adjective that follows its noun need not be repeated, but stands at the end of the series: *the French language and literature* = la langue et la littérature françaises. It agrees sometimes with all the nouns collectively, and sometimes with the last one: —

a. If the nouns are connected by 'et,' *and*, the adjective regularly agrees with them all; that is, it is in the *masculine plural*, unless the nouns are all feminine, in which case it is in the *feminine plural*. Ex.: *a black table and chair* = une table et une chaise noires; *an astonishing prudence and courage* =

dence et un courage étonnants. When the nouns are of different genders, a masculine noun should be placed next to the adjective; it would be inelegant to say 'un courage et une prudence étonnants.'

b. If the nouns are disconnected, or are connected by 'ou,' or, the adjective usually agrees with the last of them: *he showed uncommon vigor, ardor, passion* = il montrait un élan, une ardeur, une passion peu commune; *has he a marked liking or dislike for this profession* = a-t-il un penchant ou une répugnance marquée pour cette profession?

Exercise.

1. He has a little table and chair. — 2. I am speaking of the old king and court. — 3. Here is an awkward problem and situation. — 4. Do you know the Italian court and tribunal? — 5. We must see the German minister or prince. — 6. The flowers are quite fresh. — 7. The prisoners were quite surprised. — 8. His leg was entirely crushed (*écraser*). — 9. What more beautiful than a happy people! — 10. There was nothing new.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. How foolish it is! — 2. It is embarrassing not to know French. — 3. We have found something interesting. — 4. There is nothing old. — 5. Have you seen anything astonishing? — 6. The travellers were all ready. — 7. That little girl is quite astonished. — 8. The expenditures are quite small. — 9. We are studying the German language and literature. — 10. Have you seen the old jailer and prison?

CLXIX. ADJECTIVES.

Lesson 264.

Position.

310. The position of French adjectives must, to a great extent, be learned by observation.

a. In English exclamatory sentences introduced by *how*, the adjective, if there is one, stands next to this word; in French the adjective comes after the verb. *How* is translated by 'que' or 'comme.' Ex.: *how good you are* = que vous êtes bon! Adverbs, in such sentences, have the same position as adjectives: *how well he sings* = qu'il chante bien! A similar construction is found in clauses introduced by *the* with a comparative: *the better one is*, *the more one is loved* = plus on est bon, plus on est aimé.

b. *The whole*, before a noun, is translated by the proper form of 'tout' followed by a definite article: *the whole city* = toute la ville. *All*, before an abstract or a plural noun, is translated in the same way: *all human wisdom* = toute la sagesse humaine; *all Englishmen* = tous les Anglais. *All* and *the whole*, used as pronouns, are rendered by 'tout,' sometimes by 'le tout': *I have seen all* or *the whole* = j'ai tout vu; *the whole is magnificent* = le tout est magnifique.

311. In English an adjective used with a noun nearly always precedes it. In French the adjective is placed after the noun as often as before it; the longer or more emphatic word generally tends to follow the shorter or less important one.

(1) Some adjectives regularly **stand before** their noun:—

a. Possessive, interrogative, demonstrative, and numerical adjectives and adjective phrases of quantity precede: my father = mon père; *what country* = quel pays? *this village* = ce village; *two cities* = deux villes; *bread enough* = assez de pain.

b. The following adjectives generally precede:—

beau, <i>beautiful</i>	jeune, <i>young</i>	meilleur, <i>better</i>	sot, <i>silly</i>
bon, <i>good</i>	joli, <i>pretty</i>	moindre, <i>less</i>	vaste, <i>vast</i>
grand, <i>tall</i>	mauvais, <i>bad</i>	petit, <i>little</i>	vilain, <i>ugly</i>
gros, <i>big</i>	méchant, <i>wicked</i>	pire, <i>worse</i>	vieux, <i>old</i>

(2) Some regularly **come after**:—

a. Adjectives denoting shape, color, nationality, religion, or politics nearly always follow: *a round table* = une table ronde; *blue eyes* = des yeux bleus; *some red flowers* = des fleurs rouges; *a Prussian officer* = un officier prussien; *the Catholic priest* = le prêtre catholique; *this Republican paper* = ce journal républicain.

b. Past participles used as adjectives follow: *a spoiled child* = un enfant gâté.

c. Nouns used as adjectives always follow: *the Clémenceau business* = l'affaire Clémenceau; *the frog man* = l'homme-grenouille.

d. Phrases used adjectively—except phrases of quantity—always follow: *London papers* = les journaux de Londres; *a gold watch* = une montre d'or. Similarly, an adverbial phrase follows its adjective: *ten years old* = âgé de dix ans; *six feet tall* = grand de six pieds.

(3) Others **stand before or after**, according to circumstances:—

a. When the sense of the adjective is really contained in the noun, and when the use of the adjective is prompted by any

emotion, — such as love, hate, indignation, surprise, pity, or admiration, — **the adjective usually precedes**; when the adjective is used to convey information about the noun, **it generally follows**. Ex.: *a sweet perfume* = un doux parfum, *a sweet smell* = une odeur douce; *the cruel tyrant had him murdered* = le cruel tyran le fit assassiner, *he is a cruel man* = c'est un homme cruel.

b. Some adjectives may be used literally or figuratively: when used figuratively, they ordinarily precede; when taken in their literal sense, they nearly always follow. Ex.: *a great man* = un grand homme; *a tall man* = un homme grand; *a close friendship* = une étroite amitié, *a narrow road* = un chemin étroit. Observe, however, that 'grand,' *tall*, generally precedes any noun except 'homme': *a big boy* = un grand garçon.

c. An adjective modified by a phrase or by an adverb of more than one syllable follows its noun: *a child as beautiful as day* = un enfant beau comme le jour; *an infinitely small cause* = une cause infiniment petite.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — For vocabulary, see French Texts 11, 12, 13.]

1. We have suppressed an expenditure greater than all the others. — 2. There were some crazy prisoners in the old prison. — 3. What a crazy expenditure! — 4. The cruel jailer is watching the young convicts. — 5. He was a cruel prince. — 6. The Monaco problem is very awkward. — 7. I saw some beautiful gold watches in the Monte Carlo Casino. — 8. This beautiful little boy is a neglected child. — 9. Here are some blue flowers: how pretty they are! — 10. The Italian prince was very wicked.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. What an ugly prison! — 2. This vast state is mine. — 3. Has the convict had food enough? — 4. How big the wicked prince's expenditures are! — 5. How well you sleep! — 6. The

more he sleeps, the more he eats. — 7. Read the whole list. — 8. Are all men wicked? — 9. The prisoner has an old mattress, a little chair, and a round table. — 10. It was a good little girl, six years old.

CLXX. ADJECTIVES.

Lesson 124.

Lesson 186.

Comparison.

312. English adjectives form their comparative either by adding *-er* or by prefixing *more*, and their superlative either by adding *-est* or by prefixing *most*. Ex.: *small, smaller, smallest; difficult, more difficult, most difficult*.

French adjectives make their comparative by prefixing 'plus' to the positive, and their superlative by prefixing the definite article to the comparative. Ex.: *petit, plus petit, le plus petit; petite, plus petite, la plus petite; petits, plus petits, les plus petits; petites, plus petites, les plus petites*.

(1) 'Plus' means *more*; 'le plus' means *most*. The French make no distinction between the superlative and the comparative after the definite article: *the more beautiful = the most beautiful = le plus beau*.

(2) In the superlative of an adjective that follows its noun, the definite article must immediately precede the 'plus,' even if it has already been used just before the noun. Ex.: *the most difficult problem = le problème le plus difficile*.

(3) 'Le plus' is regularly invariable before an adjective modifying a noun or pronoun that is compared with itself:

it was then that she was most surprised = *c'est alors qu'elle fut le plus surprise*. 'Le plus' is invariable also when it does not modify an adjective: *which one is most to your taste* = *laquelle est le plus à votre gout?*

Exercise.

[NOTE. — For vocabulary, see French Texts 14, 15, 16.]

1. The culprit is happier than the prince. — 2. The dinners at the Casino are the most to my taste. — 3. Our guardian is the happiest man on the earth. — 4. He will undergo the most terrible punishment. — 5. The new situation is happier than the former one. — 6. Here are two walled lots: which is the more beautiful? — 7. You cannot be more surprised than I. — 8. It is then that they are most ridiculous. — 9. Is she happier at Monaco than abroad? — 10. She is happiest at Monte Carlo.

Supplementary Exercise.

[NOTE. — For vocabulary, see French Texts 10, 11, 12.]

1. This list is longer than that. — 2. Here is the most embarrassing case. — 3. Are you younger than he? — 4. He has given me two bills: which is the longer? — 5. Are you more economical than those travellers? — 6. Which of these prisoners is the youngest? — 7. What is the newest office? — 8. It is then that the cases are most embarrassing. — 9. Have you discovered a more practicable method? — 10. My expenditures are smaller than yours.

CLXXI ADJECTIVES.

Lesson 125.

Lesson 187.

313. The adjectives 'bon' and 'mauvais' are irregularly compared:—

good = bon

bad = mauvais

better = meilleur

worse = pire

best = le meilleur

worst = le pire

'Mauvais,' however, has regular forms also. Remember that the feminine of 'bon' and 'meilleur' is 'bonne' and 'meilleure.'

a. Less meaning smaller is 'moindre,' *the least meaning the smallest* = le moindre: *the least thing* = la moindre chose.

b. The following four adverbs are irregularly compared:—

well, better, best = bien, mieux, le mieux

ill, worse, worst = mal, pis, le pis

much, more, most = beaucoup, plus, le plus

little, less, least = peu, moins, le moins

314. *Than* is 'que': *he is taller than I* = il est plus grand que moi. Before a vowel sound the *e* of 'que' is replaced by an apostrophe: *you are younger than she* = vous êtes plus jeune qu'elle.

a. Before a numeral, more than and less than, meaning a greater number than and a smaller number than, are translated by 'plus de' and 'moins de': I have seen more than four of them = j'en ai vu plus de quatre; *this month has less than thirty days* = ce mois a moins de trente jours.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — For vocabulary, see French Texts 8, 9.]

1. My sabre is longer than yours. — 2. Which is the better? — 3. The Italian government is the worst. — 4. Which operation¹ costs most? — 5. This task requires less than that. — 6. Our republic is better than your government. — 7. Can't he do better than that? — 8. We have sent him more than thirty francs. — 9. The general has less than a thousand men. — 10. That will cost us more than four thousand francs.

¹ Feminine.**Supplementary Exercise.**

[NOTE. — For vocabulary, see French Texts 4, 5.]

1. This is worse than that. — 2. Is your train better than mine? — 3. Who can reign better than this good little king? — 4. The gambler replies badly. — 5. She has returned more than thirty times. — 6. Which traditions¹ are best preserved? — 7. Is this measure better than that? — 8. I have been arrested less than four times. — 9. Give me some good proofs.¹ — 10. It is when she banishes that she is least vindictive.

¹ Feminine.**CLXXII. ADJECTIVES.****Lesson 188.****315. Review Chapter CLXX.**

a. When several superlatives modify the same noun, the definite article and the 'plus' must be expressed before every one: *the dearest and most faithful friend* = l'ami le plus cher et le plus fidèle or le plus cher et le plus fidèle ami.

b. In French, as in English, a possessive adjective may take the place of the article *before* the noun: *my dearest friend* = mon plus cher ami; *my most faithful servant* = mon serviteur le plus fidèle.

c. When *most* is equivalent to *very*, it is translated by some adverb meaning *very*. Ex.: *this most beautiful landscape* = ce très beau paysage.

d. Degrees of inferiority may be expressed by substituting 'moins' for 'plus': *useful, less useful, least useful* = utile, moins utile, le moins utile. 'Moins' means *less*; 'le moins' means *the least*.

e. Adverbs are compared in the same way as adjectives, the form of the article being always that of the masculine singular: *happily, more happily, most happily* = heureusement, plus heureusement, le plus heureusement.

f. Correlative *the . . . the . . .*, followed by comparatives, is translated by 'plus' . . . 'plus' . . ., with the simple positive form of the adjective or adverb: *the better people are, the happier they are* = plus on est bon, plus on est heureux; *the worse she sings, the more she is applauded* = plus elle chante mal, plus elle est applaudie.

316. Review Chapter CLXXI, § 313.

a. *The best, the worst, the most, the least*, used as indefinite pronouns, are 'le mieux,' 'le pis,' 'le plus,' 'le moins': *the least he can do* = le moins qu'il puisse faire. *The best there is* = ce qu'il y a de mieux.

b. *Better* modifying a neuter pronoun or a whole clause or idea is generally translated by 'mieux' rather than by 'meilleur': *that's better* = c'est mieux. Under similar circumstances 'pis' sometimes takes the place of 'pire.' 'Mieux' is used also, in the sense of *better-looking*, to modify any noun or pronoun: *she is prettier than her sister* = elle est mieux que sa sœur. 'Bien' is

sometimes employed as an adjective with the signification *good-looking*.

317. Review Chapter CLXXI, § 314.

a. *As . . . as . . .* is 'aussi' . . . 'que' . . . ; *so . . . as . . .* is 'si' . . . 'que' . . . ; *as* without a correlative word is 'comme'; *so* is 'si': *you are as tall as he* = vous êtes aussi grand que lui; *he isn't so small as I* = il n'est pas si petit que moi; *white as snow* = blanche comme la neige; *they are so stupid* = ils sont si bêtes!

b. *As much as* and *as many as* are 'autant que'; *so much as* and *so many as* are 'tant que'; *so much* and *so many* are 'tant': *they have eaten as much as we* = ils ont mangé autant que nous; *he hasn't seen so much as I* = il n'en a pas tant vu que moi; *you drink so much* = vous buvez tant! *As much, as many, and so much, so many*, followed by a noun, are 'autant de' and 'tant de': *I have as many books as our teacher* = j'ai autant de livres que notre professeur; *he hasn't so much courage as his brother* = il n'a pas tant de courage que son frère.

c. *More* at the end of a sentence is often translated by 'davantage': *that will please him more* = cela lui plaira davantage. The word for *much* before 'davantage' is 'bien' and not 'beaucoup'; before 'plus' either 'bien' or 'beaucoup' may be used: *much more* = beaucoup plus, bien plus, or bien davantage.

d. *Very much* is 'beaucoup.'

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 4, on p. 11.]

1. The most sanguinary and vindictive measures have been applied. —
2. Our best traditions had been preserved intact. —
3. Our most vindictive measures are not so sanguinary as yours. —
4. This most happy little people is as pacific as its monarch.

- 5. The least sanguinary revolution¹ is worse than an invasion.¹
 — 6. Who has reigned more happily than he? He is so good! —
 7. The more vindictive we are, the more we banish. — 8. That's better! Give me the best there is. — 9. The best you can do is to reign in peace. — 10. The most I can do is to banish him.

¹ Feminine.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. You are better looking than I. — 2. She is very good-looking, but her sister is much prettier. — 3. Our little king is sanguinary as a great ruler. — 4. We have preserved as many old traditions as you. — 5. You haven't had so many revolutions as we. — 6. I don't drink so much as he. — 7. Does she eat as much as her brother? — 8. You sing so much! My sister sings much more. — 9. That pleases me very much. — 10. These formulas are not so old as the ceremonies of our court.

CLXXIII. ADJECTIVES.

Lesson 126.

Lesson 189.

Adjectives of Quantity.

318. Most English adjectives of quantity are translated, in French, by adjective phrases ending with the preposition 'de.' These phrases always *precede* the noun they modify. Ex.: *many horses* = beaucoup de chevaux; *time enough* = assez de temps; *little money* = peu d'argent; *how many children* = combien d'enfants?

(1) After these phrases the article is not used in French unless it is needed in English.

(2) When the same phrase modifies several nouns, the 'de' must be expressed before every one: *many friends and acquaintances* = beaucoup d'amis et de connaissances.

(3) For the *negative* phrases see Chapters LXI and LXII. The others are: —

<i>as much or as many</i>	autant de
<i>enough</i>	assez de
<i>how much or how many</i>	combien de
<i>least or fewest</i>	le moins de
<i>less or fewer</i>	moins de
<i>little or few</i>	peu de
<i>more</i>	plus de
<i>most</i>	le plus de
<i>much or many</i>	beaucoup de
<i>so much or so many</i>	tant de
<i>too little or too few</i>	trop peu de
<i>too much or too many</i>	trop de

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Texts 4, 5, on pp. 11, 15. Observe the distinction between 'temps' and 'fois.']

1. We have preserved few traditions and ceremonies. — 2. You must give me many proofs. — 3. Has he been stopped as many times as I? — 4. We have had too much bad luck. — 5. They don't make bows enough. — 6. How many times have they returned? — 7. It is this court that has preserved least formulas. — 8. We have little time and less money. — 9. Has the policeman more proofs than I? — 10. It is he who has applied most measures.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. You have too many revolutions. — 2. He had too much money. — 3. We have too few traditions. — 4. They have too

little peace. — 5. I have not crossed so many frontiers as you. — 6. They had not so much money as that gentleman. — 7. Have we much time? — 8. There are many policemen around the Casino. — 9. How much time will you have? — 10. How many times has he been expelled?

CLXXIV. ADJECTIVES.

Lesson 190.

319. Review Chapter CLXXIII.

a. The words 'assez,' 'autant,' 'beaucoup,' 'combien,' 'moins,' 'peu,' 'plus,' 'tant,' 'trop' are really pronouns, and can be used independently: *I have enough of it* = j'en ai assez; *how much did he give* = combien a-t-il donné?

b. The same words are often used as adverbs; 'beaucoup,' 'peu,' and 'trop' then have the additional meanings of *very much*, *but little*, and *too*. Ex.: *she is rich enough* = elle est assez riche; *I love him very much* = je l'aime beaucoup; *you speak but little* = vous parlez peu; *he goes too fast* = il va trop vite.

c. Another expression for *many* or *much*, used adjectively, is 'bien de,' followed by the definite article. Ex.: *many times* = bien des fois.

d. Another expression for the adjective *how many* or *how much*, used in exclamations, is 'que de,' without any article. Ex.: *how many times* = que de fois!

e. When the adjective *most* or *most of* means — as it generally does — *the greater part of*, it corresponds to 'la plupart de'; after this phrase the definite article is not suppressed. Ex.: *most of my friends* = la plupart de mes amis; *most men* = la plupart des hommes; *he knows most of them* = il en connaît la plupart.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Texts 13, 14, on pp. 40, 41.]

1. Have you food enough? Yes, I have a great deal of it. —
2. How much does he eat? He eats little. — 3. The situation is awkward enough. — 4. We go out but little — 5. They neglect him very much. — 6. He has treated himself to many dinners. —
7. How many journeys he has saved me! — 8. Most of the kitchen-hands eat at the palace. — 9. I have carried most of it. — 10. It is too difficult.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. It's the nicest family in (*de*) Monaco. — 2. How much did you win? — 3. This food is better than the jailer's. — 4. Has he eaten much? — 5. There are not victuals enough: you must bring us some. — 6. My friends have just risked five francs. — 7. Our dinners are worse than the servants'. — 8. You had just won more than five francs at the Casino. — 9. They will bring us but little food. — 10. I have risked less than a franc.

CLXXV. ADJECTIVES.**Lesson 191.****320. Review Chapter CLXXIII.**

a. The adjective *half* with the indefinite article is 'un demi-' or 'une demi-': *a half-hour* = une demi-heure; *half a pound* = une demi-livre; *half a foot* = un demi-pied. Before any other word the adjective *half* or *half of* is 'la moitié de'; after this phrase the definite article is not suppressed: *half the class* = la moitié de la classe; *half these people* = la moitié de ces gens; *half of France* = la moitié de la France; *I have read half of it* = j'en

ai lu la moitié. *A third of* and *a quarter of* are 'le tiers de' and 'le quart de.' *And a half*, after a noun, is 'et demi' or 'et demie,' according to the gender of the noun. *a page and a half* = une page et demie

b. The adjective *all* is 'tout'; see § 304, (5), and § 310, *b*: *all my money* = tout mon argent; *all Paris* = tout Paris; *all France* = toute la France. 'Tout' is used also as a pronoun and as an adverb: *we have done everything* = nous avons tout fait; *all red* = tout rouge (see § 308, *e*)

c. The adjective *some* or *any* is generally translated by 'de' with the definite article: *he has some books* = il a des livres; *do you want any wine* = voulez-vous du vin? The pronoun *some* or *any*, used as direct object of a verb, is 'en': *we sell some* = nous en vendons; *I haven't any* = je n'en ai pas. For *some* meaning *some few* or *a few* see Note *d* below. *Some one* or *somebody* is 'quelqu'un.'

d. The adjective *a few* is 'quelques': *I have found a few cents* = j'ai trouvé quelques sous. *A few* used as a pronoun is 'quelques-uns,' feminine 'quelques-unes': *give me a few of them* = donnez m'en quelques-uns.

e. *Both* is 'les deux,' 'tous les deux,' or 'tous deux'; the feminine of 'tous' is 'toutes': *both rooms* = les deux chambres; *they both came* = ils sont venus tous les deux. *Both* is translated also by 'l'un et l'autre.'

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Texts 13, 14, on pp. 40, 41.]

1. She has remained an hour and a half. — 2. We shall stay only half an hour. — 3. We give meals to half the servants. — 4. Somebody brings him all his victuals.¹ — 5. I shall risk everything. — 6. Do you want any food? No, I don't want any. — 7. Risk a few francs. — 8. The judges would like to come and eat at the palace: I have invited some of them. — 9. Here are the convict and the cook; they will both come. — 10. Invite both.

¹ Masculine.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. The convicts have more food than the jailer's horses. —
2. The situation is growing more awkward every day.¹ —
3. She has less liberty than he. —
4. The culprit's friend is the silliest cook in (*de*) the palace. —
5. The judge hasn't so many servants as the jailer. —
6. They have few friends; *I* have many more. —
7. You used to eat less than I. —
8. The convicts have as much food as the servants. —
9. He has saved her many journeys. —
10. I am going to dine better than the judge.

¹ *All the days.*

CLXXVI. ADJECTIVES.**Lesson 127.****Lesson 192.**

321. Review the subject of adjectives: first year students should re-read Chapters CLXIV–CLXVII, CLXX, CLXXI, CLXXIII; second year students should study Chapters CLXVIII, CLXX, CLXXII, CLXXIV, CLXXV.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Texts 13, 14, on pp 40, 41.]

1. Is it a new state? —
2. The Prince of Monaco has fine states. —
3. The kitchen and the cook are small. —
4. The rich criminals risk less than the poor ones. —
5. They are most surprised when they win. —
6. This old hotel is the best one in (*de*) Monaco. —
7. It is the convict who eats best. —
8. I have won more than five francs. —
9. How many judges are there? —
10. The convicts had food enough.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. The criminals eat more than the servants. —
2. He does it much better than I. —
3. We have too many judges. —
4. How

many francs have they won?—5. I have had enough of it.—6. The cook's friends have eaten too much.—7. The judge's horses are better than mine.—8. The jailer's friend has won many times.—9. It is worse than that.—10. The convicts haven't food enough.

CLXXVII. NUMERALS.

Lesson 128.

322. The cardinal numerals up to *thirty-one* are:—

1 un	11 onze	21 vingt et un
2 deux	12 douze	22 vingt-deux
3 trois	13 treize	23 vingt-trois
4 quatre	14 quatorze	24 vingt-quatre
5 cinq	15 quinze	25 vingt-cinq
6 six	16 seize	26 vingt-six
7 sept	17 dix-sept	27 vingt-sept
8 huit	18 dix-huit	28 vingt-huit
9 neuf	19 dix-neuf	29 vingt-neuf
10 dix	20 vingt	30 trente

In the numerals between twenty and thirty, note that 'un' is joined to the preceding ten by 'et,' while the other numbers are connected by a hyphen.

a. These numbers are all invariable except 'un,' which becomes 'une' when it modifies or represents a feminine noun: *have you a watch* = avez-vous une montre? *I have one* = j'en ai une.

b. Before a vowel or semivowel sound the final consonants of the adjectives 'un,' 'deux,' 'trois,' 'six,' 'neuf,' 'dix,' 'vingt' are pronounced, *s* and *x* being sounded like *z*, and *f* like *v*: *one man* = un homme; *two artists* = deux artistes; *nine hours* = neuf heures; *twenty years* = vingt ans

c. Before a consonant sound or "aspirate *h*" the final consonants and consonant groups of the *adjectives* 'cinq,' 'six,' 'sept,' 'huit,' 'neuf,' 'dix' are silent: *five times* = cinq fois; *seven francs* = sept francs; *ten cents* = dix sous.

d. 'Huit,' 'onze,' and all their derivatives, — except in the compounds 'dix-huit,' 'dix-huitième,' 'vingt-huit,' 'vingt-huitième,' — are treated as if they began with "aspirate *h*": *he has more than eight* = il en a plus de huit; *the eleventh of March* = le onze mars; *the eleventh lesson* = la onzième leçon. In 'cent un,' a *hundred and one*, the *t* is silent.

Exercise.

[NOTE.—The nouns are taken from French Texts 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16. 'Un étranger' means a *foreigner*.]

Pronounce the following phrases and sentences:—

1 paillasse; 3 tentatives; 5 familles; 7 arrêts; 8 petits enclos; 9 chaises; 2 mains; 20 étrangers; 4 repas; 12 mois; 20 hôtels; 5 enclos; j'en ai 10; 1 défaut; 3 anciens souverains; 5 jeunes étrangers; 7 heureux petits princes; 9 aides de cuisine; 2 petits amis; 4 États; 15 jours; 6 hôtels; 8 amis; 20 captifs; 10 mois; tu en avais 5; 1 arrêt; 2 aides de cuisine; il en eut 7; 6 états; 7 ministres; nous en aurons 6; 3 enclos; vous en auriez 9; 8 jours; 6 courses; ils en ont eu 8; 9 États.

Supplementary Exercise.

Pronounce the following phrases and sentences, and write out the French names of the numbers:—

6 mois, 6 États; 2 captifs, 2 États; 1 jour, 1 État; 4 paillasses, 4 États; 3 gardiens, 3 États; 5 chaises, 5 États; 7 portes, 7 États; 10 voyageurs, 10 États; 8 princes, 8 États; 9 défauts, 9 États; 20 dépenses, 20 États; j'en ai 20; tu en as 1; il en a 19; elle en a 2; ils en ont 12; j'en ai 18; tu en as 3; il en a 17; elle en a 4; j'en ai 16; tu en as 5; il en a 10; elle en a 6; j'en ai 9; tu en as 7 ou 8.

CLXXVIII. NUMERALS.

Lesson 129.

323. The tens through *one hundred* are:—

10 dix	60 soixante
20 vingt	70 soixante-dix
30 trente	80 quatre-vingts
40 quarante	90 quatre-vingt-dix
50 cinquante	100 cent

a. These numbers are invariable except in the cases mentioned below. Observe that in 'soixante' the *x* is equivalent to *ss*.

b. Before a vowel or semivowel sound the final consonants of the *adjectives* 'quatre-vingts' and 'cent' are pronounced: *eighty men* = quatre-vingts hommes; *a hundred years* = cent ans. For the pronunciation of 'dix' and 'vingt' see § 322, *b, c*; the prefixing of 'soixante' and 'quatre-vingt' does not affect the sound of 'dix.'

c. If 'cent' is multiplied by another number, it adds an *s*, which is silent except before a vowel sound: *two hundred francs* = deux cents francs; *three hundred years* = trois cents ans. But when 'cents' or 'quatre-vingts' is followed by a smaller number, it loses its *s*: *four hundred and six years* = quatre cent six ans; *eighty-five pages* = quatre-vingt-cinq pages. The *s* is dropped also in dates and in cases where the cardinal number, placed after its noun, stands for an ordinal: *the year 1880* = l'an dix-huit cent quatre-vingt; *page 500* = page cinq cent.

d. No indefinite article is used before 'cent,' and no connective is required after it. Ex.:—

101 cent un	610 six cent dix
102 cent deux	735 sept cent trente-cinq

Exercise.

Pronounce the following phrases, and write out the French names of the numbers: —

31 listes, 31 États; 45 notes, 45 États; 80 prisons, 80 États; 83 prisonniers, 83 États; 87 veilleurs, 87 États; 100 souverains, 100 États; 102 mois, 102 États; 200 captifs, 200 États; 288 jours, 288 États; 347 gardiens, 347 chaises; 435 voyageurs, 435 États; 528 prisonniers, 528 États.

Supplementary Exercise.

80 minutes; 61 condamnés; 100 questions; 56 juges; 200 voyageurs; 81 jours; 80 arrêts; 43 captifs; 24 palais; 100 États; 21 fois; 47 gardiens; 84 hôtels; 51 questions; 38 amis; 685 prisonniers; 302 francs; 39 étrangers; 787 amis; 502 hôtels; 987 fois; 865 francs; 400 amis; l'an 1780; page 300.

CLXXIX. NUMERALS.**Lesson 130.**

324. The cardinal numerals between 30 and 40, 40 and 50, 50 and 60, 60 and 70 are formed in the same way as those between 20 and 30. The numbers from 70 to 99, inclusive, are peculiar; they are:—

70 soixante-dix	77 soixante-dix-sept
71 soixante et onze	78 soixante-dix-huit
72 soixante-douze	79 soixante-dix-neuf
73 soixante-treize	80 quatre-vingts
74 soixante-quatorze	81 quatre-vingt-un
75 soixante-quinze	82 quatre-vingt-deux
76 soixante-seize	83 quatre-vingt-trois

84 quatre-vingt-quatre	92 quatre-vingt-douze
85 quatre-vingt-cinq	93 quatre-vingt-treize
86 quatre-vingt-six	94 quatre-vingt-quatorze
87 quatre-vingt-sept	95 quatre-vingt-quinze
88 quatre-vingt-huit	96 quatre-vingt-seize
89 quatre-vingt-neuf	97 quatre-vingt-dix-sept
90 quatre-vingt-dix	98 quatre-vingt-dix-huit
91 quatre-vingt-onze	99 quatre-vingt-dix-neuf

a. In the numbers from 81 to 99, inclusive, the *t* of 'vingt' is silent: *eighty-eight* = quatre-vingt-huit.

Exercise.

Pronounce the following phrases: —

98 francs; 70 fois; 91 jours; 60 amis; 93 francs; 79 fois; 71 minutes; 79 condamnés; 98 questions; 75 juges; 97 voyageurs; 76 jours; 94 captifs; 77 arrêts; 92 captifs, 73 palais; 95 États; 72 gardiens; 79 hôtels; 78 questions; 300 amis; 475 prisonniers; 597 francs; 678 étrangers; 796 amis; 877 hôtels; 980 étrangers.

Supplementary Exercise.

Pronounce the following phrases and sentences, and write out the French names of the numbers: —

80 francs; 200 fois; 87 jours; 96 amis; 309 francs; 81 fois; 91 minutes; 71 condamnés; j'en ai 96; il en a 77; elle en a 95; j'en ai 78; il en a 99; l'an 1480; page 600; 373 étrangers; 100 fois; 839 hôtels; 295 francs.

CLXXX. NUMERALS.

Lesson 198.

325. *A thousand* is 'mille.' No indefinite article is used before it, and no connective is needed after it. It has no plural form. Ex.: *a thousand and forty dollars* = mille quarante dollars; *twenty thousand leagues* = vingt mille lieues.

a. In dates between 1000 and 2000, A.D., 'mil' is generally written instead of 'mille': *the year 1893* = l'an mil huit cent quatre-vingt-treize.

b. *A million* is 'un million.' It has a plural form with *s*, and requires 'de' before a following noun. Ex.: *three million francs* = trois millions de francs.

c. We have seen that *both* is 'tous (*fem.* toutes) les deux'; similarly *all three*, *all four*, etc., are 'tous (toutes) les trois,' 'tous (toutes) les quatre,' etc.

d. *Once*, *twice*, *thrice* are 'une fois,' 'deux fois,' 'trois fois.'

326. The ordinal numerals are formed by adding *-ième* to the corresponding cardinal numbers. If the cardinal ends in *e*, the letter is dropped before the *-ième*. The words for *first*, *fifth*, and *ninth* are more or less irregular.

(1) The ordinal numerals through *tenth* are: —

<i>1st</i> premier	<i>6th</i> sixième
<i>2d</i> deuxième	<i>7th</i> septième
<i>3d</i> troisième	<i>8th</i> huitième
<i>4th</i> quatrième	<i>9th</i> neuvième
<i>5th</i> cinquième	<i>10th</i> dixième

The feminine of 'premier' is 'première.' All the ordinal numerals form their plural in *s*, like other adjectives.

(2) *Twenty-first, thirty-first*, etc., are 'vingt et unième,' 'trente et unième,' etc.

(3) Another word for *second* is 'second,' feminine 'seconde.'

(4) *Twentieth* and *hundredth* are 'vingtième' and 'centième.'

a. Cardinal numerals, instead of ordinals, are generally used in French in stating the day of the month or the title of a sovereign, after *the first*. Ex.: *the fourth of July* = le quatre juillet; *the first of April* = le premier avril; *Leo the Thirteenth* = Léon treize; *Charles the First* = Charles premier.

Exercise.

1. Pronounce the following phrases, and write out the French names of the numbers: —

4,000,000 francs; 1000 ans; 3000 fois; 6580 étrangers; 1,000,000 lieues; 50,000 hommes; 253,796 ans; l'an 1877; Henri IV; Louis XIV; le 3 juillet; Napoléon I.

2. Prefix to the words 'jour' and 'fois' the definite article and all the ordinal numerals up to 'vingt-sixième.' Use two different words for *second*.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Put ordinal numerals with the following nouns, using different numerals with the different words: —

Les mois¹; le captif; le jour; la paille; son réduit; la chaise; la porte; les voyageurs¹; le prince; son défaut; le compte; les dépenses; son État; la liste; la note; les frais¹; la

création; cette fonction; l'entretien¹; la prison; le prisonnier; le veilleur; le traitement; le budget; le souverain.

¹ Masculine.

2. Translate into French: —

1. She went away the eighth of July. — 2. Henry the Second did not let (*laisser*) himself be driven from the country. — 3. They had Charles the First executed. — 4. We shall both go away the 11th of July, 1898. — 5. Have you offered him the 5500 francs? Yes, I have offered them to him twice.

CLXXXI. NOUNS.

Lesson 131.

Lesson 194.

Case.

327. French nouns have only one form for the singular and one for the plural: they have no ending that corresponds to the English possessive 's.

Possession is denoted in French by the preposition 'de,' of. *John's brother* = *the brother of John* = le frère de Jean.

Ex.: *his uncle's books* = les livres de son oncle; *my children's happiness* = le bonheur de mes enfants; *Byron's works* = les œuvres de Byron; *the people's friend* = l'ami du peuple; *Hercules' foot* = le pied d'Hercule; *a maiden's prayer* = la prière d'une vierge.

Number.

328. French nouns form their plural by adding silent *s* to the singular: *head, heads* = tête, têtes; *hand, hands* = main, mains; *foot, feet* = pied, pieds.

The following special cases are to be noted:—

(1) Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, or *z* are invariable: *arm*, *arms* = bras, bras; *voice*, *voices* = voix, voix; *nose*, *noses* = nez, nez.

(2) Nouns ending in *eau* or *eu* add silent *x* instead of *s*: *hat*, *hats* = chapeau, chapeaux; *hair*, *hairs* = cheveu, cheveux; *vow*, *vows* = vœu, vœux.

(3) Nouns ending in *al* change these letters to *aux* for the plural: *horse*, *horses* = cheval, chevaux.

(4) A few nouns have irregular plurals; the commonest are*:—

<i>ancestor</i>	<i>aïeul</i>	<i>aïeux</i>
<i>ball</i>	<i>bal</i>	<i>bals</i>
<i>jewel</i>	<i>bijou</i>	<i>bijoux</i>
<i>fellow</i>	<i>bonhomme</i>	<i>bonshommes</i>
<i>pebble</i>	<i>caillou</i>	<i>cailloux</i>
<i>carnival</i>	<i>carnaval</i>	<i>carnavals</i>
<i>cabbage</i>	<i>chou</i>	<i>choux</i>
<i>sky</i>	<i>ciel</i>	<i>cieux</i>
<i>knee</i>	<i>genou</i>	<i>genoux</i>
<i>gentleman</i>	<i>gentilhomme</i>	<i>gentilshommes</i>
<i>plaything</i>	<i>joujou</i>	<i>joujoux</i>
<i>eye</i>	<i>œil</i>	<i>yeux</i>
<i>work</i>	<i>travail</i>	<i>travaux</i>

a. When 'aïeul' means *grandfather*, it has a plural 'aïeuls.' When used with certain special meanings, 'ciel,' 'œil,' and 'travail' have regular plurals.

Exercise.

1. Here is my father's sabre. — 2. How many noses have we? We have one. — 3. Has your friend many horses? He has eight.

* First year pupils should read this list carefully and use it for reference. Note that these nouns are all masculine.

4. My ancestors were all gentlemen. — 5. These little fellows have no playthings. — 6. We have two eyes and two knees. — 7. The children's jewels are only pebbles. — 8. These are great works. — 9. He had three hairs under his hat. — 10. Do you like cabbages?

Supplementary Exercise.

1. The tribunals of Monaco are better than those of France. — 2. Princes give many balls. — 3. I have seen two carnivals. — 4. These animals (*animal*) have no arms. — 5. We have seen the skies open (*ouvert*). — 6. I have many ancestors, but I have only two grandfathers. — 7. How many hats have you? I have six. — 8. Have you seen my ancestors' jewels? — 9. Don't gentlemen eat cabbages? — 10. This fellow's uncle has no hairs on his head.

CLXXXII. NOUNS.

Lesson 195.

329. In English a noun is often used adjectively, and stands before the word it modifies; in French a noun so used *follows* the word it qualifies, and is generally connected with it by 'de': *a gold piece* = une pièce d'or; *an excursion train* = un train de plaisir; *the Paris road* = le chemin de Paris; *the Avignon bridge* = le pont d'Avignon; *Bordeaux wines* = les vins de Bordeaux; *Grand Army Avenue* = l'avenue de la Grande-Armée.

a. Sometimes the 'de' is omitted, especially before the name of a person: *the Gouin method* = la méthode Gouin; *some Chassepot guns* = des fusils Chassepot; *Washington Street* = la rue Washington; *the Eiffel tower* = la tour Eiffel,

330. Review Chapter CLXXXI, § 327.

a. Sometimes, in English, the name of the thing possessed is omitted after a noun in the possessive: *my field or my neighbor's*. The French, in such cases, use the proper form of 'celui' followed by 'de' and the name of the possessor: *mon champ ou celui de mon voisin*. Ex.: *Paul's letters and William's = the letters of Paul and those of William* = les lettres de Paul et celles de Guillaume; *the people's voice is God's = the voice of the people is that of God* = la voix du peuple est celle de Dieu; *woman's rights and man's = the rights of woman and those of man* = les droits de la femme et ceux de l'homme.

b. But when, in English, *home* is understood after a possessive noun preceded by *at* or *to*, the phrase is nearly always to be translated by the preposition 'chez' followed by the name of the possessor. 'Chez' means *at the home of* or *to the home of*. Ex.: *they are at Mr. Smith's* = ils sont chez M. Smith; *she was going to her mother's* = elle allait chez sa mère. Similarly, *I am coming from my father's* = je viens de chez mon père. *At* or *to my home*, *at* or *to your home*, etc., are rendered by 'chez' with a disjunctive personal pronoun: *he comes to our house* = il vient chez nous; *she is at home* = elle est chez elle; *I dined with him* = j'ai dîné chez lui.

Exercise.

1. We have dined with the Prince of Monaco. — 2. He is not at home: come and dine at my house. — 3. They were coming from the president's. — 4. My jewels are at Mr. Levy's. — 5. The little fellows were going to Prince Henry's. — 6. I like your method better than Mr. Gouin's. — 7. Have people spoken to you of the Dreyfus affair (*affaire*)? — 8. Your eyes are more beautiful than Prince Paul's. — 9. I am going to my uncle's, 76 Lafayette St. — 10. Has he seen the Brooklyn bridge?

Supplementary Exercise.

1. I am going to give him a gold watch. — 2. Have you been at the Monte Carlo Casino? — 3. Yes, I risked a five franc¹ piece

there. — 4. Let's go to General Ollendorff's, 97 Opera (*Opéra*) Avenue. — 5. I don't like excursion trains. — 6. Do you know the Sauveur method? — 7. These guns² are much better than Chassepot's. — 8. I like Melba's voice better than Patti's. — 9. We shall dine at their house Sunday. — 10. The prince's horses are better than King William's. ¹ Plural. ² Masculine.

CLXXXIII. NOUNS.

Lesson 196.

331. Review Chapter CLXXXI, § 328 with (1), (2), (3), (4).

a. The name of a letter or number and any part of speech other than a noun, when used substantively, can take no plural ending: *two a's* = deux a; *these i's* = ces un; *but's and if's* = les mais et les si.

b. Foreign nouns used in French form their plural in various ways: words that have become really French usually take the French ending; of the less naturalized words, some are invariable and some retain their foreign plural. Ex.: *une lady*, des *lady's*; *un five o'clock*, des *five o'clock*; *un gentleman*, des *gentlemen*.

c. Compound nouns containing a hyphen make their plural in several ways: if the compound consists of a noun and an adjective, both parts take the plural ending; if it consists of a noun modified by a prepositional phrase, only the noun is made plural; if it is not made up in either of these ways, its plural must be learned by observation. Ex.: *brothers-in-law* = des beaux-frères, *cauliflowers* = des choux-fleurs, *grandfathers* = des grands-pères; *rainbows* = des arcs-en-ciel, *masterpieces* = des chefs-d'œuvre; *an afternoon*, *afternoons* = une après-midi, les après-midi; *a basement*, *two basements* = un sous-sol, deux sous-sols; *a postage stamp*, *some postage stamps* = un timbre-poste, des timbres-poste.

332. Generally speaking, the plural is used in French as it is in English.

a. In treating collectively of a number of persons or things, the French generally use a singular noun to designate something that belongs to every member of the group. Ex.: *they all raised their right hands* = ils levèrent tous la main droite; *these creatures have very long tails* = ces bêtes ont la queue très longue; *they cut off the heads of the prisoners* = on coupa la tête aux prisonniers; *the tops of all these mountains are covered with snow* = toutes ces montagnes ont le sommet couvert de neige.

b. French proper nouns generally have the singular form when they are used simply to denote two or more persons of the same name: *the two Balzacs* = les deux Balzac.

Exercise.

1. He is going to speak to us of the two Napoleons. — 2. All these animals have very small heads. — 3. The general had all the prisoners' heads cut off. — 4. All raise your right hands! — 5. Do you like cabbages better than cauliflowers? — 6. How beautiful rainbows are! — 7. Give me five two-cent postage stamps. — 8. What pretty jewels! They are masterpieces. — 9. My brothers-in-law dine at my house every afternoon.¹ — 10. These *d's* are badly made.

¹ *All the afternoons.*

Supplementary Exercise.

1. I don't like *sevens*¹: they are difficult to (*d*) make. — 2. We like balls better than "five o'clocks." — 3. Are your sisters-in-law at your grandfather's? — 4. Have you seen the basements of the palace and prison? — 5. What have you in (*d*) your right hands? — 6. Cats have longer tails than dogs. — 7. You know the two Harrisons. — 8. I have a pain in my knees. — 9. Have all Englishmen red noses? — 10. I like the Nice carnivals better than the Paris ones.

¹ Masculine.

CLXXXIV. NOUNS.

Lesson 182.

Lesson 197.

Gender.

333. All French nouns are either masculine or feminine.

a. The following words and phrases are masculine when used as indefinite pronouns in the senses mentioned below*:—

autre chose, *something else*
grand'chose, *something great*
personne, *nobody*

quelque chose, *something*
quelqu'un, *somebody*
rien, *nothing*

(1) The names of male persons and of distinctively male animals are masculine: *a man* = un homme; *my father* = mon père; *her little boy* = son petit garçon; *this bull* = ce taureau; *the cock crows* = le coq chante.

a. The following nouns and some others, though often applied to men, are feminine*:—

connaissance, *acquaintance*
créature, *creature*
dupe, *dupe*
pratiqué, *customer*

personne, *person*
recrue, *recruit*
sentinelle, *sentinel*
victime, *victim*

(2) The names of female persons and of distinctively female animals are feminine: *a woman* = une femme; *my mother* = ma mère; *her little girl* = sa petite fille; *this cow* = cette vache; *the hen lays eggs* = la poule pond des œufs.

* First year pupils should reserve these lists for reference.

a. The following nouns and some others, though occasionally applied to women, are always masculine*:—

docteur, <i>doctor</i>	philosophe, <i>philosopher</i>
écrivain, <i>writer</i>	poète, <i>poet</i>
médecin, <i>doctor</i>	sculpteur, <i>sculptor</i>
orateur, <i>orator</i>	soldat, <i>soldier</i>
peintre, <i>painter</i>	témoin, <i>witness</i>

(3) The gender of all other nouns must be learned by observation: *a nose* = un nez, *a mouth* = une bouche; *some bread* = du pain, *some meat* = de la viande; *my knife* = mon couteau, *my fork* = ma fourchette; *the palace* = le palais, *the house* = la maison; *a tree* = un arbre, *a vine* = une vigne; *the salmon* = le saumon, *the trout* = la truite; *a toad* = un crapaud, *a frog* = une grenouille; *this crow* = ce corbeau, *this lark* = cette alouette; *the rat* = le rat, *the mouse* = la souris; *this fire* = ce feu, *this water* = cette eau; *the sky* = le ciel, *the earth* = la terre; *a mind* = un esprit, *a soul* = une âme; *this slavery* = cet esclavage, *this liberty* = cette liberté.

Exercise.

[NOTE.—See French Text 8, on p. 25.]

1. This person is coming to our house Saturday. — 2. Is your sister a poetess? — 3. We used to reply to the same request. — 4. His Majesty sent the operator to Paris. — 5. The victim is going to cost him dear. — 6. Long deliberations are taking place in Paris. — 7. The king and the government are going to reply. — 8. Send the sixteen thousand francs to the minister's office. — 9. The same request had been addressed to the king. — 10. You would go to the minister's office. }

Supplementary Exercise.

1. The government has answered without sending the sixteen thousand francs. — 2. You are going to send the list of the ex-

* First year pupils should reserve these lists for reference.

penses. — 3. The operator and the murderer will go to Paris. — 4. I reflected that the creature was not worth this price. — 5. They were going to send the wood and the operator. — 6. Let us reflect that the whole amounts to sixteen thousand francs. — 7. If the victim were worth this price, I should go to Paris. — 8. The Republic would have addressed a request to the king's brother. — 9. They reflected that the king would not reply to the request. — 10. I am sending the request which His Majesty has addressed to the Republic. — 11. My customer's sister was a doctor. — 12. The king will answer by addressing a request to the Italian government. — 13. They sent the list of the expenses, to show the king that the operation had cost him dear. — 14. The government replied to the request which the murderer addressed to His Majesty. — 15. If this person showed himself so exacting, the whole would amount to sixteen thousand francs. — 16. His Majesty hasn't any brothers. — 17. Deliberations had taken place. — 18. Governments are not so exacting as kings. — 19. Long deliberations would have taken place. — 20. The Republic hasn't addressed any request to the king.

CLXXXV. NOUNS.

Lesson 198.

334. Review Chapter CLXXXIV.

a. Most French nouns are derived from Latin words. Pupils who have studied Latin will find that, in general, nouns which are masculine or neuter in Latin are masculine in French, while those which are feminine in Latin keep their gender in French. The most important exceptions to this rule are French abstract nouns in *-eur*, nearly all of which are feminine: *color* = 'la couleur,' *favor* = 'la faveur'; but 'l'honneur,' *honor*, and 'le labeur,' *labor*, are masculine.

b. A few nouns denoting human beings may be either masculine or feminine, according to the sex of the person represented. The commonest are:—

artiste, <i>artist</i>	concierge, <i>janitor</i>	enfant, <i>child</i>
camarade, <i>comrade</i>	élève, <i>pupil</i>	esclave, <i>slave</i>

c. Many nouns denoting persons or animals have two forms, one for each gender. Some of the most important are:—

ami, amie, <i>friend</i>	époux, épouse, <i>spouse</i>
chat, chatte, <i>cat</i>	loup, louve, <i>wolf</i>
chien, chienne, <i>dog</i>	marchand, marchande, <i>seller</i>
citoyen, citoyenne, <i>citizen</i>	mulet, mule, <i>mule</i>
compagnon, compagne, <i>companion</i>	musicien, musicienne, <i>musician</i>
cousin, cousine, <i>cousin</i>	ours, ourse, <i>bear</i>
cuisinier, cuisinière, <i>cook</i>	paysan, paysanne, <i>peasant</i>
ennemi, ennemie, <i>enemy</i>	singe, guenon, <i>monkey</i>

Most nouns in *-eur* derived from French verbs have a feminine in *-euse*. Ex.: *a singer* = un chanteur, une chanteuse; *a dancer* = un danseur, une danseuse. Nouns designating inhabitants of countries, cities, or other places form their feminine in the same way as adjectives. Ex.: *a Spaniard* = un Espagnol, une Espagnole; *a Parisian* = un Parisien, une Parisienne; *a villager* = un villageois, une villageoise.

Exercise.

[NOTE. — See French Text 5, on p. 15.]

1. She is my friend. — 2. The child is very happy. — 3. You gave some proofs. — 4. The citizens would come in. — 5. I penetrated into the Casino. — 6. Let's expel the janitor. — 7. My cousin will come in every week. — 8. We asked the cook a question. — 9. The policeman would stop him. — 10. They were insulting the official. — 11. We shall expel the gambler. — 12. I should reach the Casino. — 13. You are insulting the sovereign. — 14. You would expel your enemies. — 15. They reached the port of the country.

Supplementary Exercise.

1. Is your sister an Italian? — 2. A policeman stopped the gambler. — 3. The singer and the dancer will reach the frontier in thirty seconds. — 4. The musician is giving proofs. — 5. You will ask the peasant a question. — 6. That artist used to penetrate into the Casino. — 7. I shall give the sabre to the policeman. — 8. You were prowling around the Casino. — 9. They ask his companion the same question every time. — 10. We are prowling around the forbidden paradise. — 11. The dog used to stop my little pupils every week. — 12. We should be insulting the sovereign of the country. — 13. Some gamblers are prowling around the Casino. — 14. Policemen stop gamblers. — 15. Your old comrade was asking him questions.

FRENCH-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.



NOTE. — This vocabulary is intended to contain all the words, *except articles and personal pronouns*, that occur in the French texts. The plural form of nouns and the feminine and plural forms of adjectives are generally omitted; of *avoir*, *être*, and all *regular* verbs, only the infinitive is given.

The following abbreviations are used: —

<i>adj.</i> = adjective	<i>imp.</i> = imperative	<i>part.</i> = participle
<i>adv.</i> = adverb	<i>ind.</i> = indicative	<i>pl.</i> = plural
<i>art.</i> = article	<i>inf.</i> = infinitive	<i>pr.</i> = present
<i>cond.</i> = conditional	<i>irr.</i> = irregular	<i>prep.</i> = preposition
<i>conj.</i> = conjunction	<i>m.</i> = masculine	<i>pron.</i> = pronoun
<i>descr.</i> = descriptive past	<i>n.</i> = noun	<i>sing.</i> = singular
<i>f.</i> = feminine	<i>nar.</i> = narrative past	<i>subj.</i> = subjunctive
<i>fut.</i> = future	<i>p.</i> = past	<i>vb.</i> = verb

à, at, to, in, on.

abattit, *nar. of* abattre.

abattre, *irr. (like* battre), to strike down, to overturn.

absence, *f.*, absence.

absolu, absolute.

accepter, to accept; faire accepter, to carry through.

accompagner, to accompany.

accorder, to grant.

admirable, admirable.

adversité, *f.*, adversity.

affirmation, *f.*, assertion.

affligé, sad.

agenouiller: s'agenouiller, to kneel, to kneel down.

agréable, agreeable.

ah, ah, oh.

ailleurs, elsewhere; d'ailleurs, moreover.

aimable, pleasant.

aimer, to love, to like.

ainsi, so, thus.

ajouter, to add.

alla, *nar. of* aller.

Allemand, *m.*, German.

aller, *irr.*, to go.

allez, *imp. of* aller.

alliance, *f.*, alliance.

allié, *m.*, ally.

alors, then; alors que, while, when.

- ambassadeur**, *m.*, ambassador.
aménité, *f.*, affability.
amie, *f.*, friend.
amusement, *m.*, amusement.
amuser, to amuse.
an, *m.*, year.
anéantir, to annihilate.
Anglais, *m.*, Englishman.
année, *f.*, year.
apparaître, *irr.* (*like paraître*), to appear, to seem.
apparence, *f.*, appearance.
appeler, to call; **s'appeler**, to be named.
apporter, to bring.
apprendre, *irr.* (*like prendre*), to teach, to tell, to learn.
appris, *p. part. of apprendre*.
approcher, to approach, to bring near; **faire approcher**, to bring here.
après, after.
Arbroie, Arbroie.
argent, *m.*, silver.
armée, *f.*, army.
armer, to arm.
arranger, to arrange; **s'arranger**, to come out right.
arriver, to arrive, to come.
arroser, to water.
asseoir, *irr.*, to seat; **s'asseoir**, to sit down.
assez, enough, very, somewhat.
assis, *p. part. of asseoir*.
attendre, to wait, to wait for.
aujourd'hui, to-day, nowadays.
auréole, *f.*, glory.
aussi, also, so, as.
aussitôt, immediately.
authentique, authentic, genuine.
autre, other.
- autrefois**, formerly.
autrement, otherwise.
Autriche, *f.*, Austria.
avancer: **s'avancer**, to come forward, to step forward.
avant, before.
avec, with.
aventure, *f.*, adventure.
aviser: **s'aviser**, to think; **elle s'avisa**, it occurred to her.
avoir, *irr.*, to have.
- bague**, *f.*, ring.
baguette, *f.*, wand.
balle, *f.*, bullet.
barricade, *f.*, barricade.
bascule, *f.*, seesaw.
baste, pshaw.
bataille, *f.*, battle.
bataillon, *m.*, battalion.
battre, *irr.*, to beat.
battu, *p. part. of battre*.
bavard, talkative.
beau, *irr. adj.*, beautiful, fine.
Beaumarchais, Beaumarchais.
beau-père, *m.*, father-in-law.
belle, *f. of beau*.
bergère, *f.*, shepherdess.
besoin, *m.*, need; **avoir besoin de**, to need.
bête, *f.*, creature.
bêtise, *f.*, stupidity.
bien, *adv.*, well, very; **bien que**, *conj.*, though.
bien, *m. n.*, property, treasure.
bizarre, whimsical.
blanc, *irr. adj.*, white.
blesser, to wound.
bois, *m.*, wood.
bon, *irr. adj.*, good; **bon mot**, witticism.

bonheur, *m.*, happiness.
bophomie, *f.*, kindness.
bonhomme, *m.*, good fellow.
bonne, *f.* of **bon**.
bonté, *f.*, kindness, goodness.
bord, *m.*, brink.
boulevard, *m.*, avenue.
bourgeois, *m. pl.*, middle classes.
bout, *m.*, end.
brave, honest, brave.
Brenneville, Brenneville.
brouillé, angry.

calembour, *m.*, pun.
calembredaine, *f.*, yarn.
camarade, *m.*, companion.
capable, able.
capitaine, *m.*, captain.
car, for.
caractère, *m.*, characteristic.
cas, *m.*, case.
ce, *pron.*, it, that; **ce que**, what;
 ce qui, what.
ce, *irr. adj.*, this, that; **ce . . . là**,
 that.
cela, *pron.*, that, it.
celle-ci, *f.* of **celui-ci**.
celui, *pron.*, the one, he.
celui-ci, *pron.*, the latter, this
 one.
celui-là, *pron.*, the former, that
 one, that man.
cependant, however, neverthe-
 less.
certain, certain, some.
ces, *pl. of adj. ce*.
cet, *see adj. ce*.
cette, *f. of adj. ce*.
ceux, *m. pl. of celui*.
chagrin, *m.*, annoyance.
chagriné, vexed.

chambre, *f.*, room.
changer, to change.
chanson, *f.*, song.
char, *m.*, carriage.
charger, to command, to entrust.
charmant, pleasing, delightful.
charme, *m.*, charm.
château, *m.*, castle.
chaumière, *f.*, hut.
chemin, *m.*, road.
cher, dear.
chercher, to look for, to get;
 venir chercher, to come for;
 aller chercher, to go for, to go
 and get.
cheval, *m.*, horse.
chevaleresque, chivalrous,
 knightly.
chevaux, *pl. of cheval*.
chez, to, with, to the house of, at
 the house of.
Childéric, Childeric.
Chine, *f.*, China.
choisir, to choose.
chose, *f.*, thing.
chou, *m.*, cabbage.
chrétien, Christian.
civilisateur, *irr. adj.*, civiliz-
 ing.
clair, *m.*, light.
Clovis, Clovis.
cœur, *m.*, heart.
coin, *m.*, corner.
colère, *f.*, anger, wrath.
combat, *m.*, battle.
comme, as, like, while.
comment, how.
commettre, *irr. (like mettre)*,
 to commit.
commit, *nar. of commettre*.
comparable, similar.

- complet**, complete, full.
comprend, *pr. ind. of comprendre*.
comprendre, *irr. (like prendre)*, to understand.
comprendront, *fut. of comprendre*.
compter, to intend.
conquérir, *irr.*, to conquer, to win.
conquête, *f.*, conquest.
conquis, *p. part. of conquérir*.
contenter, to satisfy.
conter, to relate.
continuer, to continue.
contre, against.
conviction, *f.*, conviction; **avec conviction**, earnestly.
coq-à-l'âne, *m.*, incongruity.
coquille, *f.*, shell.
corail, *m.*, coral.
corbeille, *f.*, basket.
cornette, *f.*, standard.
corrompu, corrupt.
côté, *m.*, side.
coup, *m.*, blow; **coup d'œil**, glance; **coup de pied**, kick; **tout à coup**, suddenly; **tout d'un coup**, at once.
courant, *pr. ind. of courir*.
courir, *irr.*, to run, to circulate through.
couronne, *f.*, crown.
court, short, brief.
courut, *nar. of courir*.
couvert, *p. part. of couvrir*.
couvrir, *irr.*, to cover.
craignez, *imp. and pr. ind. of craindre*.
craindre, *irr.*, to fear, to be afraid of.
- crainte**, *f.*, fear.
Crécy, Crécy or Cressy.
crever, to burst, to riddle.
crier, to call, to cry, to call out, to cry out.
Crillon, Crillon.
crime, *m.*, crime.
croire, *pr. subj. of croire*.
croire, *irr.*, to think, to believe.
croiance, *f.*, faith.
cruche, *f.*, pitcher.
crut, *nar. of croire*.
culbuter, to upset, to overthrow.
- Dagobert**, Dagobert.
d'ailleurs, moreover.
dame, *f.*, lady.
danger, *m.*, danger.
dans, in, into, to.
dauphin, *m.*, dauphin, crown prince.
de, of, from, with, to.
débauché, dissolute.
debout, *adv.*, erect.
déchiqueter, to mince, to cut to bits.
déclarer, to declare.
défaite, *f.*, defeat.
dehors, out, out of doors.
déluge, *m.*, deluge, flood.
demander, to ask.
démètre, *irr. (like mettre)*: **se démettre**, to resign, to give up.
demeurer, to remain, to be permanent.
déposséder, to deprive.
depuis, *prep.*, since; **depuis que**, *conj.*, since.
dès, *prep.*, since; **dès que**, *conj.*, as soon as.

- désarmer, to disarm.
 descendre, to descend, to go down stairs.
 desquels (= de + lesquels), of whom.
 dessiner, to draw.
 dessus, *adv.*, on it, over it, on them, over them.
 détestable, detestable, hateful.
 deux, two.
 devant, before.
 devenir, *irr.* (*like venir*), to become.
 devenu, *p. part. of devenir*.
 devinrent, *nar. of devenir*.
 devins, *nar. of devenir*.
 devint, *nar. of devenir*.
 devise, *f.*, motto.
 devoir, *irr.*, to owe, to have to.
 Dieu, *m.*, God.
 digne, worthy.
 dignement, worthily.
 dimanche, *m.*, Sunday.
 dire, *irr.*, to say.
 disgrâce, *f.*, misfortune.
 disposer, to dispose, to will.
 dit, *pr. ind. and nar. of dire*.
 dix, ten.
 dix-huit, eighteen.
 doigt, *m.*, finger.
 dois, *pr. ind. of devoir*.
 dominer, to rule.
 donc, so, then.
 donner, to give.
 dot, *f.*, dowry.
 doute, *m.*, doubt.
 dresser, to set up.
 droit, *adv.*, straight.
 duc, *m.*, duke.
 durer, to last.
 eau, *f.*, water.
 échecs, *m. pl.*, chess.
 éclat, *m.*, splendor, brightness.
 éclater, to explode; faire éclater, to set off.
 écraser, to crush.
 écrier: s'écrier, to exclaim.
 écrire, *irr.*, to write.
 écrivant, *pr. part. of écrire*.
 écrivit, *nar. of écrire*.
 écuyer, *m.*, squire, master of horse.
 élégant, elegant.
 élever, to bring up.
 embrasser, to kiss.
 émeute, *f.*, uprising.
 émietter, to crumble, to break to pieces.
 empêcher, to prevent.
 empire, *m.*, empire.
 en, *prep.*, in, on, for, to.
 en, *pron.*, of it, of them, some.
 enchantement, *m.*, enchantment.
 encore, still; encore un, another.
 enfant, *m. or f.*, child.
 ennuyeux, tiresome.
 enrichir, to make rich.
 entendre, to hear.
 enthousiaste, enthusiastic.
 entourer, to surround.
 entre, between.
 entrer, to enter.
 épanouissement, *m.*, bloom.
 épigramme, *f.*, epigram.
 époque, *f.*, epoch.
 épouser, to marry.
 époux, *m.*, husband.
 éprouver, to experience, to suffer.
 erroné, erroneous, false.
 escabeau, *m.*, stool.

Espagne, *f.*, Spain.
Espagnol, *m.*, Spaniard.
espérer, to hope.
esprit, *m.*, wit, mind.
et, and.
état, *m.*, state, condition.
éteignit, *nar. of éteindre*.
éteindre, *irr.*, to put out, to quench.
éternité, *f.*, eternity.
être, *irr.*, to be.
Europe, *f.*, Europe.
évanouir: **s'évanouir**, to faint, to swoon.
éviter, to avoid, to escape.
excellent, excellent.
exemple, *m.*, example.
existence, *f.*, existence, life.

fâcher, to make angry; **se fâcher**, to grow angry.
faculté, *f.*, gift.
failli, *p. part. of faillir*.
faillir, *irr.*, to come near.
faire, *irr.*, to do, to make, to wage, to form, to build up, to assure, to have, to let; **faire jour**, to dawn; **venir faire**, to come for.
faisait, *descr. of faire*.
fait, *pr. ind. and p. part. of faire*.
fait, *m. n.*, fact.
faites, *imp. and pr. ind. of faire*.
fallait, *descr. of falloir*.
falloir, *irr.*, to be necessary.
fameux, famous.
famille, *f.*, family.
faut, *pr. ind. of falloir*.
faux, *irr. adj.*, false; **faux bonhomme**, genial hypocrite.

fée, *f.*, fairy.
femme, *f.*, woman.
fenêtre, *f.*, window.
fera, *fut. of faire*.
filie, *f.*, daughter, girl.
fil, *m.*, son.
fin, *f.*, end.
finir, to end, to finish.
fit, *nar. of faire*.
fleur, *f.*, flower.
foi, *f.*, faith.
fois, *f.*, time.
fonction, *f.*, function, duty.
font, *pr. ind. of faire*.
fontaine, *f.*, fountain.
force, *f.*, strength.
formidable, formidable.
formule, *f.*, formula.
fors, except, save.
fortune, *f.*, fortune.
foule, *f.*, crowd, mass.
fourbe, *m. or f.*, rogue.
fraîcheur, *f.*, coolness.
frais, *irr. adj.*, fresh.
Franç, *m.*, Frank.
Français, *m.*, Frenchman.
français, *adj.*, French.
France, *f.*, France.
François, Francis.
frapper, to knock, to strike;
frapper les esprits, to make an impression.
frère, *m.*, brother.
futur, future.

gagner, to get.
gai, gay.
gaîté, *f.*, gayety.
galanterie, *f.*, gallantry.
Galles, *f.*, Wales.
Gambetta, Gambetta.

garde, *m.*, guard.
garder, to keep.
gauloiserie, *f.*, (coarse) joke.
général, *m.*, general.
généreux, generous.
générosité, *f.*, generosity.
génie, *m.*, genius.
gens, *m. or f. pl.*, people.
gloire, *f.*, glory.
gouter, to enjoy.
goutte, *f.*, drop.
gouverner, to govern.
grâce, *f.*, grace.
gracieux, gracious, well-bred.
grand, great, fine.
gré, *m.*, gratitude; **savoir gré**,
 to be grateful.
gros, *irr. adj.*, big.
guerre, *f.*, war.
guillotine, *f.*, guillotine.

habit, *m.*, coat; **habits**, clothes.
hélas, alas.
Henri, Henry.
héroïque, heroic.
heureux, happy, bright.
histoire, *f.*, history.
historique, historical.
homme, *m.*, man.
honneur, *m.*, honor.
horriblement, horribly.
humain, human.
humeur, *f.*, humor, frame of
 mind.

ici, here.
idée, *f.*, idea.
ignorer, not to know.
il, there, it (*subject of impersonal
 vb.*).
illustrer, to honor.

imaginable, conceivable.
impérissable, imperishable, un-
 dying.
importer, to be of importance;
 qu'importe, what difference
 does it make?
imprévu, unforeseen.
imprimer, to print.
inattendu, unexpected.
inévitabile, inevitable.
ingrat, ungrateful.
inquiet, anxious.
insidieux, insidious.
insouciance, *f.*, carelessness, in-
 difference.
instant, *m.*, instant.
intelligence, *f.*, intelligence.
invincible, invincible.
ironie, *f.*, irony.
ironique, ironical.
ivrogne, drunken.
Ivry, Ivry.

jamais, ever; **ne . . . jamais que**,
 never but, never anything but.
Jean, John.
jeter, to throw, to cast, to dis-
 pense.
jeu, *m.*, game.
jeune, young.
joie, *f.*, joy, pleasure.
jouer, to play.
jour, *m.*, day, daylight.
journal, *m.*, newspaper.
jusqu'à, as far as.

là, there; **c'est là**, that is.
laboureur, *m.*, farmer.
laboureuse, *f.*, farmer's wife.
laisser, to let, to leave, to be-
 queath.

laquelle, *f.*, *sing.* of lequel.
 large, broad.
 le, it, so.
 lequel, who, whom, which.
 lesquels, *m. pl.* of lequel.
 leur, *irr. adj.*, their.
 leurs, *pl.* of leur.
 lieu, *m.*, place; tenir lieu, to take the place.
 lire, *irr.*, to read.
 livre, *m.*, book.
 livrer, to fight, to open (a battle).
 loin, *adv.*, far.
 lointain, *adj.*, distant, remote.
 lorsque, when.
 louer, to praise.
 Louis, Lewis.
 loyal, loyal.
 lui-même, himself.
 lune, *f.*, moon.

M. = monsieur.
 ma, *f. sing.* of mon.
 Mac-Mahon, MacMahon.
 madame, madam.
 magnifique, magnificent.
 main, *f.*, hand.
 maintenant, now.
 mais, but.
 maisonnette, *f.*, cottage.
 maître, *m.*, master.
 malgré, in spite of.
 malheur, *m.*, misfortune.
 malice, *f.*, shrewdness.
 malin, *irr. adj.*, shrewd.
 manger, to eat.
 manquer, to lack, to fail; manquer de, to lack.
 maréchal, *m.*, marshal.
 mari, *m.*, husband.
 mariage, *m.*, marriage.

Marie, Mary.
 massacrer, to massacre.
 mauvais, bad.
 méchant, wicked.
 meilleur, better, best.
 mélodrame, *m.*, melodrama.
 même, *adj.*, same, self.
 même, *adv.*, even.
 mémoire, *f.*, memory, reputation.
 mensonge, *m.*, lie.
 menu, small.
 mère, *f.*, mother.
 mes, *m. and f. pl.* of mon.
 messe, *f.*, mass.
 messieurs, *pl.* of monsieur.
 mesure, *f.*, measure.
 mettaient, *descr.* of mettre.
 mettre, *irr.*, to put, to seat; faire mettre, to have seated.
 Mexique, *m.*, Mexico.
 mine, *f.*, mine, blast.
 mirliton, *m.*, reed-pipe.
 mis, *p. part* of mettre.
 mit, *nar.* of mettre.
 modestement, modestly.
 modestie, *f.*, modesty.
 mœurs, *f. pl.*, manners, habits.
 moitié, *f.*, half.
 Molière, Molière.
 moment, *m.*, moment.
 mon, *irr. adj.*, my.
 monarchie, *f.*, monarchy.
 monarque, *m.*, monarch.
 monde, *m.*, world; tout le monde, everybody.
 monnaie, *f.*, change; menue monnaie, small change.
 monsieur, *m.*, gentleman, sir, Mr
 Montaigne, Montaigne.
 Montmartre, Montmartre.
 montrer, to show.

mordre, to bite.
mort, *adj.*, dead.
mort, *p. part. of mourir*.
mortel, deadly.
mot, *m.*, word, saying; **bon mot**, witticism.
mourant, *pr. part. of mourir*.
mourir, *irr.*, to die.
mourut, *nar. of mourir*.
murmurer, to mutter.

naissent, *pr. ind. of naître*.
naître, *irr.*, to be born.
Napoléon, Napoleon.
nation, *f.*, nation.
national, national.
ne, not; **ne . . . jamais**, never; **ne . . . pas**, not; **ne . . . pas de**, no; **ne . . . plus**, no more, no longer; **ne . . . plus de**, no . . . left; **ne . . . point**, not at all; **ne . . . que**, only; **ne . . . rien**, nothing.
net, neat.
nette, *f. of net*.
niais, *m. n.*, idiot.
niais, *adj.*, silly.
nigaud, *m.*, blockhead.
noces, *f. pl.*, wedding.
nom, *m.*, name.
nombre, *m.*, number; **au nombre de**, among.
nombreux, numerous.
nommer, to name.
non, no.
nos, *m. and f. pl. of notre*.
note, *f.*, expression.
notre, *irr. adj.*, our.
nourrice, *f.*, nurse.
nouvelle, *f.*, news.
noyer, to drown.

odeur, *f.*, odor.
œil, *m.*, eye; **coup d'œil**, glance.
œillet, *m.*, pink.
œuf, *m.*, egg.
offrir, *irr.*, to offer.
offrit, *nar. of offrir*.
on, people, they, one.
or, *m.*, gold.
oraison, *f.*, prayer.
ordinaire: **d'ordinaire**, generally.
ordonner, to order.
ordre, *m.*, order.
orgueil, *m.*, pride.
Orléans, *f.*, Orleans.
oser, to dare.
ou, or.
oublier, to forget.
oui, yes.
ouvrent, *pr. ind. of ouvrir*.
ouvrez, *imp. of ouvrir*.
ouvrir, *irr.*, to open.
ouvrit, *nar. of ouvrir*.

paillasse, *f.*, (straw) mattress.
paix, *f.*, peace.
palais, *m.*, palace.
panache, *m.*, plume.
pape, *m.*, pope.
par, by, through.
paraître, *irr.*, to seem, to appear.
parce que, because.
pardon, *m.*, pardon; excuse me!
pardonnez, to forgive.
parent, *m.*, relative.
parfumer, to perfume, to scent.
Paris, *m.*, Paris.
parisien, Parisian.
parler, to speak.
parole, *f.*, speech, word.
parterre, *m.*, garden.

particularité, *f.*, detail.
particulier, peculiar.
partie, *f.*, part.
partir, *irr.*, to go away, to start.
partit, *nar. of partir*.
partout, everywhere.
pas, not; **ne . . . pas**, not; **ne . . . pas de**, no.
passage, *m.*, passage; **passage au pouvoir**, fleeting authority.
passé, *m. n.*, past.
passer, to pass, to pass away.
Passion, *f.*, Passion (*story of the Crucifixion*).
patrie, *f.*, country, fatherland.
patron, *m.*, model, idol.
pauvre, poor.
Pavie, *f.*, Pavia.
payer, to pay for.
paysan, *m.*, peasant.
pendant, during.
pendre, to hang.
pénitence, *f.*, penance.
penser, to think.
Pépin, Pepin.
perdre, to lose.
père, *m.*, father.
personnel, personal.
persuader, to persuade.
peu, little.
peuple, *m.*, people.
peut, *pr. ind. of pouvoir*.
peut-être, perhaps.
Philippe, Philip.
phrase, *f.*, phrase, speech.
physionomie, *f.*, face, portrait.
piéd, *m.*, foot.
pieux, pious.
pitié, *f.*, pity; **faire pitié**, to excite pity.
place, *f.*, place.

plaisant, amusing, nice.
plaisanterie, *f.*, jest.
plein, full.
pleurer, to weep, to cry.
plupart, *f.*, greater part, most.
plus, more, most; **ne . . . plus**, no more, no longer; **ne . . . plus de**, no more, no longer any, no . . . left.
plusieurs, several.
plutôt, rather.
poignée, *f.*, handful; **à poignées**, without stint.
point, at all; **ne . . . point**, not at all; **ne . . . point de**, no.
pointe, *f.*, conceit.
polisson, *irr. adj.*, naughty.
politique, political.
populaire, popular.
porte, *f.*, door.
porter, to carry, to bear.
poser, to set down, to put, to ask.
posséder, to possess.
postérité, *f.*, posterity.
pot, *m.*, pot, kettle.
poule, *f.*, hen, chicken.
pour, for, to, in order to.
pourquoi, why.
poursuivit, *nar. of poursuivre*.
poursuivre, *irr. (like suivre)*, to continue, to go on.
pourtant, yet, however.
pourvu que, *conj.*, provided.
pouvaient, *descr. of pouvoir*.
pouvait, *descr. of pouvoir*.
pouvoir, *irr.*, to be able.
pouvoir, *m. n.*, power.
premier, first, former.
prenant, *pr. part of prendre*.
prend, *pr. ind. of prendre*.
prendre, *irr.*, to take, to win.

près, *adv.*, near; **près de**, near, about to.

présent, *m. n.*, present.

prestige, *m.*, reputation.

prêt, ready.

prêter, to lend, to attribute.

prévaloir, *irr.* (like **valoir**), to prevail; **prévaloir contre**, to outweigh.

prévoir, *irr.* (like **voir**, except *fut. and cond.*), to foresee.

prévoyant, *pr. part. of prévoir*.

prier, to beg, to ask.

prince, *m.*, prince.

princesse, *f.*, princess.

pris, *p. part. of prendre*.

prisonnier, *m.*, prisoner.

prit, *nar. of prendre*.

probe, honest.

prodigieux, marvellous.

profondeur, *f.*, depth, wisdom.

promettant, *pr. part. of promettre*.

promettre, *irr.* (like **mettre**), to promise.

prononcer, to pronounce, to utter.

prose, *f.*, prose.

province, *f.*, country.

puisque, as, since, for.

puissant, powerful.

puisse, *pr. subj. of pouvoir*.

pus, *nar. of pouvoir*.

Pyrénées, *f. pl.*, Pyrenees.

qu', *see que*.

quand, when.

quant à, as for, as to.

quantité, *f.*, quantity, lot.

que, *adv.*, how, why.

que, *conj.*, as, because, but, than, that; **ne . . . que**, only.

que, *pron.*, what, which, whom, that; **que voici** (*after noun*), the following.

quel, *adj.*, what, what a.

quelconque, *adj.*, of any kind.

quelle, *f. of quel*.

quelque, *adj.*, some; **quelques**, a few.

querelle, *f.*, quarrel.

question, *f.*, question.

qui, who, whom, which.

Rabelais, Rabelais.

rallier: **se rallier**, to rally.

ranger, to draw up.

ranimer, to revive.

rappeler, to recall.

rapprochement, *m.*, union.

rat, *m.*, rat.

ravi, delighted.

recevoir, *irr.*, to receive, to accept.

recueil, *m.*, collection.

reçusse, *p. subj. of recevoir*.

redoutable, fearful.

regarder, to look at, to look upon, to regard, to consider.

règne, *m.*, reign.

régner, to reign.

reine, *f.*, queen.

religion, *f.*, religion.

remède, *m.*, remedy.

remplir, to fill, to fulfil.

remuer, to move.

renommée, *f.*, fame, reputation.

renverser, to overthrow.

répandre, to spread.

répandu, *p. part. of répandre*.

répéter, to repeat.

- replanter**, to plant again.
répondre, to answer, to reply.
reporter, to carry back.
reposer, to rest; **se reposer**, to rest.
reprendre, *irr.* (*like prendre*), to continue, to get back.
reprit, *nar.* of **reprendre**.
réputation, *f.*, reputation.
reste, *m.*, rest.
rester, to stay, to remain; **il me reste**, I have left.
retenir, *irr.* (*like tenir*), to remember.
retenu, *p. part.* of **retenir**.
retirer, to withdraw; **se retirer**, to go off.
retourner, to go back, to return.
revenir, *irr.* (*like venir*), to come back, to return.
revenu, *p. part.* of **revenir**.
rêver, to dream.
revint, *nar.* of **revenir**.
révolution, *f.*, revolution.
riche, rich.
rien, anything, nothing; **ne . . . rien**, nothing; **rien que**, nothing but.
rire, *m. n.*, laughter.
rire, *irr.*, to laugh.
riront, *fut.* of **rire**.
Rochefort, Rochefort.
roi, *m.*, king.
ronflant, high-sounding.
rougir, to blush.
royal, royal.
royaume, *m.*, kingdom.
rue, *f.*, street.
rusé, sly.
Russie, *f.*, Russia.
- sa**, *f.* of **son**.
sacrer, to sanctify.
saillie, *f.*, sally.
saint, *m.*, saint.
Saint-Simon, Saint-Simon.
sais, *pr. ind.* of **savoir**.
saisissant, taking.
salon, *m.*, parlor, drawing-room.
saluer, to bow, to courtesy, to salute; **saluez**, hats off!
sang, *m.*, blood; **mettre en sang**, to make bleed.
sans, without.
saurait, *cond.* of **savoir**.
saurez, *fut.* of **savoir**.
saurions, *cond.* of **savoir**.
sauront, *fut.* of **savoir**.
sauter, to explode, to go off.
sauver, to save; **se sauver**, to run away, to run off.
savait, *descr.* of **savoir**.
saveur, *f.*, taste.
savoir, *irr.*, to know, to know how, to be able.
savons, *pr. ind.* of **savoir**.
sceptique, skeptical.
se, himself, herself, itself, one's self, themselves.
sec, *irr. adj.*, dry.
second, second.
selon, according to.
semblable, similar, such.
sembler, to seem.
sens, *m.*, sense.
serrer, to keep, to take care of.
servir, *irr.*, to serve.
servit, *nar.* of **servir**.
ses, *m. and f. pl.* of **son**.
seul, alone, single.
si, *adv.*, so, such.

- si, conj.**, if.
siècle, m., century.
simple, simple.
sire, Sire.
six, six.
société, f., company.
sœur, f., sister.
soin, m., care; **avoir soin**, to take care.
soldat, m., soldier.
somptueuses, f. pl. of somptueux.
somptueux, sumptuous.
son, irr. adj., his, her, its.
son, m. n., sound.
souffle, m., breath, impulse.
soumettre, irr. (like mettre): **se soumettre**, to submit, to give in.
souper, to sup.
souper, m. n., supper.
sournois, underhanded.
soutenir, irr. (like tenir), to bear, to endure, to sustain.
soutenu, p. part. of soutenir.
souvenir, irr. (like venir): **se souvenir**, to remember.
souvenir, m. n., reminder.
souvent, often.
souverain, royal.
spirituel, witty.
su, p. part. of savoir.
suffire, irr., to suffice, to be enough.
suffit, pr. ind. of suffire.
suite, f., retinue; **une nombreuse suite**, a crowd of servants.
sujet, m., subject; **à votre sujet**, about you.
superbe, superb, splendid.
- supplier**, to entreat.
sur, on, over.
survager, to float, to survive.
surprenant, surprising.
ta, f. of ton.
table, f., table.
tandis que, while.
tant, so much, so; **tant de**, so much, so many.
tard, adv., late.
temps, m., time.
tenir, irr., to hold; **se tenir**, to stand; **se tenir debout**, to stand.
terme, m., term.
terre, f., ground.
terrible, terrible.
tes, m. and f. pl. of ton.
tient, pr. ind. of tenir.
tint, nar. of tenir.
tirer, to draw.
titre, m., title.
tomber, to fall.
ton, irr. adj., your, thy.
toucher, to touch; **toucher à**, to touch.
toujours, always.
tour, m., turn.
tous, m. pl. of tout.
tout, adv., quite; **tout à coup**, suddenly; **tout d'un coup**, at once.
tout, irr. adj., all, whole.
tout, pron., all, everything.
trafner, to drag.
trait, m., arrow, shaft, quip.
tranquillité, f., tranquillity.
très, very.
tribun, m., tribune, politician.
triste, sad, sorry.

- trompeur**, deceitful.
trône, *m.*, throne.
trop, too, too much.
trou, *m.*, hole.
troubadour, *m.*, troubadour, minstrel.
troupe, *f.*, troop.
trouver, to find.
tuer, to kill.

un, one.
une, *f.* of **un**.
unique, only.
uniquement, simply.

vaincre, *irr.*, to conquer, to win.
vaincu, *p. part.* of **vaincre**.
vais, *pr. ind.* of **aller**.
vaisselle, *f.*, ware, dishes.
valent, *pr. ind.* of **valoir**.
valoir, *irr.*, to be worth, to be as good as.
vanne, *f.*, sluice, floodgate.
vas, *pr. ind.* of **aller**.
vaut, *pr. ind.* of **valoir**.
venais, *descr.* of **venir**.
venger, to avenge.
veniez, *descr.* of **venir**.
venir, *irr.*, to come; **venir de**, to have just.
verbe, *m.*, verb.
vers, *m. n.*, verse.
vers, *prep.*, towards.
verser, to pour.
vert, green.
verve, *f.*, vivacity.
veut, *pr. ind.* of **vouloir**.
veux, *pr. ind.* of **vouloir**.
victoire, *f.*, victory.

victorieux, victorious.
vie, *f.*, life.
vient, *pr. ind.* of **venir**.
vif, intense, potent.
ville, *f.*, city, town.
vingt-cinq, twenty-five.
vint, *nar.* of **venir**.
vision, *f.*, vision.
vit, *nar.* of **voir**.
vivre, *irr.*, to live.
voici, here is, here are; **que voici** (*after noun*), this, the following.
voilà, there is, there are.
voir, *irr.*, to see.
voix, *f.*, voice.
voler, to steal.
voleur, *m.*, robber.
Voltaire, Voltaire.
vos, *m. and f. pl.* of **votre**.
vote, *m.*, vote.
votre, *irr. adj.*, your.
voudra, *fut.* of **vouloir**.
voulant, *pr. part.* of **vouloir**.
voulez, *pr. ind.* of **vouloir**.
vouloir, *irr.*, to want, to wish, to try; **vouloir de**, to want.
voulut, *nar.* of **vouloir**.
voyant, *pr. part.* of **voir**.
vrai, true.
vraiment, truly, really.

y, *adv.*, there, here; **il y a**, there is, there are; **il y avait**, there was, there were.
y, *pron.*, to it, for it.
yeux, *pl.* of **œil**.

Zacharie, Zacharias.
zéphyr, *m.*, zephyr.

INDEX

[The numbers refer to paragraphs. Names of topics are printed in heavy-faced type, individual French words in ordinary Roman letters, and English words in italics.]

À:—

Contraction: 252; 257, (1); 265, (1); 287.

Use: 79, *b*; 219; 219, (2), (3), (4); 222; 255; 268.

Accent: 23, 24.

Accents: 4; 29, (3), 2; 130; 131; 149, (1); 303, (2).

Adjectives:—

Form: 301-304; 322, *a*; 323, *c*; 326, (1), (3).

Agreement: 301; 301, *a*, *b*; 305-309; 322, *a*.

Position: 310-311; 318.

Comparison: 310, *a*; 312-317.

Adjective Phrases: 157, (3); 157, *b*, *c*, *d*; 283, *c*; 307, *b*; 311, (1), *a*; 311, (2), *d*; 318-319.

Quantity: 318-319.

Numerals: 311, (1), *a*; 322-326.

Possessive Adjectives: *see* Possessives.

Interrogative Adjectives: *see* Interrogatives.

Demonstrative Adjectives: *see* Demonstratives.

Adverbs: 234; 234, *a*, *b*, *c*; 235, *c*, *e*; 236, *a*; 240; 311, (2), *d*; 311, (3), *c*; 319, *b*.

Adverbs of Negation: 153-156; 157, (1); 158-163.

Adverbs of Place: *see* Ci, En, Là, Voici, Voilà, Y.

Comparison: 313, *b*; 315, *e*.

Position: 234, *c*; 311, (2), *d*.

Agreement:—

Adjectives: *see* Adjectives.

Articles: *see* Articles.

Participles: 83; 84; 85.

Verbs: *see* Personal Endings.

Aller: 191; 191, *a*, *b*, *c*.

Alphabet: 1.

And (before infinitive): 79, *c*; 191, *b*; 195, (2), *b*.

Any:—

Adjective: 292-295.

Pronoun: *see* En.

Articles:—

Definite:

Form: 286-287.

Use: 286, *a*, *b*; 288-290; 298, *b*, *c*; 312; 312, (1), (2), (3); 315, *a*, *d*, *e*, *f*; 318, (1); 319, *e*; 325, *c*.

Partitive: 292-295.

Indefinite: 266, *a*; 292, *a*; 296-299; 323, *d*; 325; 325, *b*.

Aspirate: *see* H.

Assez: 318, (3); 318, *a, b*.
Aucun: 157, (2), (3); 157, *a, d*;
 158, *B*; 159, *B*; 159, *B*, (3).
Aussi: 317, *a*.
Autant: 317, *b*; 318, (3); 319, *a, b*.
Autre chose: 333, *a*.
Auxiliaries:—
 Compound Tenses: 79; 80;
 95-96; 135; 215.
 Passive: 78; 78, *a, b*; 143.
 Mood: 207-215.
Avoir: 96; 96, *a*; 106.

Beaucoup: 234, *c*; 317, *c, d*; 318,
 (3); 319, *a, b*.
Bien: 234, *c*; 317, *c*; 319, *c*.
Both: 320, *c*; 325, *c*.

Ça: 279, *a*.
Can: see **Auxiliaries of Mood**.
Capitals: 8.
Ce (adj.): 273-274.
Ce (pron.):—
 Ce = he, she, they: 235, *a*;
 299, *b*.
 Ce = it: 228, *all*; 242, *b*;
 281, *a*.
 Ce = that: 281, (1), (2).
 Ce qui, ce que, ce dont: 259;
 262, *a*; 270; 271, *a, b, c*.
 Est-ce que: 149, (2); 150, (2);
 269-270; 271, *c, d*.
Ceci: 279; 281, *b, c*.
Cedilla: 2; 128.
Cela: 279; 281, *b, c*.
Chaque: 292, *d*.
Chez: 330, *b*.
Ci: 274, *A*; 278; 282, *a*.
Combien: 318, (3); 319, *a*.
Comme: 310, *a*; 317, *a*.

Comparison: see **Adjectives**.
Compound Tenses: 79; 80; 95-
 97; 122, *iii*; 135; 159.
Condition: 81; 81, *b*; 93; 94,
 (4); 95; 207, (3).
Conditional: 81; 81, *b*; 93; 94,
 (4); 122, *i*, (2); 206, *a*;
 207, (3).
Conjugation: 107; 206; 206, *a*,
b, c.
 First: 113; 128-131.
 Second: 114.
 Third: 115.
Irregular: 171; 191-196; 206, *all*.
Passive: 143.
Interrogative: 146; 151; 152.
Negative: 161; 163.
Reflexive: 167.
Impersonal: 170-171.
See Auxiliaries of Mood,
 Compound Tenses,
 Derivation of Tenses,
 Personal Endings,
 Principal Parts.
Conjunctive Pronouns: see
 Personal Pronouns.
Consonants: 17-21; 30-42; 302.
Contraction: see **À and De**.
Could: see **Auxiliaries of Mood**.

Dates: 323, *c*; 325, *a*; 326, *a*.
Davantage: 317, *c*.
De:—
 De = than: 314, *a*.
 D'oh: 258, *c*.
Contraction: 252; 257, (1);
 265, (1); 287.
Elision: 5; 21.
Negative Phrases: 157, (3);
 157, *b, c*; 298, *a*.

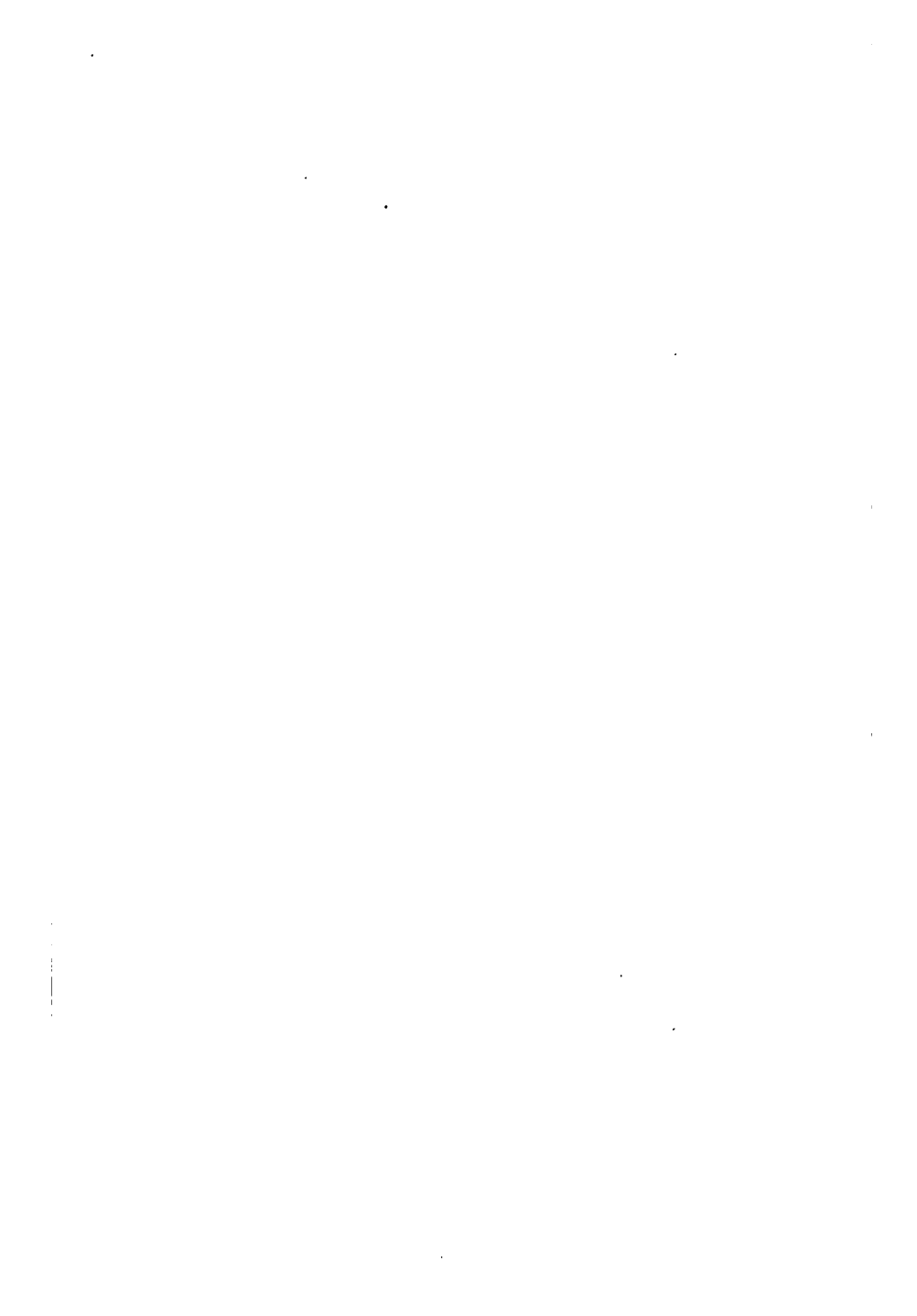
- Partitive:** 292-295.
Phrases of Quantity: 317, *b*;
 318; 318, (1), (2), (3); 319,
c, d, e; 320, *a, c*.
Possessive: 327; 329; 330, *a*.
Use: 79, *b*; 222, *a*; 258, *c*;
 283, *c*; 288, (2); 301, *c*;
 307, *b*; 308, *d*; 325, *b*.
Definite Article: *see* **Articles**.
Demi: 320, *a*.
Demonstratives: 273.
Adjectives: 273-274.
Pronouns: 220, *c*; 275-283;
 333, *a*.
Derivation of Tenses: 120-123.
Descriptive Past: 93; 93, *a*;
 94, *all*; 97; 117; 122, *ii*,
 (3); 207, (3), (4), (5).
Devoir: 206; 208, (2); 209; 211;
 215, *a*.
Diæresis: 3; 206, *Haïr, note*.
Disjunctive Pronouns: *see*
Personal Pronouns.
Do: 93, *a*; 144; 207, (6); 215.
Dont: 258; 258, (1); 258, *a*; 259.
E (after g): 2; 128.
Elision: 5; 21; 42; 56; 65;
 153; 232, *A, a*; 257; 265;
 314.
Emphasis: 23; 24; 219, (4);
 223; 241, (2); 242, *a, b*;
 274.
En (adv.):—
Use: 167, (2); 232, *A, a*; 234;
 234, *b*; 240.
Position: 158, *A, B*; 165; 166;
 232; 233, *A*; 234.
En (prep.): 85, *a, b*; 288, (2), (5);
 301, *c*.
En (pron.):—
Use: 157, (2); 157, *a*; 230;
 230, (1); 230, *a*; 295, (1), *c*.
Position: 158, *A, B*; 158, *A*,
 (1); 159; 163; 165; 170, *b*;
 232; 233, *A*.
Entendre: 85, *d, e*; 232, *b*.
Est-ce que: *see* **Ce**.
Et: 38; 41; 309, (2), *a*; 322; 323,
d; 324; 325.
Être: 78; 96; 96, *a*; 106; 135,
 (2); 143; 207, (1), (2); 222;
 228, *A*; 228, *B*, (2); 242, *b*;
 255.
Faire: 78, *b*; 85, *e*; 192, *all*; 207,
 (7); 226, *a*; 232, *b*.
Falloir: 158, *a*; 171; 208, (2);
 213-214; 215, *a*.
Feminine: *see* **Gender**.
Future: 93; 93, *c*; 117; 122, *i*,
 (1); 206, *a*; 207, (3);
 215.
Future Anterior: *see* **Future**
Perfect.
Future Perfect: 95; 143.
Gender: *see* **Adjectives, Ar-**
ticles, Nouns, Partici-
ples, Pronouns.
Grand'chose: 333, *a*.
Guère: 157-161.
H: 34; 41; 42; 308, *e*; 322, *c, d*.
Half: 320, *a*.
Hyphen: 149, (1); 150, (1); 322;
 331, *c*.
Il (= there): 235, *c*.
Il y a: 170.

- Imperative:** 81; 81, *a*; 93; 95; 100; 122, ii, (2); 122, iv, (2); 165; 166; 232, *A*.
- Imperfect:** *see* Descriptive Past.
- Impersonal Verbs:** 169-171; 213-214; 228, *all*; 235, *a, b, c*.
- Indefinite Article:** *see* Articles.
- Indefinite Pronouns:** 78, *a*; 160, *c*; 229, *all*; 230, *all*; 266, *b*; 271, *f*; 275; 275, *b*; 279; 281, *all*; 283, *c*; 308, *d*; 316, *a*; 317, *c, d*; 319, *a*; 320, *c, d*; 333, *a*.
- Indicative:** 81; 81, *a*; 93; 95.
- Indirect Object:** 165; 218-219; 221, *a, b*; 222; 222, *b*; 233, *A*.
- Indirect Questions:** 256, *b*; 269; 270; 271, *a, b, c*.
- Infinitive:** 79; 79, *a, b, c*; 85, *a*; 120; 124; 158; 209; 213; 213, (1).
- Interrogation:** 144-152; 163.
- Interrogatives:** 148.
- Adjectives:** 264-266; 311, (1), *a*.
- Pronouns:** 256, *b*; 264-265; 267-271.
- Intonation:** 22.
- Inversion:** 149, (1); 150, (1), (3), *a, b*.
- Irregular Verbs:** 106; 171; 191-196; 206, *all*.
- It:** 169; 218; 227-228; 230; 230, (1); 230, *a*; 235, *all*.
: 245-247; 251, *d*; 252.
- Jamais:** 157-161.
- Là:** 234, *a*; 274, *A*; 278; 282, *a*.
- Laisser:** 78, *b*; 232, *b*.
- Le (= so):** 235, *e*.
- Letters:** 1; 2; 16; 36.
- Liaison:** *see* Linking.
- Linking:** 41-42; 304; 304, (4); 322, *b*; 323, *b*.
- L'un and L'autre:** 160, *c*; 166, *b*; 320, *e*.
- Masculine:** *see* Gender.
- May:** *see* Auxiliaries of Mood.
- Même:** 242, *a*; 281, *d*; 282, *b*; 283, *b*.
- Might:** *see* Auxiliaries of Mood.
- Modal Auxiliaries:** *see* Auxiliaries of Mood.
- Moindre:** 313, *a*.
- Moins:** 313, *b*; 314, *a*; 315, *d*; 318, (3); 319, *a, b*.
- Moitié:** 320, *a*.
- Mood:** 79-92; 208-215.
- Must:** *see* Auxiliaries of Mood.
- Narrative Past:** 93-94; 96, *b*; 117; 122; 122, v, (1).
- Nasal Vowels:** 9; 12; 15, (1); 16; 17, *all*; 41, (2); 302.
- Ne:** 157-160.
- Negation:** 157-161.
- Ni:** 160, *b, c*; 294, *a*.
- Non:** 160, (2); 160, *a*.
- Non pas:** 160, (2).
- Nouns:** 301, *b, c*; 307, *a*; 311, (2), *c*; 327-334.
- Case:** 219; 327; 330, *a, b*.
- Gender:** 333-334.
- Number:** 328-332.
- Possessive:** *see* Case.

- Nul: 157, (3); 157, *b, d*; 158, B; 159, B; 159, B, (3).
- Number (*verbs*): 98-100.
- Number: *see* Adjectives, Articles, Nouns, Participles, Pronouns.
- Numbers: *see* Adjectives.
- Numerals: *see* Adjectives.
- Object-Pronouns: *see* Personal Pronouns.
- On: 78, *a*; 229; 229, *a, b*.
- One (*after the, this, or adj.*): 276; 276, *b*; 278; 283, *a, c*.
- One (*numeral*): *see* Adjectives.
- One (= *people*): *see* On.
- Ou: 309, (2), *b*.
- Où: 262, *c*.
- Ought: *see* Auxiliaries of Mood.
- Oui: 160, *a*.
- Par: 298, *b*.
- Participles: —
- Agreement: 83-85; 258.
- Form: 80; 80, *a*; 206.
- Position: 159, A, B; 234, *c*; 302, (2), *b*.
- Use: 85, *a, b, c, d, e*; 120; 122, ii, iii; 135; 143.
- Partitive Article: 292-295.
- Pas: 157-161.
- Passive: 78; 78, *a, b*; 143; 207, (1); 215; 229, *a*.
- Past (*indicative*): *see* Descriptive Past and Narrative Past.
- Past (*subjunctive*): 89-91; 93; 94, *d*; 122, v, (2).
- Past Anterior: *see* Past Perfect.
- Past Definite: *see* Narrative Past.
- Past Indefinite: *see* Present Perfect.
- Past Perfect: 88; 92; 95; 96, *a, c*; 97; 135.
- Perfect: *see* Present Perfect.
- Person (*verbs*): 98-100.
- Personal Endings (*verbs*): 117.
- Personal Pronouns: 218-224.
- Conjunctive: 57, *a*; 223-236; 249; 251, *a, b, c, d*.
- Disjunctive: 223-234; 237-242; 250, *c*; 255; 330, *b*.
- Position: 149, *all*; 158, *a, b*; 158, A, (1); 159; 166; 239.
- Use: 78, *a*; 99; 213; 213, (1); 249; 250, *c*; 251, *a, b, c, d*; 255; 277; 330, *b*.
- Personne: 157-160; 333, *a*; 333, (1), *a*.
- Peu: 318, (3); 319, *a, b*.
- Plupart: 319, *c*.
- Pluperfect: *see* Past Perfect.
- Plural: *see* Number.
- Plus: 157-160; 290, *c*; 310, *a*; 312, *all*; 314, *a*; 315, *f*; 316, *a*; 317, *c*; 318, (3); 319, *a, b*.
- Point: 157-160.
- Position: *see* Adjectives, Adverbs, Negation, Participles, Personal Pronouns, Prepositions.
- Possessives: —
- Adjectives: 245-251; 311, (1), *a*.
- Pronouns: 245; 252-255.
- Potential Mood: *see* Auxiliaries of Mood.
- Pour: 79, *b*.

- Pouvoir: 193, *all*; 208, (1); 209; 210; 215, *a*.
- Prepositions: *see* À, Chez, De, En, Par, Pour, Sans.
- Position: 261, *b*; 264, *a*.
- Present: 93; 93, *a, c, d*; 97; 117; 122, ii, (1), (2), (4); 122, iv, (1), (2); 206, *b*.
- Present Perfect: 95; 96, *a, b*; 97; 135.
- Preterit: *see* Narrative Past.
- Principal Parts: 120; 121; 124; 206, *all*.
- Progressive Form: 93, *a*; 207, (4); 215.
- Pronouns: *see* Demonstratives, Indefinite Pronouns, Interrogatives, Personal Pronouns, Possessives, Relative Pronouns.
- Pronunciation: 1-42.
- Quantity (*expressions of*): *see* Adjective Phrases.
- Quantity (*vowel*): 25; 26; 27-29.
- Que (*conj. or adv.*): 157-160; 256, *a*; 266, *b*; 271, *f, h*; 310, *a*; 314; 317, *a, b*; 319, *d*.
- Que (*pron.*): *see* Interrogatives and Relative Pronouns.
- Quel: *see* Interrogatives.
- Quelconque: 292, *c*.
- Quelque: 292, *a, b*; 308, *d*; 320, *d*.
- Quelque chose: 308, *d*; 333, *a*.
- Quelqu'un: 320, *c, d*; 333, *a*.
- Questions: *see* Interrogation and Interrogatives.
- Indirect: *see* Indirect Questions.
- R: 30.
- Reciprocal Pronouns: *see* Reflexive Pronouns.
- Reciprocal Verbs: *see* Reflexive Verbs.
- Reflexive Pronouns: 164-166; 219, (2); 225; 232-233; 238; 242, *a*.
- Reflexive Verbs: 164-167.
- Regular Verbs: 107; 113-115; 124.
- Relative Pronouns: 85, *c*; 242, *b*; 256-262.
- Rien: 157-161; 308, *d*; 333, *a*.
- Rounded Vowels: 9; 15, 2).
- Sans: 292, *a*; 294, *a*; 298, *a*.
- Savoir: 194, *all*; 207, (10).
- Se: 164-167; 219, (2); 225; 232-233.
- Shall: *see* Future and Auxiliaries of Mood.
- Should: *see* Conditional and Auxiliaries of Mood.
- Si (*if*): 5.
- Si (*so*): 298, *d*; 317, *a*.
- Si (*yes*): 160, *a*.
- Singular: *see* Number.
- Soi: 238; 242, *a*.
- Some (*adj.*): 292-295.
- Some (*pron.*): *see* En (*pron.*).
- Spelling: 1-8; 16; 17; 36.
- Subjunctive: 81; 86-92; 93; 93, *d*; 95; 122, ii, (4); 122, *v*, (2); 159, *a*; 213; 213, (2); 266, *b*; 271, *f*.
- T (*inserted*): 149, (1); 150, (1).
- Tant: 234, *c*; 317, *b*; 318, (3); 319, *a, b*.

- Tel:** 298, *d*.
Tenir: 195, (1).
Tense: 79; 80; 89; 93-97; 117; 120-122; 135; 213, (2).
Than: 314; 314, *a*.
To (with infin.): 79, *a, b, c*.
Tout: 234, *c*; 262, *a, b*; 292, *d*; 304, (5); 304, (5), *a*; 308, *e*; 310, *b*; 320, *b, e*.
Adverb: 308, *e*.
Position: 234, *c*.
Très: 315, *c*.
Trop: 234, *c*; 318, (3); 319, *a, b*.
Tu: 99; 100; 225.
Venir: 195, (2), *all*; 207, (11).
Verbs: *see* Auxiliaries, Compound Tenses, Conjugation, Derivation of Tenses, Impersonal Verbs, Mood, Number, Passive, Person, Personal Endings, Principal Parts, Reflexive Verbs, Tense.
Voice: *see* Passive.
Voici: 236, *a*; 256, *b, note*; 281; 281, (3).
Voilà: *see* Voici.
Voir: 85, *d, e*; 206.
Vouloir: 196; 207, (9); 208, (3); 209; 212; 215, *a*.
Vous: 99; 100; 225; 237.
Vowels: 9-29.
Will: *see* Future and Auxiliaries of Mood.
Would: *see* Conditional and Auxiliaries of Mood.
Y (adv. and pron.):—
Position: 158, *A, B*; 159; 166; 170, *b*; 232; 232, *A*; 233, *A*; 234.
Use: 170, *all*; 234; 234, *a, b*; 240.



Heath's Modern Language Series.

Introduction prices are quoted unless otherwise stated.

FRENCH GRAMMARS AND READERS.

- Edgren's Compendious French Grammar.** Adapted to the needs of the beginner and the advanced student. \$1.12.
- Edgren's French Grammar, Part I.** For those who wish to learn quickly to read French. 35 cts.
- Supplementary Exercises to Edgren's French Grammar (Locard).** French-English and English-French. 12 cts.
- Grandgent's Essentials of French Grammar.** With numerous exercises and illustrative sentences. \$1.00.
- Grandgent's Short French Grammar.** Phonetic help in pronunciation. Exercises, see below. 60 cts.
- Grandgent's French Lessons and Exercises.** Necessarily used with the SHORT FRENCH GRAMMAR. *First Year's Course for High Schools, No 1; First Year's Course for Colleges, No. 1.* 15 cts. each.
- Grandgent's French Lessons and Exercises.** *First Year's Course for Grammar Schools.* 25 cts. *Second Year's Course for Grammar Schools.* 30 cts.
- Grandgent's Materials for French Composition.** Five pamphlets based on *La Pipe de Jean Bart*, *La dernière classe*, *Le Siège de Berlin*, *Peppino*, *L'Abbé Constantin*, respectively. Each, 12 cts.
- Grandgent's French Composition.** Elementary, progressive and varied selections, with full notes and vocabulary. 50 cts.
- Hennequin's French Modal Auxiliaries.** With exercises in composition and conversation. 50 cts.
- Kimball's Materials for French Composition.** Based on *Colomba*, for second year's work; on *La Belle-Nivernaise*, and also one on *La Tulipe Noire*, for third year's work. Each 12 cts.
- Storr's Hints on French Syntax.** With exercises. 30 cts.
- Marcou's French Review Exercises.** With notes and vocabulary. 20 cts.
- Houghton's French by Reading.** Begins with interlinear, and gives in the course of the book the whole of elementary grammar, with reading matter, notes, and vocabulary. \$1.12.
- Hotchkiss's Le Premier Livre de Français.** Conversational introduction to French, for young pupils. Boards. Illustrated. 79 pages. 35 cts.
- Fontaine's Livre de Lecture et de Conversation.** Combines Reading, Conversation, and Grammar, with vocabulary. 90 cts.
- Fontaine's Lectures Courantes.** Can follow the above. Contains Reading, Conversation, and English Exercises based on the text. \$1.00.
- Lyon and Larpent's Primary French Translation Book.** An easy beginning reader, with very full notes, vocabulary, and English exercises based on the latter part of the text. 60 cts.
- Super's Preparatory French Reader.** Complete and graded selections of interesting French, with notes and vocabulary. 70 cts.
- French Fairy Tales (Joynes).** With notes, vocabulary, and English exercises based on the text. 35 cts.
- Davies's Elementary Scientific French Reader.** Confined to Scientific French. With notes and vocabulary. 40 cts.
- Heath's French-English and English-French Dictionary.** Recommended as fully adequate for the ordinary wants of students. Retail price, \$1.50.

Complete Catalogue of Modern Language Texts sent on request.

Beath's Modern Language Series.

Introduction prices are quoted unless otherwise stated.

ELEMENTARY FRENCH TEXTS.

- Jules Verne's L'Expédition de la Jeune Hardie.** With notes, vocabulary, and appendixes by W. S. Lyon. 25 cts.
- Gervais's Un Cas de Conscience.** With notes, vocabulary, and appendixes by R. P. Horsley. 25 cts.
- Génin's Le Petit Tailleur Bouton.** With notes, vocabulary, and appendixes by W. S. Lyon. 25 cts.
- Assollant's Une Aventure du Célèbre Pierrot.** With notes, vocabulary, and appendixes by R. E. Pain. 25 cts.
- Muller's Les Grandes Découvertes Modernes.** Photography and Telegraphy. With notes, vocabulary, and appendixes by F. E. B. Wale. 25 cts.
- Récits de Guerre et de Révolution.** Selected and edited, with notes, vocabulary, and appendixes by B. Minssen. 25 cts.
- Bruno's Les Enfants Patriotes.** With notes, vocabulary, and appendixes by W. S. Lyon. 25 cts.
- Bedollière's La Mère Michel et son Chat.** With notes, vocabulary, and appendixes by W. S. Lyon. 25 cts.
- Legouvé and Labiche's La Cigale chez les Fourmis.** A comedy in one act, with notes by W. H. Witherby. 20 cts.
- Labiche and Martin's Le Voyage de M. Perrichon.** A comedy; notes and vocabulary by Professor Wells of the University of the South. 30 cts.
- Labiche and Martin's La Poudre aux Yeux.** Comedy; notes and vocabulary by Professor Wells of the University of the South. 30 cts.
- Dumas's L'Evasion du Duc de Beaufort.** Notes by D. B. Kitchen. 25 cts.
- Assollant's Récits de la Vieille France.** With notes by E. B. Wauton. 25 cts.
- Berthet's Le Pacte de Famine.** With notes by B. B. Dickinson. 25 cts.
- Erckmann-Chatrian's L'Histoire d'un Paysan.** With notes by W. S. Lyon. 25 cts.
- France's Abeille.** With notes by C. P. Lebon of the Boston English High School. 25 cts.
- La Main Malheureuse.** With complete and detailed vocabulary, by H. A. Guerber, Nyack, N. Y. 25 cts.
- Enault's Le Chien du Capitaine.** Notes and vocabulary, by C. Fontaine, Director of French, High Schools, Washington, D. C. 35 cts.
- Trois Contes Choisis par Daudet.** (*Le Siège de Berlin, La dernière Classe, La Mule du Pape.*) With notes by Professor Sanderson. 15 cts.
- Erckmann-Chatrian's Le Conscrit de 1873.** Notes and vocabulary, by Professor Super, Dickinson College. 45 cts.
- Selections for Sight Translation.** Fifty fifteen-line extracts compiled by Miss Bruce of the High School, Newton, Mass. 15 cts.
- Laboulaye's Contes Bleus.** With notes and vocabulary by C. Fontaine, Central High School, Washington, D. C. 35 cts.
- Malot's Sans Famille.** With notes and vocabulary by I. H. B. Spiers of the Wm. Penn Charter School, Philadelphia. 40 cts.

Complete Catalogue of Modern Language Texts sent on request.

Beath's Modern Language Series.

Introduction prices are quoted unless otherwise stated.

INTERMEDIATE FRENCH TEXTS. (Partial List.)

- Dumas's La Tulipe Noire.** With notes by Professor C. Fontaine, Central High School, Washington, D. C. 40 cts. With vocabulary, 50 cts.
- Eckmann-Chatrian's Waterloo.** Abridged and annotated by Professor O. B. Super of Dickinson College. 35 cts.
- About's Le Roi des Montagnes.** Edited by Professor Thomas Logie. 40 cts.
- Pailleron's Le Monde où l'on s'ennuie.** A comedy with notes by Professor Pendleton of Bethany College, W. Va. 30 cts.
- Souvestre's Le Mari de Mme de Solange.** With notes by Professor Super of Dickinson College. 20 cts.
- Historiettes Modernes, Vol. I.** Short modern stories, selected and edited, with notes, by C. Fontaine, Director of French in the High Schools of Washington, D. C. 60 cts.
- Historiettes Modernes, Vol. II.** Short stories as above. 60 cts.
- Fleurs de France.** A collection of short and choice French stories of recent date with notes by C. Fontaine, Washington, D. C. 60 cts.
- Sandeau's Mlle de la Seiglière.** With introduction and notes by Professor Warren of Adelbert College. 30 cts.
- Souvestre's Un Philosophe sous les Toits.** With notes, by Professor Frazer of the University of Toronto. 50 cts. With vocabulary, 80 cts.
- Souvestre's Les Confessions d'un Ouvrier.** With notes by Professor Super of Dickinson College. 30 cts.
- Augier's Le Gendre de M. Poirier.** One of the masterpieces of modern comedy. Edited by Professor Wells of the University of the South. 25 cts.
- Mérimée's Colomba.** With notes by Professor J. A. Fontaine of Bryn Mawr College. 35 cts.
- Mérimée's Chronique du Règne de Charles IX.** With notes by Professor P. Desages, Cheltenham College, England. 25 cts.
- Sand's La Mare au Diable.** With notes by Professor F. C. de Sumichrast of Harvard. 25 cts.
- Sand's La Petite Fadette.** With notes by F. Aston-Binns, Balliol College, Oxford, England. 30 cts.
- De Vigny's Le Cachet Rouge.** With notes by Professor Fortier of Tulane University. 20 cts.
- De Vigny's Le Canne de Jonc.** Edited by Professor Spiers, with Introduction by Professor Cohn of Columbia University. 40 cts.
- Halévy's L'Abbé Constantin.** Edited with notes, by Professor Thomas Logie. 30 cts. With vocabulary, 40 cts.
- Thiers's Expédition de Bonaparte en Egypte.** With notes by Professor C. Fabregou, College of the City of New York. 00 cts.
- Gautier's Jettatura.** With introduction and notes by A. Schinz, Ph.D. of Bryn Mawr College. 30 cts.

Complete Catalogue of Modern Language Texts sent on request.

Beath's Modern Language Series.

Introduction prices are quoted unless otherwise stated.

INTERMEDIATE FRENCH TEXTS. (Partial List.)

- Lamartine's Scènes de la Révolution Française.** With notes by Professor Super of Dickinson College. 35 cts.
- Lamartine's Graziella.** With introduction and notes by Professor F. M. Warren of Adelbert College. 00 cts.
- Lamartine's Jeanne d'Arc.** Edited by Professor Barrère, Royal Military Academy, Woolwich, England. 30 cts.
- Victor Hugo's La Chute.** From *Les Misérables*. Edited with notes by Professor Huss of Princeton. 25 cts.
- Victor Hugo's Bug Jargal.** With notes by Professor Boëlle of Dulwich College, England. 40 cts.
- Champfleury's Le Violon de Faïence.** With notes by Professor Clovis Bévenot, Mason College, England. 25 cts.
- Gautier's Voyage en Espagne.** With notes by H. C. Steel. 25 cts.
- Balzac's Le Curé de Tours.** With notes by Professor C. R. Carter, Wellington College, England. 25 cts.
- Daudet's La Belle-Nivernaise.** With notes by Professor Boëlle of Dulwich College, England. 25 cts.
- Theuriet's Bigarreau.** With notes by C. Fontaine, Washington, D. C. 25 cts.
- Advanced Selections for Sight Translation.** Extracts, twenty to fifty lines long, compiled by Mme. T. F. Colin of Miss Baldwin's School, Bryn Mawr, Pa. 15 cts.
- Dumas's La Question d'Argent.** Comedy edited by G. N. Henning, Assistant in French, Harvard University. 30 cts.
- Lesage's Gil Blas.** Abbreviated and edited, with introduction and notes, by Professor Cohn of Columbia University, and Professor Sanderson of Yale University. 40 cts.
- Sarcey's Le Siège de Paris.** With introduction and notes by Professor I. H. B. Spiers of William Penn Charter School, Philadelphia. 35 cts.
- Loti's Pêcheur d'Islande.** With notes by R. J. Morich. 30 cts.
- Beaumarchais's Le Barbier de Séville.** Comedy with introduction and notes by Professor Spiers of William Penn Charter School. 25 cts.
- Molière's Le Bourgeois Gentilhomme.** With introduction and notes by Professor Warren of Adelbert College. 30 cts.
- Molière's L'Avare.** With introduction and notes by Professor Levi of the University of Michigan. 35 cts.
- Racine's Esther.** With introduction, notes, and appendixes by Professor I. H. B. Spiers of William Penn Charter School. 25 cts.
- Racine's Athalie.** With introduction and notes by Professor Eggert of Vanderbilt University. 30 cts.
- Racine's Andromaque.** With introduction and notes by Professor B. W. Wells of the University of the South. 30 cts.

Complete Catalogue of Modern Language Texts sent on request.

Death's Modern Language Series.

Introduction prices are quoted unless otherwise stated.

ADVANCED FRENCH TEXTS.

- De Vigny's Cinq Mars.** An abbreviated edition with introduction and notes by Professor Sankey of Harrow School, England. 70 cts.
- Zola's La Débâcle.** Abbreviated and annotated by Professor Wells, of the University of the South. 70 cts.
- Choix d'Extraits de Daudet.** Selected and edited with notes by William Price, Instructor in Yale University. 20 cts.
- Sept Grands Auteurs du XIXe Siècle.** Lectures in easy French on Lamartine, Hugo, de Vigny, de Musset, Gautier, Mérimée, Coppée, by Professor Fortier of Tulane University. 60 cts.
- French Lyrics.** Selected and edited with notes by Professor Bowen of the University of Ohio. 60 cts.
- Lamartine's Méditations.** Selected and edited by Professor Curme of Northwestern University. 75 cts.
- Victor Hugo's Hernani.** With introduction and notes by Professor Matzke of Leland Stanford University. 60 cts.
- Victor Hugo's Ruy Blas.** With introduction and notes by Professor Garner of the U. S. Naval Academy, Annapolis. 65 cts.
- Cornelle's Le Cid.** With introduction and notes by Professor Warren of Adelbert College. 164 pages. 30 cts.
- Cornelle's Polyeucte.** With introduction and notes by Professor Fortier of Tulane University. 30 cts.
- Molière's Le Misanthrope.** With introduction and notes by Professor C. A. Eggert. 30 cts.
- Molière's Les Femmes Savantes.** With introduction and notes by Professor Fortier of Tulane University. 30 cts.
- Molière's Le Tartuffe.** With foot-notes by Professor Gasc, England. 25 cts.
- Molière's Le Médecin Malgré Lui.** With foot-notes by Professor Gasc, England. 15 cts.
- Molière's Les Précieuses Ridicules.** With introduction and notes by Professor Toy of the University of North Carolina. 25 cts.
- Piron's La Métromanie.** Comedy in verse, with notes by Professor Delbos, England. 40 cts.
- Warren's Primer of French Literature.** An historical handbook. 75 cts.
- Taine's Introduction à l'Histoire de la Littérature Anglaise.** With essay on Taine by Irving Babbitt, Harvard University. 20 cts.
- Duval's Histoire de la Littérature Française.** In easy French. From earliest times to the present. \$1.00.
- Voltaire's Prose.** Selected and edited by Professors Cohn and Woodward of Columbia University. \$1.00.
- French Prose of the XVIIIth Century.** Selected and edited by Professor Warren of Adelbert College. \$1.00.
- La Triade Française.** Poems of Lamartine, Musset, and Hugo, with introductions and notes by L. Both-Hendriksen. 75 cts.

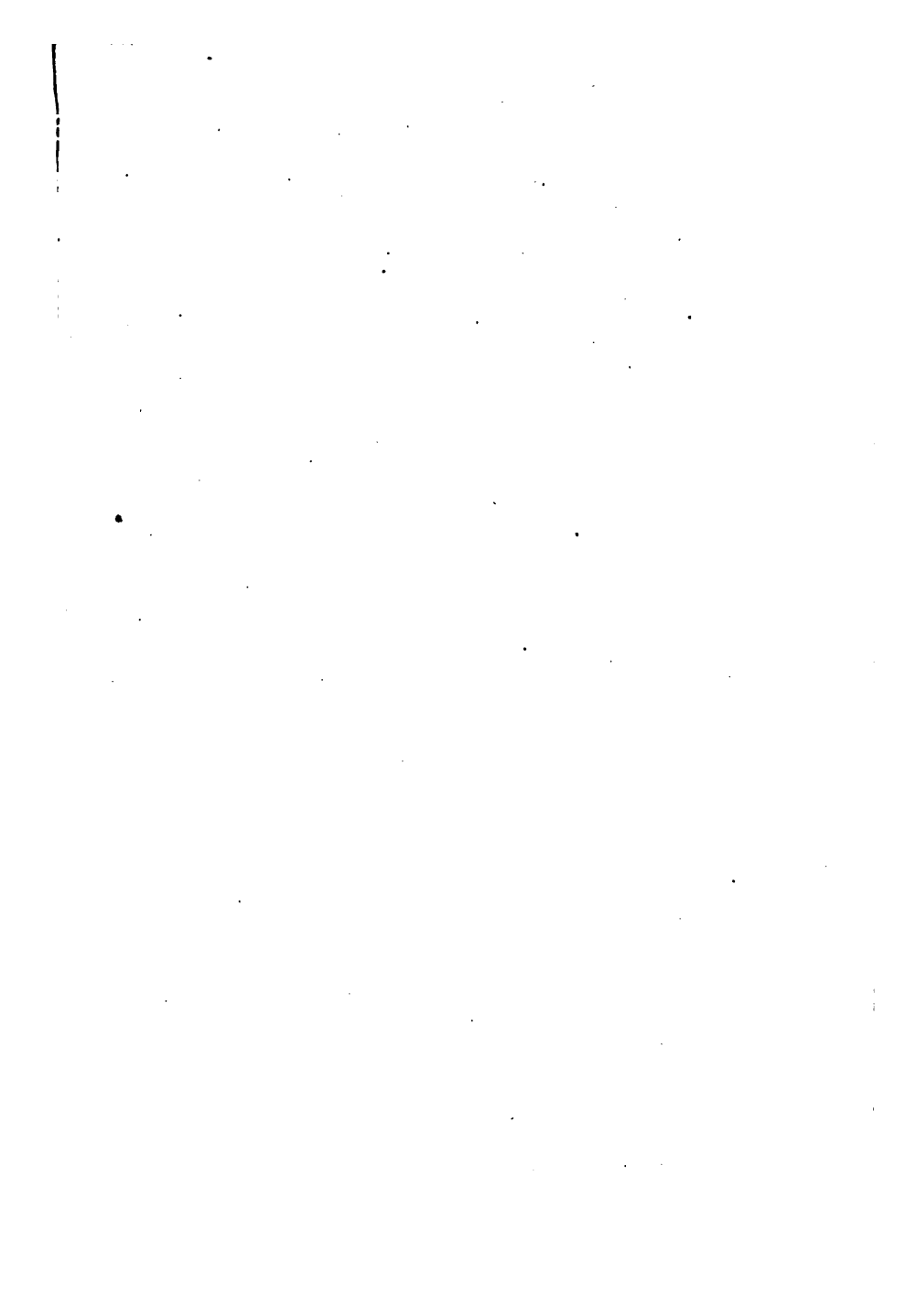
Complete Catalogue of Modern Language Texts sent on request.

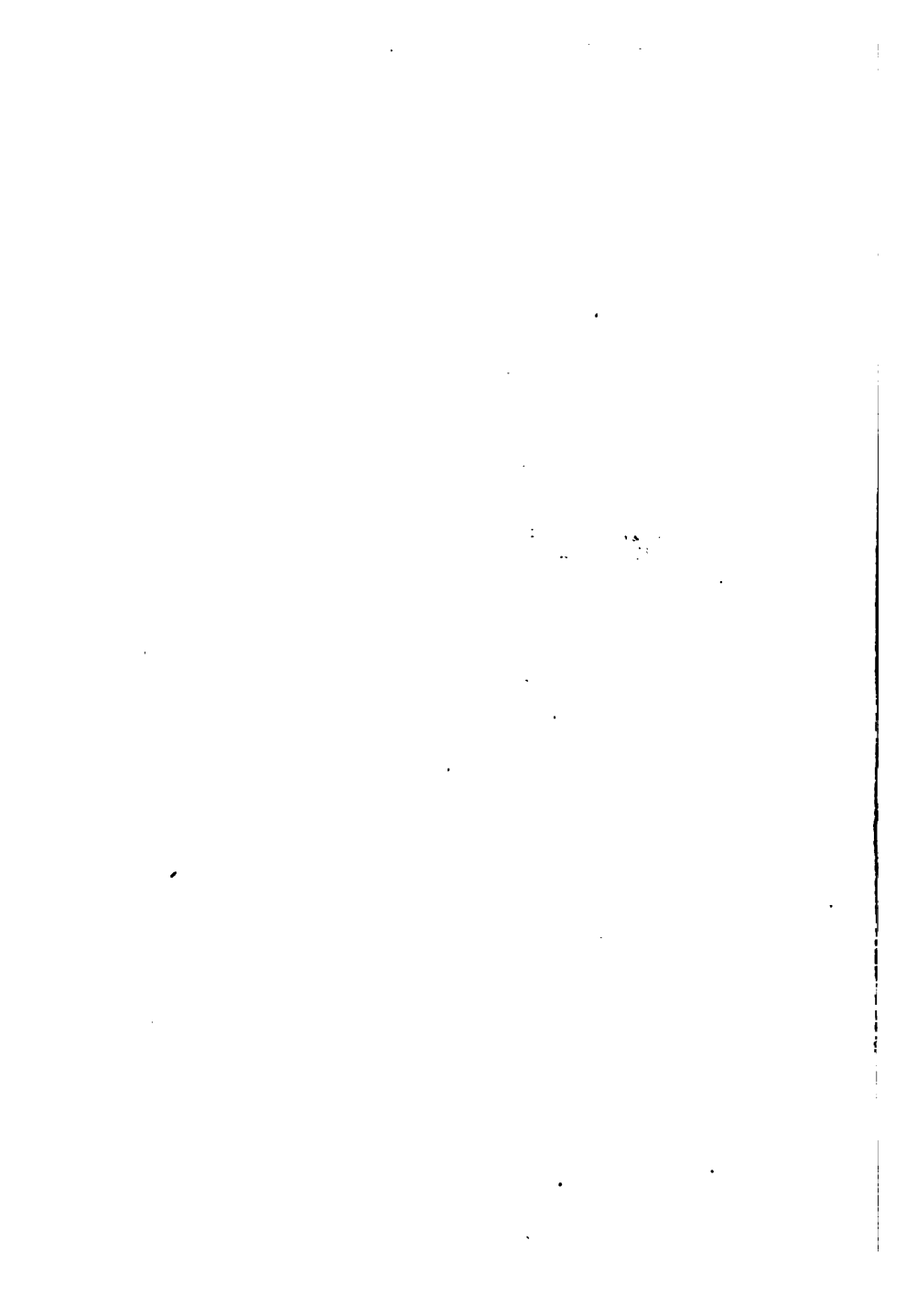
Heath's Modern Language Series.

GERMAN GRAMMARS AND READERS.

- Nix's Erstes deutsches Schulbuch.** For primary classes. Boards. Illustrated. 202 pages. 35 cts.
- Joynes-Meissner German Grammar.** A *working* Grammar, elementary, yet complete. Half leather. \$1.12.
- Alternative Exercises.** Can be used, for the sake of change, instead of those in the *Joynes-Meissner* itself. 54 pages. 15 cts.
- Joynes's Shorter German Grammar.** Part I of the above. Half leather. 80 cts.
- Harris's German Lessons.** Elementary Grammar and Exercises for a short course, or as introductory to advanced grammar. Cloth. 60 cts.
- Sheldon's Short German Grammar.** For those who want to begin reading as soon as possible, and have had training in some other languages. Cloth. 60 cts.
- Babbitt's German at Sight.** A syllabus of elementary grammar, with suggestions and practice work for reading at sight. Paper. 10 cts.
- Faulhaber's One Year Course in German.** A brief synopsis of elementary grammar, with exercises for translation. Cloth. 60 cts.
- Meissner's German Conversation.** Not a *phrase* book nor a *method* book, but a scheme of rational conversation. Cloth. 65 cts.
- Harris's German Composition.** Elementary, progressive, and varied selections, with full notes and vocabulary. Cloth. 50 cts.
- Hatfield's Materials for German Composition.** Based on *Immensee* and on *Höher als die Kirche*. Paper. 33 pages. Each 12 cts.
- Stüven's Praktische Anfangsgründe.** A conversational beginning book with vocabulary and grammatical appendix. Cloth. 203 pages. 70 cts.
- Foster's Geschichten und Märchen.** The easiest reading for young children. Cloth. 40 cts.
- Guerber's Märchen und Erzählungen, I.** With vocabulary and questions in German on the text. Cloth. 162 pages. 60 cts.
- Guerber's Märchen und Erzählungen, II.** With vocabulary. Follows the above or serves as independent reader. Cloth. 202 pages. 65 cts.
- Joynes's German Reader.** Progressive, both in text and notes, has a complete vocabulary, also English Exercises. Half leather, 90 cts. Cloth, 75 cts.
- Deutsch's Colloquial German Reader.** Anecdotes, tables of phrases and idioms, and selections in prose and verse, with notes and vocabulary. Cloth. 90 cts.
- Boisen's German Prose Reader.** Easy and interesting selections of graded prose, with notes, and an Index which serves as a vocabulary. Cloth. 90 cts.
- Huss's German Reader.** Easy and slowly progressive selections in prose and verse. With especial attention to cognates. Cloth. 000 pages. 00 cts.
- Spanhoofd's Lehrbuch der deutschen Sprache.** Grammar, conversation and exercises, with vocabulary for beginners. Cloth. 312 pages. \$1.00.
- Heath's German-English and English-German Dictionary.** Fully adequate for the ordinary wants of the student. Cloth. Retail price, \$1.50.

Complete Catalogue of Modern Language Texts sent on request.





This book should be returned to
the Library on or before the last date
stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred
by retaining it beyond the specified
time.

Please return promptly.

~~MAR 21 1952~~

~~DUE APR 20 1952~~